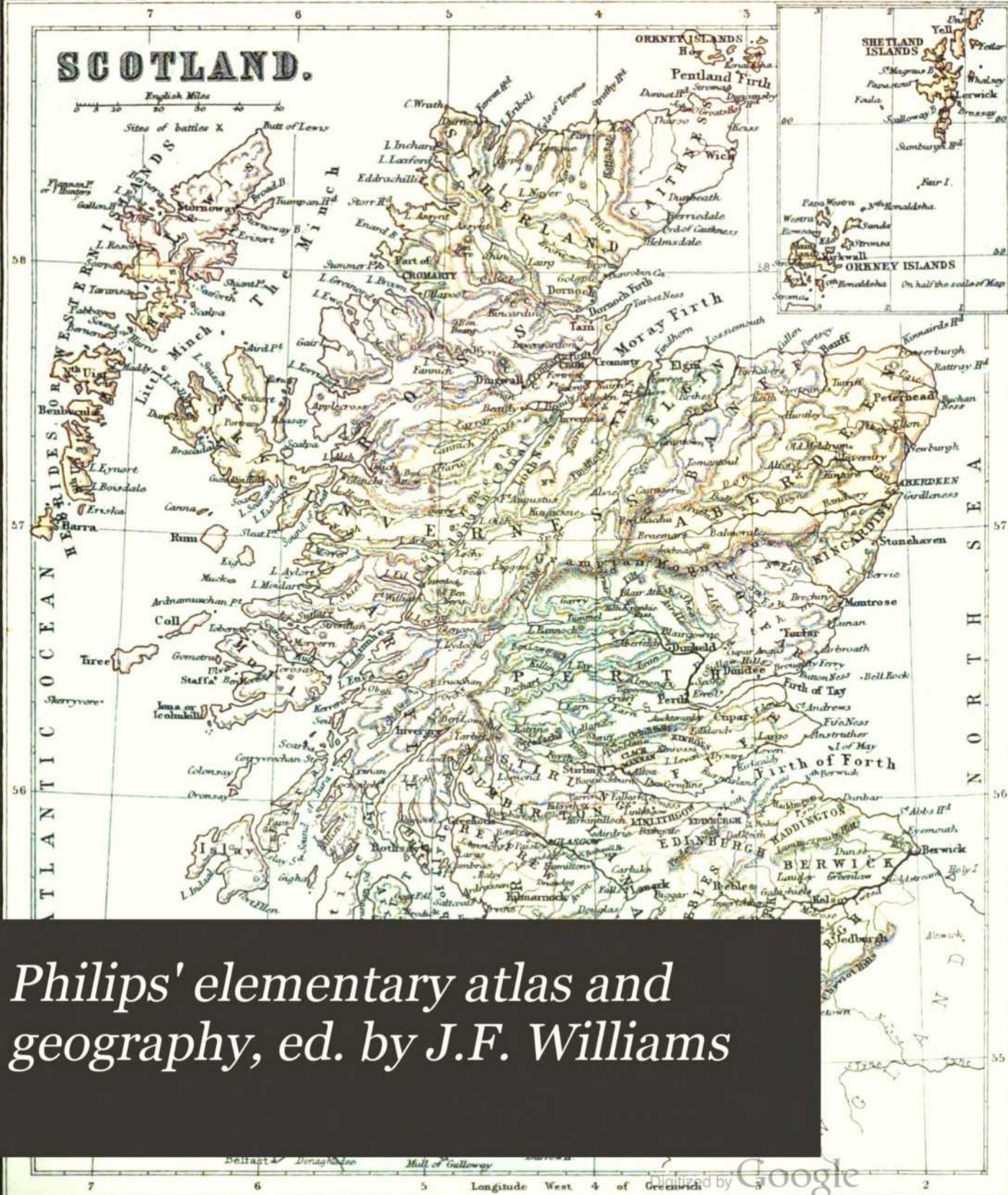


SCOTLAND.



*Philips' elementary atlas and
geography, ed. by J.F. Williams*



600027220J

2027 d. 159

In map catalogue.

PHILIPS'
ELEMENTARY ATLAS
AND
GEOGRAPHY,

CONTAINING THE ESSENTIALS OF THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE WORLD,

AND
THIRTY COLORED MAPS.

EDITED BY
J. FRANCON WILLIAMS, F.R.G.S.,
AUTHOR OF THE "GEOGRAPHY OF THE OCEANS."



LONDON:
GEORGE PHILIP & SON, 32 FLEET STREET, E.C.
LIVERPOOL: CAXTON BUILDINGS, SOUTH JOHN STREET, AND 49 & 51, SOUTH CASTLE STREET.
1882.

[Entered at Stationers' Hall.]

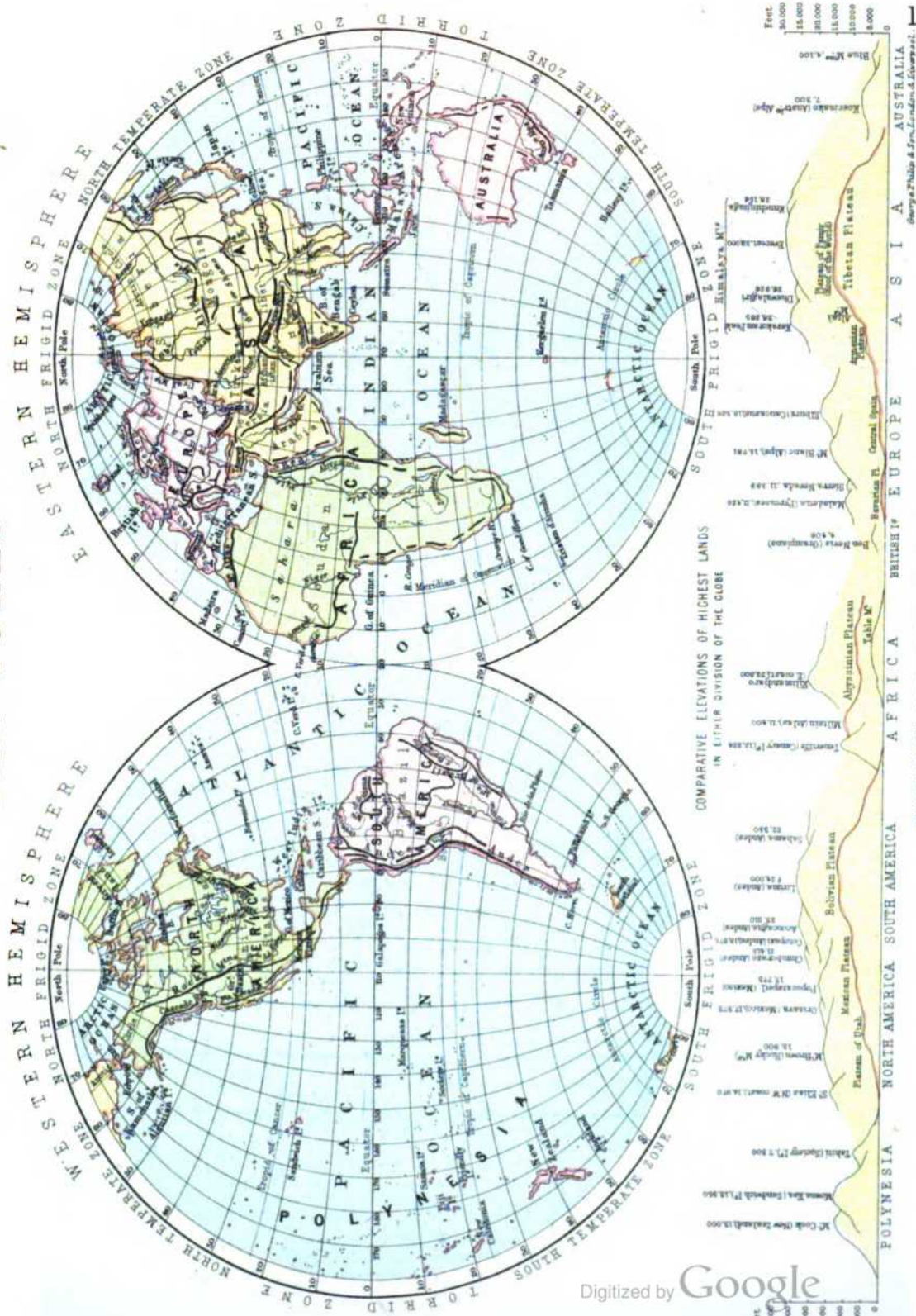
CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1	AFRICA	58
DEFINITIONS OF GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS	1	THE ATLAS REGION, OR NORTHERN AFRICA	60
LAND	2	EGYPT	60
WATER	3	NUBIA	61
DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH	5	ABYSSINIA	61
EUROPE	5	CENTRAL AFRICA	62
THE BRITISH ISLES	9	WESTERN AFRICA	62
ENGLAND AND WALES	9	EASTERN AFRICA	63
SCOTLAND	15	SOUTHERN AFRICA	63
IRELAND	18	ISLANDS OF AFRICA	64
FRANCE	21		
BELGIUM	23	AMERICA	65
HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS	24	NORTH AMERICA	65
SWITZERLAND	25	BRITISH NORTH AMERICA	67
THE GERMAN EMPIRE	26	GREENLAND	68
AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN EMPIRE	28	ALASKA	68
DENMARK	29	UNITED STATES	69
SWEDEN AND NORWAY	30	MEXICO	70
RUSSIA	31	CENTRAL AMERICA	71
TURKEY IN EUROPE	32	THE WEST INDIES	71
MONTENEGRO	33	SOUTH AMERICA	72
SERBIA	33	BRAZIL	74
ROUMANIA	33	GUIANA	74
GREECE	34	VENEZUELA	74
ITALY	35	COLOMBIA	75
SPAIN	37	ECUADOR	75
PORTUGAL	39	PERU	75
ASIA	40	BOLIVIA	76
TURKEY IN ASIA	43	CHILI	76
ARABIA	45	LA PLATA, OR THE ARGENTINE CONFEDERATION	76
PERSIA	46	PARAGUAY	76
BELUCHISTAN	47	URUGUAY	76
AFGHANISTAN	47	PATAGONIA	76
INDIA	48		
INDO-CHINESE COUNTRIES	51	AUSTRALIA	77
CHINESE EMPIRE	52	THE AUSTRALIAN COLONIES	78
ASIATIC RUSSIA	54		
TURKESTAN	55	POLYNESIA	79
MALAY ARCHIPELAGO	56	NEW ZEALAND	79
JAPAN	57	SMALLER ISLANDS OF POLYNESIA	80

LIST OF THE MAPS.

	FACING PAGE		FACING PAGE
THE WORLD IN HEMISPHERES	1	ASIA	40
EUROPE	5	WESTERN ASIA	43
ENGLAND AND WALES	9	INDIA	48
SCOTLAND	15	CHINESE EMPIRE AND JAPAN	52
IRELAND	18	MALAY ARCHIPELAGO	56
FRANCE	21	AFRICA	58
HOLLAND AND BELGIUM	23	SOUTH AFRICA	63
SWITZERLAND	25	NORTH AMERICA	65
GERMAN EMPIRE	26	DOMINION OF CANADA	67
AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN EMPIRE	28	UNITED STATES	69
SWEDEN AND NORWAY	30	WEST INDIES	71
RUSSIA	31	SOUTH AMERICA	72
TURKEY, GREECE, &C.	32	AUSTRALIA	77
ITALY	35	SOUTH-EAST AUSTRALIA	78
SPAIN AND PORTUGAL	37	NEW ZEALAND	79

THE WORLD



PHILIPS' ELEMENTARY ATLAS AND GEOGRAPHY.

INTRODUCTION.

GEOGRAPHY is a description of the Earth; that is, an account of the Lands and Seas which constitute the surface of the earth, with their respective Climates, Productions, and Inhabitants. Such a description involves—

1. An account of the natural features of the earth's surface, and of the climate, minerals, plants, and animals which belong to different regions.
2. A description of the various countries into which the earth is divided, with the condition and pursuits of their inhabitants, and the names and places of the principal towns in each.

The description of the natural features of the globe comes under the head of **Physical Geography**; that of the different countries into which the earth is divided is distinguished as **Descriptive** (or **Political**) **Geography**. In the account of each country, the natural features are here noticed first, the inhabitants next, and the various divisions of the country, with the towns in each, last in order.

Definitions of Geographical Terms.

1. The **EARTH** is very nearly a globe in shape—that is, it is round (like a ball or an orange). It measures about 25,000 miles round, and a straight line supposed to pass through its centre would be about 8,000 miles long. The former of these measures is called the **Circumference** of the earth, the latter its **Diameter**.

2. The earth is constantly turning round, in a direction from west to east, upon an imaginary line (called its **Axis**), which passes through its centre, and which therefore forms one of its diameters. This motion is the cause of day and night, and is called its **Daily** or **Diurnal Motion**, because the earth rotates on its axis once a day.

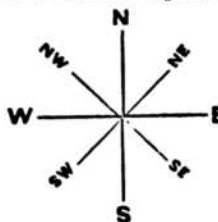
3. The earth's **Axis** is the imaginary line upon which it turns. Its extremities are called the **Poles** of the earth. One of them is the **North Pole**, the other the **South Pole**.

4. The earth also revolves round the sun once a year. This motion causes the four seasons—Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter, and is called its **Annual Motion**.

5. The **Equator** is a circle drawn round the earth midway between the poles—that is, at exactly the same distance from each pole.

The equator thus divides the globe into two halves or **Hemispheres**—a Northern Hemisphere and a Southern Hemisphere. The northern hemisphere is that half of the globe which is between the equator and the north pole, and the southern hemisphere is the half that is between the equator and the south pole.

6. North, South, East, and West are terms used to express the relative positions of places to one another. They are the four **Cardinal Points** of the compass—an instrument used to determine the respective bearings of places.



There are altogether thirty-two points of the compass—twenty-eight of the number being intermediate between the four cardinal points. The point lying midway between north and east is called *North-east*; that midway between north and west is *North-west*. In like manner the points lying midway between the east and west and the south points are called *South-east* and *South-west*.

7. A **Meridian** is a line drawn round the earth in the exact direction of North and South—that is, passing through the poles, and crossing the equator at right angles.

Such a line may be supposed to pass through any given place on the earth's surface (and may, of course, be actually drawn upon the surface of the artificial globe); it is then called the meridian of that place. Thus, a line drawn through London in the exact direction of north and south is called the Meridian of London.

8. The **Positions of Places** on the earth's surface are indicated by means of latitude and longitude.

Latitude is distance in the direction of north and south. **Longitude** is distance in the direction of east and west. The amount either of latitude or longitude is expressed in degrees. Every circle, whether great or small, is supposed to be divided into 360 equal parts or *Degrees*. A quarter of a circle (or *quadrant*) contains, therefore, 90 degrees.

9. **Latitude** is distance measured, in degrees, from the equator towards either pole; and the greatest latitude which a place can have is 90 degrees—that is, the extreme distance of either pole from the line of the equator.

All places situated between the equator and the north pole are said to be in North Latitude; all places that lie between the equator and the south pole are in South Latitude.

10. **Longitude** is distance to the east or west of any given meridian, and is measured half-way round the globe—that is, 180 degrees upon each side of any meridian—and is called East Longitude or West Longitude, according as it is to the east or to the west of the meridian that is used.

In England we use the meridian supposed to pass through Greenwich (near London), where our National Observatory is situated. Hence we say that a place is so many degrees longitude east of Greenwich, or west of Greenwich.

11. Every **Degree** is divided into sixty equal parts called *Minutes*, and every minute is divided into sixty equal parts or *Seconds*.

The following signs are used to express degrees, minutes, and seconds: " ' ". If it is necessary to express distances (either of latitude or longitude) which are less than a degree, we say that a place is in so many degrees, so many minutes, and so many seconds, using these signs. Thus, $24^{\circ} 16' 8''$ means twenty-four degrees, sixteen minutes, and eight seconds; just in the same way that, in order to express an amount of money, we might say £24 16s. 8d., that is, twenty-four pounds, sixteen shillings, and eight pence.

12. **Parallels of Latitude** are circles drawn round the globe in a direction parallel to the equator.

Parallels are usually drawn upon artificial globes and maps at every ten (or sometimes every five) degrees apart. They serve to show, in a general way, the latitudes of various places. Places that are on (or near) the same parallel have, of course, the same (or nearly the same) latitude.

13. **Meridian Lines** are drawn in the exact direction of north and south, and serve to show the longitudes of places.

Meridians are generally drawn upon globes and maps at distances either of five or ten degrees apart. Places that are on (or near) the same meridian have the same (or nearly the same) longitude.

14. The **Tropics** are circles drawn round the globe in a direction parallel to the equator, and at a distance of $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from that line.

That drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ to the north of the equator is called the *Tropic of Cancer*; the similar circle drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ south of the equator is called the *Tropic of Capricorn*. These lines mark the farther distances, on either side of the equator, within which the sun is vertical.

15. The two **Polar Circles** are drawn round the globe in a direction parallel to the equator, and at distances of $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from either pole.

The circle drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from the north pole is distinguished as the *Arctic Circle*. That drawn at $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from the south pole is called the *Antarctic Circle*. These circles mark the limits (from either pole) within which the sun remains wholly above the horizon for a term of more than twenty-four hours at one season of the year, or does not rise for a term of more than twenty-four hours at the opposite period of the year.

16. **Zones**.—The tropics and polar circles serve to divide the surface of the earth into five *Zones*—one torrid zone, two temperate zones, and two frigid zones.

(1) The **Torrid Zone** extends on either side of the equator, and is bounded on the north by the tropic of cancer, and on the south by the tropic of capricorn.

(2) The **North Temperate Zone** is the space between the tropic of cancer and the arctic circle.

(3) The **South Temperate Zone** lies between the tropic of capricorn and the antarctic circle.

(4) The **North Frigid Zone** embraces the space within the arctic circle surrounding the north pole.

(5) The **South Frigid Zone** comprises that within the antarctic circle surrounding the south pole.

. The *Torrid Zone* is the hottest part of the world, because there the sun is vertical, or directly overhead. The *Frigid Zones* are the coldest parts of the globe, for there the sun is, during a portion of the year, wholly absent—not rising above the horizon for weeks (or months) in continuous succession. The *Temperate Zones* (as the word "temperate" implies) are neither so hot as the torrid zone, nor so cold as the frigid zones.

The surface of the earth is divided into **LAND** and **WATER**. The land occupies little better than one-quarter of the whole. Nearly three-fourths of the earth's surface are covered by water.

I.—LAND.

The following terms are used to denote various portions of the land:—

1. **Continent**.—The largest divisions of land are called *Continents*. There are six *Continents*: Europe, Asia, Africa, North America, South America, and Australia.¹

(1) **Europe** is the north-western portion of the Old World, from the rest of which it is separated by the Mediterranean Sea and the Ural Mountains.

(2) **Asia** is the eastern, and by far the largest, portion of the Old World.

(3) **Africa** is the southern portion of the Old World, and is separated from Europe by the Mediterranean Sea, and from Asia by the Red Sea and the Isthmus of Suez.

(4) **America**, though sometimes spoken of as one continent, is divided into two—viz., *North America* and *South America*, united only by the narrow Isthmus of Panama.

(5) **Australia** is an immense island lying to the south-east of Asia.*

. Of the above divisions of the land, Europe, Asia, Africa and Australia are in the *Eastern Hemisphere*, and North and South America in the *Western Hemisphere*.

2. **Island**.—A portion of land *entirely* surrounded by water is called an *Island*.

Borneo, Madagascar, Iceland, Great Britain—any one of which may be readily found upon the artificial globe, or on the map of the world—are examples of islands.

3. **Peninsula**.—A portion of land *nearly* surrounded by water is called a *Peninsula*.

¹ Europe, Asia, and Africa together form the Eastern Continent, or the *Old World*, so called because they were known to the nations of antiquity. America, often called the *New World*, was not discovered until a comparatively modern period—towards the close of the 15th century.

*Australia, New Zealand, and the numerous islands and Archipelagos in the Pacific, are sometimes classed together under the general name of *Oceania*.

Italy, Greece, Florida, Arabia, are examples of peninsulas. Sweden and Norway (together) also present an example of a peninsula; so, too, do Spain and Portugal.

4. **Isthmus**.—A narrow neck of land which unites any two larger portions is called an *Isthmus*.

As, for example, the Isthmus of Suez, which unites Asia and Africa; the Isthmus of Panama, which joins North and South America; and the Isthmus of Corinth, which joins the southern part of Greece (the Morea) to the mainland.

5. **Coast**.—The line where the land and water meet is called the *Coast*.

The term **Coast** is used when *land*, and **Shore** is used when the *sea*, is spoken of. The **Beach** is that part of the land between the high and low water-marks.

6. **Cape**.—A point of land which advances beyond the general coast-line, so as to project or jut into the water, is called a *Cape* or *Point*.

The terms Promontory, Head, or Headland, are often applied to capes—the first more especially to high points of land. Cape Comorin (the southern point of India), Cape Horn (at the south of the New World), the Cape of Good Hope (in the south of Africa), and Flamborough Head (on the east coast of England), are examples of capes.

7. **Plain**.—A portion of land not much raised above the sea, and with a generally level surface, is called a *Plain* or *Lowland*.

Some of the great plains are distinguished by special names, such as—

The **Landes**, or sandy plains of S.W. France.

The **Steppes** of Russia and Central Asia, open and treeless plains.

The **Tundras** of Siberia, low swampy plains sloping into the Arctic Ocean.

The **Savannahs** and **Prairies** of North America.

The **Llanos** or grass flats of the Orinoco.

The **Selvas** or forest-plains of the Amazon. } In S. America.

The **Pampas** or thistly flats of La Plata.

8. **Table-land**.—A tract of land which rises to a considerable height (as a thousand feet or upwards) above the level of the sea, is called a *Table-land* or *Plateau*.

The country called Tibet (in Central Asia) is an example of a plateau or table-land; so also is the interior of Spain, in the European quarter of the globe.

9. **Mountain**.—A smaller portion of land rising above the adjoining plain forms a *Hill* or *Mountain*. When many such elevations occur close beside one another, they form a *Mountain-group*, or if in succession in one line, a *Mountain-range* or *Chain*.

The Grampian Hills, in Scotland; the mountains called the Alps, between Italy and Switzerland; the Himalaya Mountains, in Asia, are examples.¹

*. A narrow opening between two adjoining mountains is called a *Mountain-pass*, and also, in some cases, a *Defile* or *Ravine*. The passes over mountain-chains lie in some instances at vast heights above the plains below.

¹ The heights of places are generally expressed in feet, and are calculated from the level of the sea—that is, from the average level of the waters which cover so large a portion of the earth's surface. Thus we say of a mountain or a table-land that it is so many thousand feet above the level of the sea.

10. A **Volcano** is generally a conical elevation with a cup-like hollow at its summit called a *Crater*, from which lava, &c., are ejected.¹

11. **Valley**.—A sloping portion of land, bounded on either side by lands of greater height, forms a *Valley*. The forms, both of valleys and of hills, are infinitely varied. Sometimes the slopes are long and gentle. In other cases they are abrupt and steep, so that the valley passes gradually into a ravine or defile.

Valleys are generally named after the rivers which flow through them, as the *Valley of the Nile*. In Scotland the terms *Strath*, *Carse*, *Dale*, &c., are used, as *Strathmore*, &c.

12. **Desert**.—A tract of country which does not allow of sufficient cultivation to be fit for the settled abode of man, is called a *Desert*.

The vast region called the Sahara, in Africa, is the most prominent example. It is to the want of water that the sterility of such tracts is for the most part due. But even in the Sahara there are here and there a few fertile spots called *Oases*.

II. WATER.

The terms applied to various portions of the waters of the globe are the following:—

1. **Ocean**.—The vast expanse of water which covers the larger portion of the earth's surface is called the *Ocean*, and is divided by the intervening lands into three great basins—the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Oceans. The waters which lie around the north pole are, in addition, distinguished as the Arctic Ocean, and those in the neighbourhood of the antarctic circle are called the Antarctic or Southern Ocean. There are, therefore, in all, five oceans.

The *Pacific Ocean* is by far the largest of the oceans, and covers more than a third part of the earth's surface. It is oval in shape, and has no strictly inland seas. The *Atlantic Ocean* has the shape of a long valley, and winding from north to south in the shape of the letter S. To it belong the Mediterranean and other large inland seas. The *Indian Ocean* is much smaller than the Atlantic or the Pacific. The *Arctic Ocean* is an almost circular basin, bounded by the northern coasts of Europe, Asia, and America. Neither the shape nor the size of the *Antarctic Ocean* is yet known.

2. **Sea**.—The word *sea* is sometimes used as an equivalent for ocean, but is more generally applied to less extensive portions of the water, situated near the land. A sea which penetrates within the land, so as to be nearly enclosed by it, is called an *Inland Sea*.

The Mediterranean is the largest of inland seas. The Red Sea, between Africa and Asia, and the Baltic Sea, in the north of Europe, are other examples.

3. **Inlets**, or indentations of the coast-line, are variously named according to their form and size.

¹ Volcanoes are either *active*, as Vesuvius, or *extinct*, as Puy de Dôme, &c., in the Mountains of Auvergne.

- (1) A **Bay** is a short arm of the sea indenting the land, or an open bend in the line of coast, as the *Bay of Biscay*.
 (2) A **Gulf** is a longer arm of the sea, penetrating farther into the land, as the *Gulf of Venice*.
 (3) A **Bight** is an open bend in the coast, as the *Bight of Biafra*.
 (4) A **Creek** or **Cove** is a small opening in the coast.
 (5) A **Firth** (*Fiord*, or *Fjord*) is a narrow inlet, as the *Firth of Forth*.
 (6) An **Estuary** is an inlet forming the mouth of a tidal river, as the *Estuary of the Thames*.

4. Strait—Channel.—The portions of water connecting larger expanses are called *Straits*, *Channels*, or *Sounds*.

- (1) A **Strait** is a narrow arm of the sea connecting two larger portions, as the *Strait of Gibraltar*, which forms the entrance of the Mediterranean; the *Strait of Dover*, which unites the seas on the eastern and southern coasts of England; and the *Strait of Babel-Mandeb*, at the entrance of the Red Sea.
 (2) A **Channel** is a broader arm of the sea, as the *English Channel*, between the coasts of England and France.
 (3) A **Sound** is a narrow arm of the sea between an island and the mainland, as the *Sound*, between Sweden and the island of Zealand.

5. Lake.—A lake is a body of inland water surrounded by land.

The lakes of Geneva and Constance, in Switzerland; Lake Ladoga, in Russia; and Lake Superior, in North America, are examples. Small lakes often occur in mountainous countries, their beds consisting of hollows or depressions in the land, in which the running waters have accumulated.¹

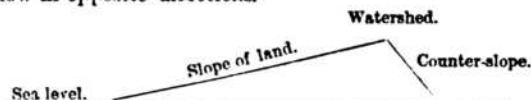
6. River.—A river is a stream of water running through the land, and generally rises in high ground, and discharges

its waters into the sea, sometimes passing through one or more lakes on its way.

Almost every place has in its neighbourhood examples of small running streams or brooks: the junction of several such brooks, so that their waters become united in a larger channel or water-course, forms a river. The *Thames*, the *Saône*, and the *Shannon*, in our own islands, are among the most prominent examples of rivers; the *Danube* and the *Volga*, on the continent of Europe, are instances on a larger scale.

- (1) The **Source** of a river is where it begins.
 (2) The **Mouth** of a river is where it ends.
 (3) The **Bed** of a river is the hollow along which it flows.
 (4) The **Banks** of a river are the margins of land between which it flows—that on the right-hand side is the *right bank*, that on the left the *left bank*.
 (5) The **Length** of a river is the distance between its source and its mouth.
 (6) The **Width** of a river is the distance between its banks.
 (7) A **Tributary** or an **Affluent** is a small stream which joins a larger river.
 (8) The **Basin** of a river is the whole tract of country which is watered by it and its tributaries.

7. Water-shed.—A water-shed, or more correctly, “water-parting,” is the ground which divides two adjacent streams that flow in opposite directions.



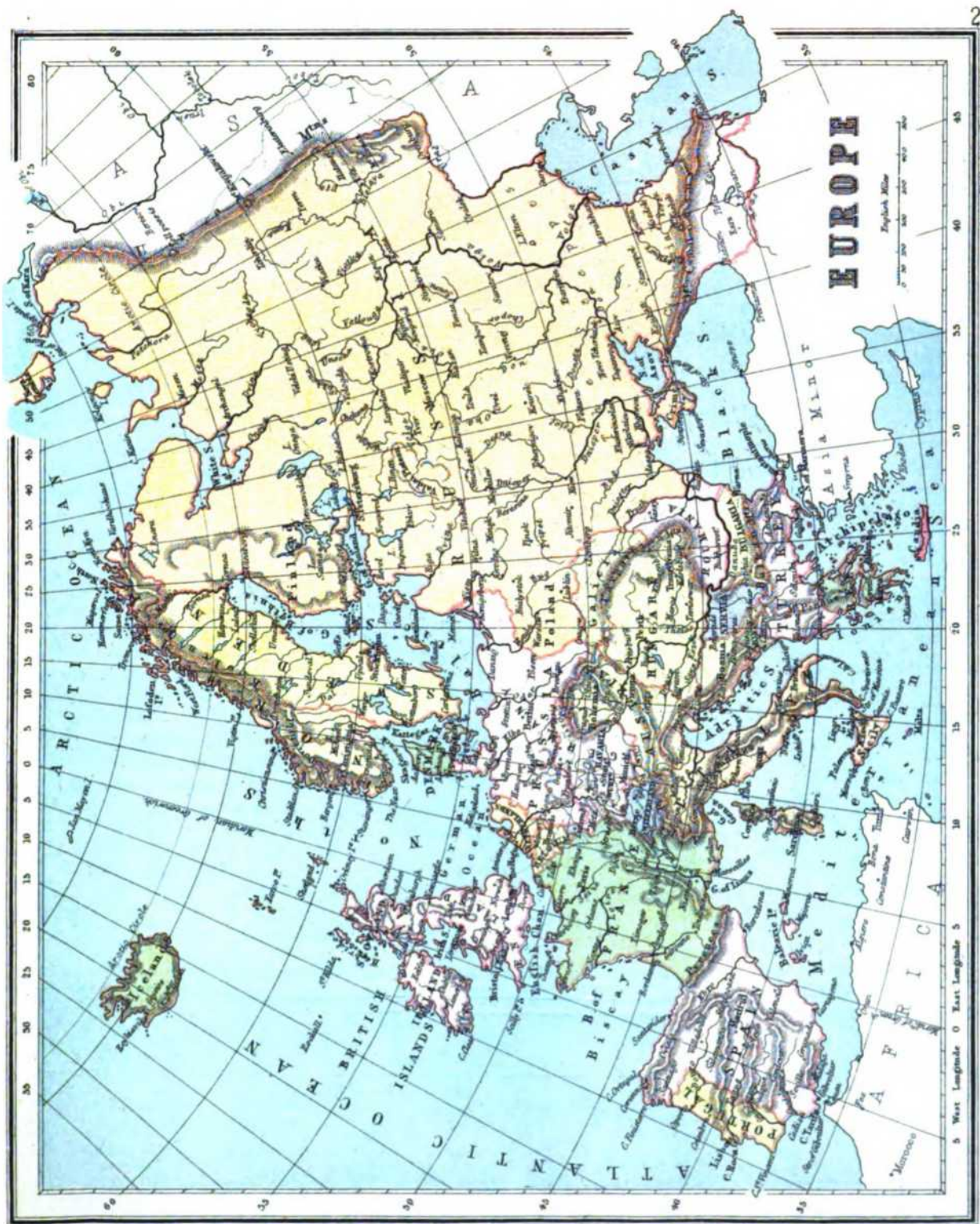
This generally (but by no means always) consists of a high tract of land, sometimes a chain of mountains; and it is, in every case, formed by ground which is higher than that through which the streams actually flow, for the natural tendency of water is to run down a sloping ground, from a higher to a lower level. Some rivers, however, rise in ground which is nearly level, and at only a trifling height above the sea; and, in such cases, the watershed may consist of ground which does not exhibit any marked elevation above the adjoining plain.

¹ Lakes may be thus classified :—

1. Lakes which receive rivers, but have no outlet.
2. Lakes which do not receive any rivers, but have an outlet.
3. Lakes which both receive and emit rivers.
4. Lakes which receive no rivers, and have no outlet.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of the term Geography?
2. What subjects are embraced within that portion of the study which is known as Physical Geography?
3. What subjects are included under the head of Descriptive (or Political) Geography?
4. What is the shape of the Earth, and what (in round numbers) are its dimensions?
5. What is the Axis of the Earth, and what are the extremities of the Earth's axis called?
6. In what direction is the Earth's motion round its axis performed, and what phenomena does this motion produce?
7. What are the Poles of the Earth, and how are they distinguished?
8. What is the Equator, and how does it divide the globe?
9. What is meant by the Points of the Compass? How many of them are there, and how are the four principal points named?
10. What is a Meridian?
11. What is Latitude, and in what is it expressed?
12. What is the greatest latitude a place can have?
13. What is Longitude, and from what is it measured?
14. How many degrees of longitude, upon either side of a given meridian, would measure half-way round the globe?
15. What are Parallels of Latitude, and what purpose do they serve?
16. What are Meridian lines, and what purpose do they serve?
17. What are the Tropics, and what do they serve to indicate?
18. What are the Polar Circles, and by what names are they distinguished in the opposite hemispheres?
19. How many Zones are there, and by what names are they distinguished?
20. Which of the zones has the greatest amount of heat, and why?
21. Why are the Frigid Zones the coldest parts of the Earth?
22. What proportions do the Land and Water on the surface of the globe bear to its whole extent?
23. What is a Continent?
24. How many continents are there? Name them.
25. Which of the continents belong to the Old, and which to the New World?
26. What is an Island?
27. Give some examples of islands, and find out their places either upon the Map of the World, or upon an Artificial Globe.
28. What is a Peninsula?
29. Name some examples of peninsulas, and point to their places on the map.
30. What is an Isthmus? Name some examples.
31. What is a Cape or Head? Give some examples of Capes.
32. What is a Lowland? Name some examples of lowlands.
33. Explain the words Table-land, Highland, or Plateau, and name some examples.
34. What is a Hill, or Mountain, and of what does a Mountain-chain consist?
35. What is meant by the term Mountain-pass, Ravine, or Defile?
36. What is a valley, and what varieties of aspect do valleys exhibit?
37. What is a Desert? To what cause are deserts, for the most part, due?
38. What is the Ocean? Into what portions is the ocean divided, and what are their names?
39. What is an Inland Sea? Name some examples of inland seas, and say which is the largest of the number.
40. What is a Gulf, or Bay? Name some examples.
41. What is a Strait?
42. Name the straits which lead, respectively, into the Mediterranean and the Red Sea.
43. What is a Channel? Name some examples, and find their places upon the Map of the World.
44. What is a Lake? Name some examples.
45. What is a River?
46. Name, as examples of rivers, three of the streams belonging to the British Islands, and also two of those on the Continent of Europe.
47. What are the small streams that join larger rivers called?
48. What is meant by the Basin of a river?
49. What is meant by the term Watershed?



GEORGE PHILIP & SON LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

George Philip & Son, London & Liverpool.

DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH.

EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, AMERICA, AUSTRALIA, and POLYNESIA are the six great divisions of the Earth. Five of the number, as we have already seen, are continents—that is, large masses of land; the last mentioned of them, Polynesia, consists of a vast number of islands, which lie within the Pacific Ocean, and are surrounded by its waters.

EUROPE.

EUROPE lies entirely within the northern hemisphere, and forms the north-western portion of the Old World.

Boundaries.—Europe is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by the Mediterranean Sea, the Black Sea, and the chain of Mount Caucasus; and on the east by the Caspian Sea, the river Ural, and the range of the Ural Mountains.

Extent.—Europe measures about 2500 miles from north to south, and rather more than 3000 miles in its greatest dimensions east and west. Its area, or extent of surface, is 3,700,000 square miles.¹

Europe is therefore (next to Australia) the smallest of the continents; it being about one-fifth the size of Asia, one-fourth of America, one-third of Africa, and one-fourteenth of the total area of the land surface, or one-fifty-third part of the whole surface of the globe.

Coasts.—Very irregular, exhibiting a great many indentations, by means of which the waters of the adjoining seas penetrate far within the general line of its coast. This circumstance causes Europe to have a greater extent of coast-line, in proportion to its size, than is possessed by any of the other continents.*

Inlets.—The principal inland seas, bays, and gulfs belonging to Europe are:—the Mediterranean, Sea of Marmora, Black Sea, and Sea of Azov, on the south; the Caspian Sea on the south-east; the Bay of Biscay, English Channel, Irish Sea, North Sea or German Ocean, Zuyder Zee, and Baltic Sea, on the west; and the White Sea on the north.

(1) The *Mediterranean* is the largest inland sea in the world, and includes the Gulf of Lyons, the Gulf of Genoa, the Adriatic Sea, the Gulf of Corinth, and the Archipelago.

(2) The *Black Sea* is subject to sudden and violent storms and dense fogs, whence its name, "Kara Deniz,"—the "Black Sea."

(3) The *Bay of Biscay* is frequently disturbed by violent storms.

(4) The *North Sea* and the *English Channel* are between Great Britain and the Continent.

(5) The *Irish Sea* is between Ireland and Great Britain.

(6) The *Baltic Sea* includes the Gulfs of Bothnia, Finland, and Riga, and is generally shallow, especially in the north.

(7) The *Zuyder Zee* was formed by an irruption of the sea in the 13th century.

Channels and Straits.—The principal are:—

(1) The *Skager-rack* and *Cattegat*, leading from the North Sea into—
(2) The *Sound*, *Great Belt*, and *Little Belt*—three straits opening into the Baltic Sea.

(3) *Strait of Dover*, connecting the North Sea and the English Channel.

(4) *Strait of Gibraltar*, leading from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mediterranean Sea.

(5) *Strait of Messina*, between Italy and Sicily.

(6) *Strait of Bonifacio*, between Corsica and Sardinia.

(7) The *Dardanelles*, leading from the Mediterranean to the Sea of Marmora.

(8) *Channel of Constantinople*, or Bosphorus, leading from the Sea of Marmora to the Black Sea.

(9) *Strait of Kerch*, or Yenikale, joining the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov.

* The Sound, the Strait of Gibraltar, the Dardanelles, and the Channel of Constantinople, are the four most important of these straits:—the *Sound*, because it forms the most frequented channel of entrance to the Baltic Sea; the *Strait of Gibraltar*, because it is the only entrance to the Mediterranean; the *Dardanelles* and the *Channel of Constantinople*, because they are the means of entrance to the Black Sea.

Capes.—The principal capes are:—Cape Nordkyn, North Cape, and the Naze, in Norway; the Skaw, in Denmark; Ortegal and Finisterre, in Spain; Roca and St. Vincent, in Portugal; Trafalgar and Tarifa, in Spain; Di Leuca and Spartivento, in Italy; Matapan, in Greece.

The most northerly point of the continent of Europe is Cape Nordkyn. North Cape is on an island (Mageroe), and is 6' farther north. The most westerly point is Cape Roca, in Portugal, and the most southerly, Cape Tarifa, in Spain.

Peninsulas.—Of the six chief peninsulas* of Europe, two are in the north, and four in the south.

These six peninsulas are—Norway and Sweden, which together form the Scandinavian Peninsula; Jutland, which forms a portion of Denmark; Spain and Portugal, or the Spanish Peninsula; Italy; the Morea, which is part of Greece; and lastly, the Crimea, which is a part

* The exact places of these and other geographical features must be found upon the map of Europe. Without constant exercise upon the map, no real progress can be made in geographical knowledge. Frequent exercise upon blank or outline maps, when once the positions have been learned upon the ordinary map, is an excellent mode of fixing both names and positions in the learner's mind, and cannot be practised too much.

* It is a remarkable fact that all the larger peninsulas of Europe, except Jutland, are turned towards the south.

* Scandinavia was the ancient name of the countries lying on the western side of the Baltic Sea.

¹ A square mile is a space which measures one mile each way. It is in square miles that the size of countries is generally expressed. The whole surface of the globe is equal to 197,000,000 of square miles.

² The coast-line of Europe is estimated at 19,500 miles, or 1 mile of coast to every 190 square miles of area. In Russia no part is more than 700 miles from the sea; in all other European countries the distance is everywhere under 400 miles.

of Russia. All these peninsulas are connected with the mainland by *isthmuses*, of which the most important are:—

- (1) The *Isthmus of Corinth*, joining the Morea to the mainland of Greece.
- (2) The *Isthmus of Perekop*, uniting the Crimea to the mainland of Russia.

Islands.—Europe has belonging to it a great number of islands, of which the following are the most important:—

- (1) In the *Atlantic Ocean*, (naming them in order from north to south): Iceland, the Faroe Islands, the British Islands, the Channel Islands (off the coast of France), and the Azores or Western Islands.¹
- (2) In the *Arctic Ocean* are Nova Zembla, Vaygatz, Kolguev, Jan Mayen, and the Loffoden Islands.
- (3) In the *Baltic Sea* are Zealand, Funen, and several of smaller size, which together form the Danish Archipelago; with Rugen, Bornholm, Oland, Gothland, Oesel, Dago, and the group of the Aland Islands.
- (4) In the *Mediterranean* are Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Candia, and Cyprus,² which are all of large size. The smaller islands are Majorca, Minorca, and Iviza (which form together the Balearic Islands); Elba; the Lipari Islands; Malta; the Ionian Islands; and the numerous islands of the Archipelago, among which Negropont, or Eubœa, is the most considerable.

*. The *British Islands* are the most important of the above. They include England, Wales, and Scotland, which together form the island of Great Britain, with *Ireland*, and a great number of smaller islands adjacent to the larger ones. *Great Britain* is the largest island in Europe. *Sicily* is the largest island in the Mediterranean.

Mountains.—Europe exhibits great variety of surface. The southern parts of it are mountainous; the middle and western parts are less elevated, but may be called hilly; the north-western peninsula (Norway and Sweden) also contains high mountains; but the whole of eastern Europe is a vast and nearly level plain, only diversified by very slight elevations.

The principal mountain-chains of Europe are as follow:—

The *Alps*, on the borders of Italy, France, Switzerland, and Germany; the *Apennines*, in Italy; the *Balkan Mountains*, in Turkey; *Mount Pindus*, in Greece; the *Pyrenees*, between France and Spain; the *Sierra Nevada*, in Spain; the *Carpathian Mountains*, in the Austrian Empire, between Hungary and Galicia; the *Mountains of Germany*, in Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Hanover, Baden, &c.; the *Mountains of France*, in the centre and east of France; the *Scandinavian Mountains*, in Norway and Sweden; the *Ural Mountains*, in Russia, on the east border of Europe; *Mount Caucasus*, in Russia, on the south-east border of Europe.

- (1) The *Alps*³ are the highest and most extensive among the mountain systems of Europe. They include a great number of snow-covered summits, amongst which is *Mont Blanc*,⁴ 15,780 feet (or nearly three miles) in elevation, and the highest mountain in Europe.
- (2) The *Apennines* branch off from the Alps, and extend through nearly the whole length of Italy.
- (3) The *Balkan Mountains*, extending from the Black Sea westward towards the Adriatic.
- (4) The *Pyrenees* are covered with perpetual snow in their higher portions.
- (5) The *Sierra Nevada* are the highest mountains in the Spanish peninsula.

¹ The *Azores* lie a long way out in the ocean, 900 miles to the west of Portugal, hence too far to be shown upon the map.

² The island of *Cyprus* is reckoned to belong to Asia.

³ All the higher portions of the Alps are covered with perpetual snow. The continual accumulation of the snow gives rise to *glaciers*, or vast rivers of ice and frozen snow, which descend with slow but constant motion the sloping sides of the mountains, and advance far into the valleys beneath.

⁴ *Mont Blanc* is on the border-line of France and Italy.

(6) The *Carpathians* form nearly a semicircle, 700 miles in length, enclosing Hungary.

(7) The *Scandinavian Mountains*, in the north-west of Europe, are very much less elevated than the Alps, but owing to their higher latitude, and the consequently colder climate, their higher portions are always covered with snow.

Volcanoes.—The principal volcanoes are, *Hekla*, in Iceland; *Etna*, in Sicily; *Vesuvius*, near Naples; and *Stromboli*, one of the Lipari Islands.

Plains.—All the east of Europe is a great lowland or plain, including nearly the whole of Russia, and part of Germany, Denmark, and Holland. Besides this *Great Plain*, we have:—

- (1) The *Plain of Hungary*, in the eastern part of the Austrian Empire.
- (2) The *Plain of Roumania and Bulgaria*, to the north of Turkey.
- (3) The *Plain of Lombardy*, in the north of Italy.
- (4) The *Plain of Languedoc*, in the south of France.
- (5) The *Plain of Bohemia*, in the north-west of Austria.
- (6) The *Plain of Andalusia*, in southern Spain.

Rivers.—The longest river of Europe is the *Volga*, which flows into the Caspian Sea. The second in length is the *Danube*, which discharges into the Black Sea. The river *Dnieper*, which also flows into the Black Sea, is third in order, and the *Don*, which runs into the Sea of Azov, comes fourth. These four rivers are all in the east of Europe. The longest river of Western Europe is the *Rhine*, which flows into the North Sea.

The principal rivers of Europe are named in the following list, in the order of the seas into which they flow:—

- (1) *Flowing directly into the Arctic Ocean*:—Petchora.
- (2) *Flowing into the White Sea*:—Mezen, Dvina, Onega.
- (3) *Flowing directly into the Atlantic*:—Glommen, Göta, Loire, Garonne, Minho, Douro, Tagus, Guadiana, Guadalquivir, Shannon.
- (4) *Flowing into the Baltic Sea*:—Oder, Vistula, Niemen, Dvina, Neva, Tornea, Dal.
- (5) *Flowing into the North Sea*:—Elbe, Weser, Rhine, Meuse or Maas, Scheldt, Thames, Trent, Ouse, [Humber,] Tay.
- (6) *Flowing into the English Channel*:—Seine.
- (7) *Flowing into the Bristol Channel*:—Severn.
- (8) *Flowing into the Mediterranean*:—Ebro, Rhone, Arno, Tiber, Po, Adige, Maritza.
- (9) *Flowing into the Black Sea*:—Danube, Dniester, Dnieper, Kouban.
- (10) *Flowing into the Sea of Azov*:—Don.
- (11) *Flowing into the Caspian Sea*:—Volga, Kouma.

Sources of European Rivers.—The following derive their waters from the *Alps*:—the Rhine, Rhone, Po, and Adige. The *Apennines* contain the sources of the Tiber and the Arno. The *mountains of Germany* give rise to the following:—the Danube, Elbe, and Weser. The three following have their sources among the *Carpathian Mountains*:—the Dniester, Oder, and Vistula. The *Pyrenees* contain the source of the Garonne. The other *mountain-chains and highlands of the Spanish peninsula* give rise to the Minho, Douro, Tagus, Guadiana, and Guadalquivir. The *mountains of Central France*, with the adjacent plains of that country, contain the sources of the Loire, Seine, and Meuse. The *Scandinavian Mountains* (Dovrefield, &c.) give rise to the Tornea, Lulea, Pitea, Umea, Indals, Dal, Glommen, and Göta. The river *Ural* rises in the *Ural Mountains*. The river *Kouban* rises in *Mount Caucasus*. The following rivers originate in the *great lowland plain of Europe*:—the Volga, Don, Dnieper, Southern Dvina, Niemen, Northern Dvina, and Petchora.

Lakes.—The principal lakes, with the countries in which they are situated, are:—*Ladoga, Onega, Saima, Peipous, in Russia; Wener, Wetter, Maelar, in Sweden; Mösen, in Norway; Balaton, or Platten See, in Hungary; Geneva, Constance, Neufchatel, Lucerne, Zurich, in Switzerland; Garda, Maggiore, Como, in Italy; Windermere, in England; Lomond, in Scotland; Neagh, in Ireland.*

(1) Lake *Ladoga* is the largest lake in Europe; it covers an area greater than that of the county of York. Lake *Onega* is second in magnitude; Lake *Wener* third.

(2) The *Caspian Sea*, which lies on the borders of Europe and Asia, is really a vast lake, without any outlet, and its waters are salt, like those of the open sea. Even small lakes, however, which, like the Caspian, have no outlet for their waters, are usually salt. But the water of lakes in general is sweet and fresh.¹

Climate.—Nearly the whole of Europe falls within the north temperate zone. This division of the globe is therefore free alike from the great extremes of heat and cold which belong to other regions. There are, notwithstanding, great differences between the temperatures experienced in various countries of Europe. There is a gradual diminution of heat in passing from south to north, from the shores of the Mediterranean to those of the Baltic, and from the coasts of the Baltic to those of the Arctic Ocean. The countries of southern Europe are hot, those of middle Europe moderately warm, its more northerly regions cool, and the extreme north intensely cold.

(1) The long days and short nights which distinguish the summer of high latitudes occasion an excessive degree of heat for a brief period, even on the shores of the polar sea. But this is contrasted by the length and severity of the winter within similar localities, when the sun is below the horizon for lengthened periods. *The extremes of heat and cold, at the opposite seasons of summer and winter, become, in fact, more strongly marked as we approach the polar circle.* Hence, in such countries as Norway, Lapland, Iceland, and the northern part of Russia, there is a short but very hot summer, and a long and intensely severe winter; while in lower latitudes, as in the countries of middle and southern Europe, the seasons of summer and winter present less strongly-marked contrasts.

(2) Another thing that strongly affects the climate of European countries is the influence of the vast ocean which washes its western shores. The countries of western Europe, bordering on the Atlantic, and under the influence of winds which blow from over its vast surface, enjoy greater uniformity of temperature than the countries of eastern Europe, which are so much further removed from the ocean. In other words, the countries of western Europe have cooler summers and milder winters than the countries towards the extreme east of the continent.

(3) A greater quantity of rain falls in the south of Europe than in its middle portions, and more in its middle latitudes than further north. Warm countries, in general, have more rain than cold countries. More rain falls also in the west of Europe than in the east—a consequence of its proximity to the Atlantic Ocean, the winds blowing from which are abundantly charged with moisture. Along the whole western side of

Europe (including the British Islands) westerly winds are generally accompanied with rain, while easterly winds—blowing from over large tracts of land—are dry.

Natural Productions.—The natural productions of the earth form three great classes—*mineral, vegetable, and animal.*

1. To the first belong the different metals (gold, silver, copper, iron, &c.) and the various mineral substances, including coal, salt, the various earths, as well as marbles, building-stones, and slates.

2. The second class includes all the productions of the vegetable world, from the largest trees of the forest to flowers and plants of the minutest size, as mosses and lichens.

3. The third embraces the infinite varieties of animal life—the inhabitants of the land, sea, and air alike.

In the last division, the lowest place is occupied by the insect world; next in order come fishes, and then, successively, reptiles, birds, and the various land animals, the highest of all being man himself.

* * Europe possesses, among its natural productions, a very large proportion of such minerals, plants, and animals as are most useful to man.¹ *In fact, no other part of the earth equals Europe in the abundant possession of what is most capable of supplying, with the due exercise of industry, the wants of civilised man.*

Minerals.—Europe is characterised by the abundance of iron, copper, lead, zinc, and other useful ores, as well as by its valuable coal-fields. It is in Great Britain and Belgium that the abundant distribution of *iron* and *coal* is most strikingly evidenced.

Coal occurs in France, Germany, and some other countries of Europe, though much less plentifully. In most of the countries of continental Europe, wood serves as the chief fuel. *Iron* is most plentiful in Great Britain, and next so in Belgium, France, Russia, Sweden and Norway, and parts of Germany. *Tin*, a valuable metal, is almost confined to England, where it has been worked, from a very early age, in the county of Cornwall. It occurs, in smaller quantity, in the north-west of Spain. The precious metals—*gold* and *silver*—are only sparingly found in Europe—*gold* in Hungary and Russia; *silver* in Hungary, parts of Germany, and also in Norway and Spain. *Platinum*, a valuable metal, is found in Russia, within the region of the Ural Mountains. *Quicksilver* is supplied by Spain, Austria, and Bavaria. *Salt* is an abundant produce of Russia, Austrian Poland, England, France, Spain, Portugal, and parts of Germany.

Vegetation.—The food-plants that are characteristic of temperate latitudes in general thrive in this division of the globe.

(1) *Wheat, barley, rye, oats*, are grown abundantly over the larger portion of Europe, and *maize* (or Indian corn) in the more southerly division of the continent.

(2) Among fruits, the *apple, pear, plum, cherry, currant, and gooseberry*, belong to the middle latitudes of Europe; the *vine* to its more southwardly regions; the *orange, lemon, citron, and fig* to the shores of the Mediterranean.

(3) Of trees, the countries lying to the south of the Alps and the Pyrenees are distinguished by the abundance of evergreens; while the forest-growth of middle and northern Europe is chiefly *deciduous*,² embracing such trees as the *oak, ash, beech, elm, larch, willow, alder, maple, sycamore*, and the various *pin*es and *firs*.

¹ Many lakes (indeed, the greater number) both receive and discharge a running stream. In Switzerland the Rhone enters the upper extremity of the Lake of Geneva, as the Rhine does that of the lake of Constance; and in each instance the stream re-issues from the lower end of the lake.

The lakes situated in the south of Europe occur within mountainous tracts of country, and are hence surrounded by very varied scenery—often in the highest degree beautiful. Those that belong to northern Europe lie mostly in the neighbourhood of the Baltic Sea, and are generally within level regions.

² Some of the plants and animals that are now abundant in Europe have been brought from other parts of the globe, but a large proportion are native to its soil.

³ Deciduous trees are those which cast their leaves annually.

Animals.—The vast number of *domestic animals* that are reared in Europe—either as the food of man, or for various other uses—is the most striking feature in its zoology. Many of the *wild animals* which were once common to Europe have greatly diminished in number. The variety of *birds* is great, except in the extreme north, and it is throughout singularly free from venomous reptiles. *Fish* of nearly every variety abound in the seas and rivers; and of *insects*, the kinds that are annoying and hurtful to man are, happily, rare in this portion of the globe.

(1) The *sheep*, *ox*, *pig*, and *goat*—the *horse*, *ass*, and *dog*—abound in every part of Europe. The *reindeer* supplies to the inhabitants of the extreme north of Europe (Lapland) the place of other domestic quadrupeds.

(2) Among the wild animals are the *wild boar* and the *bear*, as well as the *wolf*, which were formerly common in the British Islands; the *wild ox*, in the forests of Russia; the *red-deer*, the *fallow-deer*, and others of the same tribe, in middle Europe; the *chamois* and the *ibex* (animals of the goat kind) in the Alps.

(3) The web-footed birds (*geese*, *ducks*, &c.) are most numerous in high latitudes. The *stork*, the *crane*, the *heron*, the *pelican*, the *spoon-bill*, and the *flamingo* belong to the west and the south of Europe. The *vulture* and *eagle* tribe are most numerous in the high mountain-region of the south—that is, the Alps and Pyrenees. The *owl* is found in nearly every part of the continent.

(4) *Lizards* are common in the countries that border on the Mediterranean, but are perfectly harmless. The *chameleon* occurs in Spain.

(5) The fisheries of the Mediterranean, Black, Baltic, and Caspian Seas are all highly valuable. The *tunny*, which is the largest of edible fish, is found in the Mediterranean. The seas that surround the British Islands contain a vast abundance of such fish as the *cod*, *herring*, *mackerel*, *turbot*, and *pilchard*, besides the *crab*, *lobster*, *prawn*, and many others. The *salmon* abounds in the rivers of northern and western Europe, as it also does in the Volga and other streams of eastern Russia.

(6) The most useful member of the insect tribe—the common *honey-bee*—is reared in most European countries. The *silk-worm* is numerously reared in the south of Europe—in Italy, Spain, Switzerland, and the south of France. The *scorpion* is found in the south of Europe.

Inhabitants.—The *population* of Europe amounts to upwards of 320 millions, or about a fourth part of the entire human race. This shows a much higher ratio of population, as compared to extent of surface, than belongs to either of the other divisions of the globe. The countries of western and southern Europe are its most populous portions; those in the east and north the least so.

(1) **Race.**—Nine-tenths of the people of Europe belong to what is called the white or Caucasian division of mankind, distinguished from other members of the human family by the comparative fairness of the skin and the varying colour of the hair and eyes. But there are many differences among the different nations of Europe—the people who dwell in the southerly portions of the continent being generally darker than the natives of more northwardly lands.

(2) **Language.**—The languages of Europe, with the exception of the Turkish and other kindred tongues, belong to four classes—the *Celtic* (which embraces the Welsh, Irish, and Gaelic languages); the *Teutonic* (English, German, Dutch, Swedish, and Norwegian); the *Romanic* (French, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, and Greek); and the *Slavonic* (Russian, Polish, &c.)

(3) **Religion.**—With the exception of the Turks and Jews, all the nations of Europe profess Christianity, in one or other of its three forms—the Protestant, Roman Catholic, or the Greek Church.

(4) **Education.**—All the great nations of Europe are more or less advanced in education, and there are numerous schools, colleges, and universities found in each country.

Government.—The government of every state in Europe, except France and Switzerland, is *monarchical* in form, and is *despotic* in Russia and Turkey, but *limited* in the United Kingdom and other countries. France and Switzerland (and the small states of San Marino and Andorra) are *republics*.

Divisions.—EUROPE is politically divided into eighteen independent countries, besides several small territories.

The principal European countries are :—

Great Britain and Ireland, France, Belgium, Holland, Switzerland, Germany, Austro-Hungary, Denmark, Norway and Sweden, Russia in Europe, Turkey, Montenegro, Servia, Roumania, Greece, Italy, Spain, Portugal.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How many great divisions of the Earth are there? Name them.
- Name the boundaries of Europe, pointing them out upon the map.
- What (in round numbers) is the extent of Europe in the direction of north and south, and also in that of east and west? What is its area?
- By what are the coasts of Europe distinguished?
- Name the inland seas of Europe, pointing to each upon the map.
- What gulfs belong to the Mediterranean and the Baltic Seas?
- Name the principal channels and straits belonging to Europe.
- Name the principal capes, peninsulas, and isthmuses of Europe.
- Which are the most important among the islands of Europe?
- Name the European islands that are situated in (1) the Atlantic Ocean, (2) Arctic Ocean, (3) Baltic Sea, (4) Mediterranean.
- Which parts of Europe are generally mountainous, and which level? Name the principal mountain-chains of Europe.
- In what countries are the following mountain-chains :—the Apennines, the Balkan Mountains, the Pyrenees, and the Sierra Nevada?
- Name the chief plains of Europe.
- Name the principal rivers of Europe, and the seas into which they flow.
- What rivers rank first, second, third, and fourth, in respect of length?
- Which among the rivers of Europe rise in (1) the Alps, (2) the Apennines, (3) the Mountains of Germany, (4) the great central plain?
- Name the principal lakes of Europe, with the countries to which they belong.
- What is the distinguishing characteristic of the climate of Europe?
- Compare the kinds of climate experienced in the southern, middle, and northerly regions of Europe.
- Within what zone does the greater part of Europe fall?
- What is the difference between the climate of the countries of western and eastern Europe?
- In which parts of Europe is rain most abundant?
- What three great classes of objects do the natural productions of the earth include?
- By what characteristic is Europe distinguished in regard to its natural productions?
- In what countries of Europe do the following metals occur—gold, silver, platinum, quicksilver, iron, copper, lead, zinc, and tin; coal and salt?
- Name some of the grains and fruits that are most abundantly cultivated in Europe.
- What is the difference between the trees that belong to southern and those of middle and northern Europe?
- Name the domestic animals that are most numerously reared in Europe.
- Name some of the birds belonging to Europe.
- Name some of the fish that are found in the seas and rivers of Europe.
- What two insects are extensively reared in Europe?
- To what (in round numbers) does the population of Europe amount?
- To what race of mankind do the bulk of the inhabitants of Europe belong?
- Name the principal countries of Europe.



GEORGE PHILIP & SON, LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

GREAT BRITAIN and IRELAND are the two largest of the British Islands, a group situated in the Atlantic Ocean, off the western side of the European continent. Great Britain includes *England, Wales, and Scotland*. Ireland lies to the west of Great Britain, and is divided from it by the Irish Sea. England and Wales are so intimately connected that it is convenient to describe them as one country.

I. ENGLAND AND WALES.

Boundaries.—ENGLAND is bounded on the north by Scotland: on the south by the English Channel: on the east by the North Sea or German Ocean: on the west by the Irish Sea, the Principality of Wales, and the Atlantic Ocean.

WALES is enclosed on three sides—the north, west, and south—by the Irish Sea, St. George's Channel, and the Bristol Channel; to the eastward it adjoins England.

England is divided from—

- (1) Scotland by the Tweed, Cheviot Hills, and the Solway Firth.
- (2) Ireland by the Irish Sea and St. George's Channel.
- (3) France by the English Channel and Strait of Dover.
- (4) Belgium, Holland, and Germany by the North Sea.

Extent.—England and Wales are but a small country, equal in magnitude to scarcely more than a nine-hundredth part of the lands upon the earth's surface. England embraces an area of 50,923 square miles, and Wales, 7,397. Total area, 58,320 square miles.

The greatest length, from Berwick to the Lizard, is 423 miles; the greatest breadth, from Lowestoft Ness to Land's End, is 364 miles.

Coasts.—The western coast of England is more irregular and elevated, and exhibits a greater number of capes and inlets, than either the southern or the eastern coast.

1. **Capes.**¹—On the east, Flamborough Head, Spurn Head, Lowestoft Ness, the Naze, and the North Foreland. On the south, the South Foreland, Dungeness, Beachy Head, Selsea Bill, St. Catherine's Point, St. Alban's Head, Portland Bill, Berry Head, Bolt Head, and the Lizard. On the west, the Land's End, Hartland Point, Worms Head, St. David's Head, Great Orme's Head, Point of Aire, Formby Point, and St. Bees Head.

*. * Lowestoft Ness is the most easterly point of England. The Lizard is the most southerly, and Land's End the most westerly point.

2. **Inlets.**—On the east, the Humber, the Wash, and the mouth of the Thames. On the south, Portsmouth Harbour, Southampton Water, Weymouth Bay, Tor Bay, Plymouth Sound, Falmouth Harbour, and Mount's Bay. On the west, the Solway Firth, Morecambe Bay, Cardigan Bay, and the Bristol Channel, which last includes Carmarthen Bay, Swansea Bay, and Barnstaple Bay.

¹ From the South Foreland the French coast may be seen. Beachy Head is the loftiest headland on the south coast. Great Orme's Head is by far the loftiest headland in England and Wales, being 673 feet high.

(1) The Humber is the estuary¹ of the Ouse and Trent.

(2) The Wash receives the drainage of the "Fens."

(3) Plymouth Sound is protected by an artificial breakwater a mile long.

(4) In the Bristol Channel the tide advances rapidly, and rises at Chepstow to a height of 45 feet.

(5) Milford Haven is the finest natural harbour in England.

(6) Solway Firth is noted for its valuable salmon fisheries.

3. **Straits and Roadsteads.**—On the east, Yarmouth Roads,² the Downs, Strait of Dover. On the south, Spithead, Solent, and Portland Roads. On the west, the Menai Straits.

The Downs are between the Goodwin Sands and the coast of Kent. Spithead and Solent separate the Isle of Wight from the mainland. The Menai Straits are between Anglesey and Carnarvonshire.

4. **Islands.**—The principal islands are: Holy Island, Coquet, Fern Islands, Sheppey, Thanet, Wight, Scilly Isles, Lundy, Anglesey, Holyhead, Bardsey, Isle of Man, and Walney.

Anglesey is separated from the mainland by the Menai Straits. The Isle of Wight, the "garden of England," is extremely beautiful and fertile. The Scilly Isles, 30 miles south-west of Land's End, are 145 in number, of which 6 only are inhabited. The Isle of Man is situated in the Irish Sea, nearly midway between England, Scotland, and Ireland. The Channel Islands, off the coast of Normandy, also belong to England.

Natural Features.—The surface of England exhibits, in general, a succession of gentle slopes or undulations, which rise in some places into hills. Wales is chiefly mountainous. Both England and Wales are well watered by numerous streams. There are only a few lakes—all of them of small size.

The natural features of England and Wales are best described under four heads—(1) Mountains, (2) Plains, (3) Rivers, (4) Lakes.

1. **Mountains.**—The high grounds of England and Wales lie principally upon the western side of the island. They include (taking them from north to south) the Pennine Range, the Cumbrian Mountains, the Welsh Mountains, and the high grounds of Cornwall and Devon.

(1) The Pennine Range extends from the Cheviot Hills (on the borders of England and Scotland) to the district of the Peak, in Derbyshire, lying nearly along the line of division between the six northern counties of England. The highest point is Crossfell (2,892 feet), in the county of Cumberland.

¹ An estuary is a narrow arm of the sea, such as is often formed at the mouth of a river.

² By a roadstead, or road, is meant a natural "harbour of refuge," where vessels may ride at anchor in safety.

(2) The **Cumbrian Mountains** are a group in the counties of Cumberland, Westmoreland, and northern Lancashire, near the coast of the Irish Sea. They contain the highest elevation in England—*Scaw Fell*, 3,208 feet above the level of the sea. *Skiddaw* and *Helvellyn*, in the same group, are nearly as high.

(3) The **Welsh Mountains** spread over the greater part of Wales, and reach a greater elevation than any of the English mountains. *Snowdon*, in the county of Caernarvon, 3,570 feet, is the highest among them. *Cader Idris*, *Plinlimmon*, the *Beacons of Brecknock*, and many others, are lofty and well-known points.

(4) The **Hills of Cornwall and Devon** are less elevated, but impart a varied and often rugged surface to the south-west corner of the island. *Dartmoor*, in Devonshire, reaches 2,050 feet above the sea. *Brown Willy*, in Cornwall, is 1,364 feet.

To the eastward of the above tracts the elevations are much less conspicuous; few points reach more than a thousand feet above the sea-level, and most of them are considerably below that altitude. The following are the most important among these lower heights:—

Name.	Position.	Name.	Position.
North York Moors	Yorkshire.	Cotswold Hills	Gloucester.
Wolds	Yorkshire and Lincolnshire.	Mendip Hills	Somerset.
Chiltern Hills	Buckingham and Oxford.	Quantock Hills	Do.
Clee Hills	Shropshire.	Blackdown Hills	Do.
The Wrekin	do.	Exmoor	Somerset and Devon.
Malvern Hills	Worcester and Hereford.	Salisbury Plain	Wiltshire.
Clent Hills	Worcester.	North Downs	Kent and Surrey.
		South Downs	Sussex and Hampshire.

2. Plains.—The most extensive plains and valleys in England are the following:—the York Plain, the Cumbrian and Cheshire Plains, the Central Plain, the district of the Fens, the Eastern Plain, the Valley of the Severn, and the Valley of the Thames.

The *York Plain*, between the Pennine Range and the Wolds, is the most extensive in England. The *Cumbrian and Cheshire Plains* lie to the north and south of the Cumbrian group, on the west side of the Pennine Range. The *Central Plain* extends from the Thames on the south to the Ouse on the north, and the Severn on the west to the Trent on the east. The *Fens* lie round the shores of the Wash (including parts of the counties of Lincoln, Northampton, Huntingdon, Cambridge, Norfolk, and Suffolk), and forms the lowest and most perfectly level portion of the island. The *Eastern Plain* includes the sea-board of Essex, Suffolk, and Norfolk.

3. Rivers.—As the high grounds of England and Wales lie chiefly near the western coast, the longest rivers are, with one exception, on the eastern side, and flow into the German Ocean.

The following is a list of the principal rivers:—

- On the east, flowing into the **German Ocean** from the
 - Pennine Range*: the Tyne, Wear, Tees, Ouse, and Trent.
 - Water-shed of the Central Plain*: Witham, Welland, Nen, Ouse, all entering the Wash.
 - East Anglian Heights*: Yare, Orwell, Stour (Essex), Colne, and Blackwater.
 - Cotswold and other hills*: the Thames and its tributaries.
 - Wealden Heights*: Stour (Kent).
- On the south, flowing into the **English Channel** from
 - Wealden Heights*: Rother and Ouse (Sussex).
 - The Downs of Hants and Wilts*: Itchen, Test, and Avon.*
 - Devonian Range*: Stour, Frome, Axe, Otter, Exe, Teign, Dart, Tamar and Fal.

* On this plain, about eight miles from Salisbury, is *Stonehenge*, a Druidical or Danish Circle.

* In the language of the Celts, the ancient inhabitants of Britain, the word *Avon* signified a running stream.

3. On the west, flowing into the **Bristol Channel** from the

(1) *Devonian Range*: Torridge, Tawe, and Parret.

(2) *Cotswold Hills*: Avon (Bristol).

(3) *Welsh Mountains*: Severn, Wye, Usk, Taff, Neath, Tawe, and Towy.

4. On the west, flowing into the **Irish Sea** from the

(1) *Welsh Mountains*: Teify, Dyfi, Conway, Clwyd, Dee

(2) *Pennine Range*: Mersey, Ribble, Wyre, Lune, Eden.

(3) *Cumbrian Group*: Kent, Derwent.

* Of the above the most important are the Thames, Severn, Trent, Ouse, and Mersey.

The **Thames** is the most important river in the British Islands, since it has London, the metropolis of the British empire, upon its banks. The Thames rises near the eastern foot of the Cotswold Hills, and has a course of 215 miles to the sea, a greater length than any other river in the island.

The **Severn** rises on the east side of Plinlimmon, and enters the Bristol Channel after a course of 200 miles.

The **Trent** rises in the moorlands of Staffordshire, and falls into the Humber after a course of 180 miles.

The **Ouse**, sometimes distinguished as the Yorkshire Ouse, is formed by the junction of the *Swale* and the *For*, and flows into the Humber after a course of 150 miles.

The **Mersey** is but a small river (68 miles in length), but its estuary forms the "Liverpool Channel," one of the most important harbours in the world.

4. Lakes.—There are few lakes in England, and they are nearly all situated within the region of the Cumbrian Mountains. The largest are *Windermere*, *Ulleswater*, *Coniston*, *Derwent Water*, *Basenthwaite*, *Crummock*, and *Wastwater*. In Wales are *Bala Lake*, the *Lakes of Llanberis*, *Llyn Conway*, and *Brecknock-mere*.

Windermere, the largest lake in England, is about 10½ miles long, and a mile broad. *Bala Lake*, the largest in Wales, is 4 miles long, and a little more than half-a-mile broad. *Windermere* is drained by the river *Leven*; *Bala Lake*, by the *Dee*.

Climate.—The climate of England is temperate and healthy—more moderate, both in regard to heat and cold, than that of countries on the neighbouring continent. Rain is abundant, more so on the western side of the island than elsewhere, owing to its position with regard to the Atlantic Ocean.

Productions.—The natural productions of England are numerous and important.

1. The general cultivation of the land has greatly diminished the size of the forests, with which large portions of England were formerly covered, while many of the wild animals which its woods once sheltered are long since extinct.

The grains, fruits, and vegetables, the domestic cattle and various farmyard stock, are familiar even to the youngest learner, and need not therefore be enumerated.

2. The mineral produce of England and Wales is exceedingly rich. *Coal and iron*, with *copper*, *lead*, *zinc*, *tin*, and other valuable ores—all of the highest utility to civilised man—occur plentifully in different parts of the country, and are largely worked. In the value of its coal-fields and iron-works, Britain surpasses any other country on the globe.

* The principal tributaries of the Thames are—on the right bank, Kennet, Loddon, Wey, Mole, and Medway; and on the left, Windrush, Evenlode, Thame, Colne, Lea, and Roding.

(1) The **coal-fields** of England occur chiefly in the northern and midland counties, and yield an inexhaustible supply of that fuel. South Wales also includes a rich and extensive coal-field.

(2) **Iron-ore** occurs abundantly within the limits of nearly all the coal districts, and is most extensively worked in South Wales, together with the counties of Stafford, Shropshire, Yorkshire, Derbyshire, Durham, and Northumberland.

(3) **Lead** is principally worked in Derbyshire, Northumberland, Cumberland, North and South Wales, and Devonshire.

(4) **Copper** and **tin** belong chiefly (the latter entirely) to the counties of Cornwall and Devon.

(5) Cheshire furnishes an abundant supply of **salt** from the brine-springs and mines in the valley of the river Weaver, which joins the Mersey.

(6) Good **marbles** and **building-stones** are derived from the northern and north-midland districts of the country, as well as from its south-western peninsula.

(7) **Slate** is extensively quarried in Wales and in the mountain-region of Cumberland and Westmoreland.

Inhabitants.—In 1881 England and Wales contained 25,968,286 inhabitants—that is, an average of 445 persons to the square mile. So that, in the proportion of inhabitants to extent of surface, England is more populous than any other country of Europe, with the exception of Belgium.

Race and Language.—The people of England belong to the *Teutonic* race; the people of Wales are of *Celtic* origin. The languages spoken also differ—that of the Welsh being Celtic, while the English language is mainly derived from the Anglo-Saxon, but with some thousands of words of Latin and Greek origin.

Industry.—England ranks first among the nations of the world in regard to *manufactures* and *commerce*. *Agriculture* is also well attended to; but the supply of agricultural produce is not equal to the demand, and immense quantities of food-stuffs are therefore imported from other lands.

1. **Agriculture.**—The agricultural districts of England are found chiefly in the east and south: the manufacturing districts belong to the northern, north-midland, and western counties.

Wheat, oats, barley, and rye, are the grains most largely grown: wheat most extensively in the south-eastern counties; barley in the eastern and midland counties; oats within the district of the Fens and in the north. *Hops* are cultivated chiefly in Kent and Surrey, and in the counties of Worcester and Hereford. The *potato* is very largely grown in Lancashire, Cumberland, and Cheshire; the *turnip* chiefly in Norfolk. *Rape* is much cultivated in Lincolnshire and Cambridgeshire; *hemp* and *flax* in the counties of Lincoln and Suffolk. Hereford and Devon are distinguished for the extensive culture of the *apple*, from which cider is largely made.

2. **Manufactures.**—Cotton, wool, and iron,¹ are the three great staples of the manufacturing industry of Britain. The *first*, which is a vegetable material—the pod of the cotton-plant—is derived chiefly from the United States of America.

¹ Other manufactures are carried on extensively in England, but none upon a scale of such magnitude as the three above named. The *silk* and *linen* manufactures, the making of *hosiery* and *lace*, the *leather* manufacture, those of *earthenware* and *glass*, of *watches* and *clocks*, of *paper*, and a vast variety of others, are all of importance. The making of earthenware, on an extensive scale, is almost peculiar to a district in the north of Staffordshire, which is hence called "the Potteries."

The *second*, which belongs to the animal kingdom, is furnished by the fleeces of the sheep reared upon our plains and downs, together with a large quantity imported from other lands—principally Australia. The *third*, a mineral ore, is supplied in exhaustless abundance by the English soil.

The southern division of Lancashire, and the adjoining part of Cheshire, are the great seat of the *cotton* manufacture, which employs a much larger number of artisans than any other single branch of British industry. Manchester is the centre and capital of the cotton manufacture, and Liverpool is its port. The West Riding of Yorkshire is the chief seat of the *woollen* manufacture, and the towns of Leeds and Bradford are its principal centres of industry. The south part of Staffordshire, and the adjacent portions of Warwick, Worcester, and Shropshire, are the chief seat of the manufacture of *iron* and *hardware* goods, and the town of Birmingham is the manufacturing capital of the district. Sheffield, in Yorkshire, is the chief seat of one branch of the hardware trade—the making of cutlery.

3. **Commerce.**—The foreign commerce of England extends to every part of the globe; her ships traverse every sea, and her flag is seen in the harbours of every land. The *import* of raw materials, and the *export* of manufactured goods, are the distinguishing features of English commerce.

(1) **Imports.**—*Sugar, coffee, spices*, and other productions of tropical regions, foreign to the English soil, are imported from the East and West Indies; *tea* from China and British India; *tobacco* from the United States and elsewhere; *timber* from Canada and the countries lying round the Baltic Sea; *wines* and *spirits* from France, Spain, and Portugal; *hides, skins, and tallow* from South America, the Cape of Good Hope, and Russia; *raw cotton* from the United States, Egypt, and other countries; *wool* from Australia, South Africa, &c.; *corn* and *flour* from the United States, Russia, &c.

(2) **Exports.**—The most important articles exported are manufactured cotton, woollen, linen, and silk goods, iron and steel, earthenware, tin, machinery, stationery and books, and coal. The countries to which the largest quantities of British manufactures and other produce are exported are:—North America, Australia, the East Indies, Germany, Holland, France, &c.

(3) **Ports.**—The principal ports are:—Liverpool, London, Bristol, Hull, Southampton, Newcastle, Plymouth, Whitehaven, Sunderland, Yarmouth, Swansea, Cardiff, Grimsby, Stockton, and Barrow-in-Furness.

Counties and Towns.—England and Wales are divided into fifty-two counties: England contains forty of the number, and Wales twelve. The counties are very unequal in point of size. Rutland is the smallest county in England, and Yorkshire the largest. Lincoln, Devon, and Norfolk, come next to Yorkshire in order of size.

The town which is the principal place of election for the county members, or, in some cases that in which the assizes are held, is the *county town*.¹ This ranks as the capital of the county, though it does not always coincide with the largest town which the county may contain.

The English counties are divided, with reference to relative situation, into six northern, six western, five eastern, nine southern, and fourteen midland counties.

(a) **Six Northern Counties.**—The *six northern counties* are Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Lancashire. The first three border on the German Ocean, the other three are on the western side of the island, adjacent to the Irish Sea.

¹ The county towns are distinguished by italic letters.

Northumberland has for its county town *Newcastle-upon-Tyne*, the great seat of the coal trade. Its other towns are North Shields, Tynemouth, Berwick, Alnwick, Morpeth, and Hexham. Berwick is at the mouth of the river Tweed, close to the Scotch border. The battle of Flodden (1513) was fought in this county, near the east foot of the Cheviot Hills.

Durham—chief towns:—*Durham* (a cathedral city on the river Wear), Sunderland, Stockton, Hartlepool, and South Shields. Sunderland is at the mouth of the river Wear; Stockton is on the Tees.

Yorkshire is divided into three *ridings*—the North, East, and West ridings. The last named is the most populous, and includes nearly all the larger towns. The capital of the county is *York*, an archiepiscopal city on the Ouse. Among the numerous other towns are Leeds, Bradford, Sheffield, Huddersfield, Halifax, Wakefield, Barnsley, Dewsbury, Doncaster, and Ripon—all of them in the West Riding. Leeds (on the river Aire) and Bradford, are the largest seats of the woollen manufacture. Sheffield (at the junction of the little river Sheaf with the Don) is noted for its cutlery. Ripon, on the Ure (or Yore), an affluent of the Yorkshire Ouse, is a cathedral city.

The towns in the East Riding of Yorkshire are Hull, Beverley, and Bridlington. Those in the North Riding are Scarborough, Whitby, Malton, Richmond, and Northallerton. Hull is an important seaport on the north bank of the Humber estuary.

The battle of Marston Moor, gained by the Parliamentary forces over the army of Charles I., in 1644, was fought in this county, a few miles west of York, as also were those of Wakefield and Towton (1460 and 1461), during the wars of the Roses.

Cumberland contains *Carlisle* (a cathedral city on the river Eden), Whitehaven, Workington, Maryport, Cockermouth, Penrith, and Keswick. Whitehaven has valuable coal mines. Keswick is in the heart of the Lake district.

Westmoreland—chief towns, *Appleby* and Kendal. The latter is on the river Kent, which flows into Morecambe Bay.

Lancashire has for its capital the town of *Lancaster*, on the river Lune, but the two largest towns are Liverpool and Manchester, the great seats of the cotton trade. Liverpool is at the mouth of the Mersey. Manchester is on the river Irwell, which joins the Mersey. Both Liverpool and Manchester are cathedral cities.

The other towns are Preston, Bolton, Oldham, Blackburn, Wigan, Rochdale, Ashton-under-Lyne, Staley-bridge, Warrington, and Ulverston.

(b) **Six Western Counties.**—The *six western counties* are Cheshire, Shropshire, Herefordshire, Monmouthshire, Gloucestershire, and Somerset. The four first-mentioned of the number adjoin the Welsh border.

Cheshire has for its capital the cathedral city of *Chester*, on the river Dee. The other towns are Stockport, Macclesfield, Birkenhead, Nantwich, Middlewich, and Northwich—the three last named famous for their salt works.

Shropshire—chief towns:—*Shrewsbury* (on the river Severn), Bridgnorth, Wellington, Ludlow, and Oswestry. The hill called the Wrekin is a few miles east of Shrewsbury.

Herefordshire has the cathedral city of *Hereford* (on the river Wye) for its capital, and contains, besides, the towns of Leominster, Ledbury, and Ross.

Monmouthshire—chief towns:—*Monmouth* (at the junction of the river Munnow with the Wye), Newport, Abergavenny, Pontypool, and Chepstow. Newport is at the mouth of the river Usk, Chepstow at the mouth of the Wye.

Gloucestershire—chief towns:—*Gloucester* (on the Severn), Cheltenham, Stroud, Cirencester, and Tewkesbury. Bristol, on the Lower Avon, is partly in this county, and partly in Somerset. Both Gloucester and Bristol are cathedral cities. Bristol, although several miles above the sea, is an important and flourishing port.

Somersetshire—chief towns:—*Bath*, Wells, *Taunton*, Frome, Bridgewater, and Yeovil. Bath, situated on the river Avon, and Wells, at the foot of the Mendip Hills, are both cathedral cities. Athelney, Alfred the Great's temporary place of concealment from the Danes, was in this county, near the junction of the rivers Tone and Parret. Sedgemoor, the scene of James II.'s victory over Monmouth—the last battle fought on English ground—is also in Somersetshire.

(c) **Five Eastern Counties.**—The *five eastern counties* are Lincoln, Cambridge, Norfolk, Suffolk, and Essex. All of them, except Cambridge, are washed by the waters of the German Ocean.

Lincolnshire has for its capital *Lincoln*, an ancient cathedral city on the river Witham. Its other towns are Boston, Grimsby, Gainsborough, Stamford, and Louth. Boston and Grimsby are flourishing ports.

Cambridgeshire—chief towns:—*Cambridge*, Wisbeach, Ely, and Newmarket. Cambridge, on the river Cam, is famous for its ancient university. Ely, on the Ouse, is a cathedral city.

Norfolk has for its capital the cathedral city of *Norwich*, situated on the river Wensum, which joins the Yare. Of its other towns, the principal are Yarmouth and King's Lynn.

Suffolk—chief towns:—*Ipswich* (on the river Orwell), Bury St. Edmunds, Lowestoft, and Sudbury. Lowestoft is situated at the easternmost extremity of Britain.

Essex—chief towns:—*Chelmsford* (on the river Chelmer), Colchester, Harwich, and Saffron-Walden. Harwich is a port at the mouth of the river Stour.

(d) **Nine Southern Counties.**—The *nine southern counties* are Kent, Surrey, Sussex, Berkshire, Hampshire, Wiltshire, Dorsetshire, Devon, and Cornwall. They stretch (with the exception of Surrey, Berkshire, and Wiltshire, which are inland) along the shore of the English Channel, from the North and South Forelands on the east, to the Land's End on the west.

Kent—chief towns:—*Maidstone* (on the river Medway), Canterbury, Chatham, Rochester, Woolwich, Dover, Folkestone, Gravesend, Sheerness, Margate, and Ramsgate.

Canterbury, on the river Stour, is an ancient cathedral city, the ecclesiastical metropolis of England. Rochester, on the Medway (adjoining Chatham), is also a cathedral city. Dover is a seaport situated at the point where England makes nearest approach to the French coast, which is only 21 miles distant. Both Ramsgate and Margate are on the Isle of Thanet. Sheerness is on the Isle of Sheppey.

Surrey includes the south part of London. The county-town is *Guildford*, on the river Wey. The other towns are Croydon, Richmond, Kingston, and Epsom. Runnymede, where Magna Charta was signed by King John in 1215, is within the north-western border of this county, upon the south bank of the Thames.

Sussex—chief towns:—*Leves*, Brighton, Hastings, Chichester, and Worthing. The battle of Hastings, between the armies of William the Conqueror and Harold, A.D. 1066, was fought a few miles to the north-west of Hastings, where the small town of Battle now stands. Chichester is a cathedral city.

Berkshire—chief towns:—*Reading*, Windsor, Abingdon, Maidenhead, Newbury, and Wantage. Two battles were fought at Newbury, during the Civil War, in 1643 and 1644.

Hampshire—chief towns:—*Winchester*, Portsmouth, and Southampton. Winchester is an ancient cathedral city, the former capital of the West Saxon kings. Portsmouth and Southampton are important seaports.

The Isle of Wight belongs (excepting for parliamentary purposes) to Hampshire. It contains the towns of Newport, Ryde, Cowes, and Ventnor.

Wiltshire has for its capital the cathedral city of *Salisbury*, on the river Avon. Its other towns are Devizes, Bradford, Trowbridge, Warminster, and Marlborough. Stonehenge, an ancient Druidical or Danish circle, is in this county.

Dorsetshire—chief towns: *Dorchester*, Weymouth, Poole, and Bridport.

Devonshire—chief towns:—*Exeter*, Plymouth, Barnstaple, Bideford, Tiverton, Tavistock, Dartmouth, Teignmouth, and Torquay.

Exeter is a cathedral city on the river Exe. Plymouth (with the adjoining town of Devonport) is a flourishing port, on the estuary of Plymouth Sound.

Cornwall—chief towns:—*Bodmin*, Truro, Penzance, Falmouth, St. Austell, and Launceston. This county is famous for its tin and copper mines. The Scilly Islands, at the entrance of the English Channel, belong to Cornwall.

(c) **Fourteen Midland Counties**.—The fourteen midland counties are Stafford, Derby, Nottingham, Leicester, Warwick, Worcester, Oxford, Buckingham, Middlesex, Hertford, Bedford, Huntingdon, Northampton, and Rutland. The first six are sometimes distinguished as the *north-midland* district, and the remainder as the *south-midland*. Middlesex is termed the metropolitan county, since it contains London, the capital of the British Empire.

Staffordshire—chief towns:—*Stafford*, Wolverhampton, West Bromwich, Walsall, Bilston, Wednesbury, Stoke-upon-Trent, Lichfield, and Tamworth. Lichfield is a cathedral city. The south part of this county abounds in coal-pits and iron works; the north part includes the tract known as the Potteries, from the extensive manufacture of earthenware carried on there. The battle of Blenheim was fought 11 miles north-west of Stafford.

Derbyshire—chief towns:—*Derby* (on the river Derwent, an affluent of the Trent), Chesterfield, Wirksworth, Ashbourne, Buxton, and Matlock. Derbyshire includes the romantic district of the Peak. Matlock and Buxton are noted for their mineral waters.

Nottinghamshire—chief towns:—*Nottingham*, (noted for its cotton-stocking and lace manufactures), Newark, Mansfield, and Worksop. Both Nottingham and Newark are on the river Trent.

Leicestershire has for its capital *Leicester*, on the river Soar (an affluent of the Trent), distinguished for its manufacture of woollen stockings. The other towns are Ashby-de-la-Zouch, Loughborough, Hinckley, and Melton Mowbray. Bosworth, the scene of the battle in which Richard III. lost his life, is in this county.

Warwickshire—chief towns:—*Warwick*, Birmingham, Coventry, Rugby, and Stratford-upon-Avon. Warwick (as well as Stratford, the birthplace of Shakespeare) is on the river Avon. Coventry is noted for its manufacture of ribbons. Birmingham is the centre of the hardware manufacture. The battle of Edgehill (1642) was fought in this county, near the Oxfordshire border.

Worcestershire has for its chief town the cathedral city of *Worcester*, on the river Severn. The other towns are Kidderminster, Dudley, Stourbridge, Stourport, and Evesham. Worcester is noted for its porcelain and glass works; and Kidderminster has large carpet manufactories.

Oxfordshire contains the cathedral city of *Oxford*, seated at the junction of the Cherwell and the Thames, and famous for its university. It includes also the towns of Banbury, Witney, Henley, and Woodstock.

Buckinghamshire contains the towns of Buckingham (on the river Ouse), Aylesbury, Great Marlow, and Wycombe.

Middlesex contains the chief part of London, and also the small towns of Brentford, Uxbridge, and Staines. LONDON, the capital of the British empire, is situated on the river Thames, and contains, with its suburbs, nearly three and three-quarter millions of inhabitants. Besides the City, properly so called, London includes Westminster (formerly a separate place, and still preserving the privileges of a distinct city), and Southwark, with other extensive outlying districts. Southwark is upon the southern side of the Thames, and within the county of Surrey. London contains the cathedral

church of St. Paul's, and constitutes a bishop's see. Besides its rank as the capital of the kingdom, London is a great manufacturing and commercial city, and a centre of arts, literature, general refinement, and wealth.

Hertfordshire contains the towns of *Hertford*, Ware, St. Albans, Hitchin, and Barnet. Hertford and Ware are on the river Lea. St. Albans was the scene of two of the battles fought during the wars of the Roses (1455 and 1461). Barnet, which lies on the border of Hertford and Middlesex, was the scene of a later engagement, belonging to the same period of history, in which the famous Earl of Warwick was slain, 1471.

Bedfordshire—chief towns:—*Bedford* (on the river Ouse), Luton, Dunstable, and Woburn. Bedford is noted as being the place where John Bunyan wrote his great work, the *Pilgrim's Progress*.

Huntingdonshire—chief towns:—*Huntingdon* (on the Ouse), St. Ives, and St. Neots. Huntingdon was the birthplace of Oliver Cromwell.

Northamptonshire—chief towns:—*Northampton*, Peterborough, Wellingborough, and Daventry. Northampton and Peterborough are both on the river Nen. Northampton has large manufactories of boots and shoes. Peterborough is a cathedral city. Naseby, the scene of Cromwell's victory over Charles I., in 1645, is in this county, 12 miles north-west of Northampton. A battle was fought near the town of Northampton in 1460, during the wars of the Roses.

Rutlandshire—chief towns:—*Oakham*, and Uppingham.

WALES.—Six of the counties are in North Wales, and six in South Wales. The six counties of North Wales are Anglesea, Carnarvon, Denbigh, Flint, Merioneth, and Montgomery. The six counties of South Wales are Cardigan, Radnor, Brecknock, Glamorgan, Carmarthen, and Pembroke.

The counties of Flint, Denbigh, and Anglesea, in North Wales, with Glamorgan and Carmarthen, in South Wales, possess coal and iron mines, and Glamorgan has considerable trade. But the greater part of Wales is pastoral.

The chief towns in each of the Welsh counties are named below, the county town being distinguished by *italics* :—

Counties.	Towns.
Anglesea . . .	Holyhead, <i>Beaumaris</i> .
Carnarvonshire . . .	<i>Carnarvon</i> , Bangor, Conway.
Denbighshire . . .	Denbigh, Wrexham, <i>Ruthin</i> .
Flintshire . . .	Holywell, <i>Mold</i> , Flint, St. Asaph.
Merionethshire . . .	<i>Dolgelly</i> , Bala.
Montgomeryshire . . .	Newtown, Welshpool, <i>Montgomery</i> .
Cardiganshire . . .	Aberystwith, <i>Cardigan</i> .
Radnorshire . . .	New Radnor, <i>Presteign</i> , Knighton.
Brecknockshire . . .	<i>Brecknock</i> , Hay, Builth.
Glamorganshire . . .	Merthyr-Tydvil, Swansea, <i>Cardiff</i> , Neath, Llandaff.
Carmarthenshire . . .	<i>Carmarthen</i> , Llanelli, Llandeilo.
Pembrokeshire . . .	Pembroke, <i>Haverfordwest</i> , Tenby, Milford, St. David's.

Merthyr-Tydvil, which is within the South Wales coal-field, and forms the centre of coal and iron works upon a scale of great magnitude, is the largest town in Wales. *Swansea* and *Cardiff* are next in size, and are the chief ports of the coal and iron district. *Milford*, in Pembrokeshire, stands on the shore of Milford Haven, a magnificent natural harbour. *Holyhead* is on a small islet (Holy Island) which nearly adjoins the coast of Anglesea. The channel which separates the Isle of Anglesea from the mainland is called the Menai Strait.

The *Isle of Man* forms a dependency of the English Crown, but is not included within any of the counties. *Douglas* is the capital, and the largest and most important town in the island. *Castletown*, a very ancient town, was formerly the capital.

The *Channel Islands* also are a dependency of Great Britain, and consist of Jersey (capital, *St. Helier*), Guernsey (capital, *St. Pierre*), Alderney, and Sark.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS ON ENGLAND AND WALES.

I.

1. Name the islands which constitute the British Archipelago.
2. How is England bounded?
3. Name the boundaries of Wales.
4. What is the total area of England and Wales?
5. What is (a) the greatest length and (b) the greatest breadth of England?
6. What part of the coast of England is the most irregular?
7. Name the principal capes upon the east coast of England, and point them out on the map.
8. Name the capes on the south coast.
9. Name the capes on the west coast.
10. Which are the extreme eastern, southern, and western points of England?
11. Name, in successive order, the principal gulfs and other inlets on the coasts of England.
12. Mention some facts relative to the Humber, the Wash, Plymouth Sound, Bristol Channel, Milford Haven, and Solway Firth.
13. Name the principal straits and roadsteads.
14. What is a roadstead?
15. Where are the Downs, Spithead, Solent, and Menai Straits?
16. Name the principal islands, and state what you know of the more important of them.

II.

1. Describe in general terms the natural features of England.
2. What tracts of high ground occur in succession upon the western side of England and Wales, proceeding from north to south? Give some particulars of the Pennine Range and the Cumbrian Mountains. Name the highest point in each, with its height in feet.
3. Which is the highest among the mountains of Wales, and what is its elevation?
4. In what counties of England are the following:—Dartmoor, the Chiltern Hills, the Wrekin, the Mendip Hills, the South Downs, and the Wolds?
5. In what counties are the Clee Hills, the Malvern Hills, the Cotswold Hills, the Blackdown Hills, Exmoor, and Salisbury Plain?
6. Name the chief plains and valleys of England, and point out their position and extent on the map.
7. In what part of England is the district of the Fens? What counties fall in part within its limits?
8. Enumerate the principal rivers on the east side of England, proceeding from north to south. Into what sea do they fall?
9. Name the rivers that belong to the south coast.
10. Name the rivers that belong to the west coast, beginning in the north. Which of them fall into the Irish Sea? Which into the Bristol Channel?
11. State what you know of the (a) Thames, (b) Severn, (c) Trent, (d) Ouse, (e) Mersey.
12. Name the principal English lakes, and point on the map to the district in which they occur.
13. Which is the largest lake in England, and what is its extent?
14. Which is the largest in Wales?

III.

1. What parts of the English and Welsh coasts are distinguished by the superior mildness of their winter climate?
2. On which side of England is the rainfall greatest? Why?
3. Name the principal (a) grains, (b) fruits, (c) vegetables, cultivated in England and Wales.
4. Name some of the trees that are native to the English soil.
5. Mention as many as you can of the (a) domestic, (b) wild animals, of England and Wales.
6. What minerals occur in England and Wales?
7. In what parts of England and Wales are the chief coal-fields?
8. In which of the English counties is iron most largely worked?
9. Where are lead, copper, and tin principally worked?
10. From what county is salt most abundantly derived?
11. Where is slate chiefly quarried?

IV.

1. What was the actual population of England and Wales in April, 1881?
2. How many persons are there, on an average, to the square mile?
3. What country in Europe has a greater density of population than England?
4. Are the English and Welsh people of the same race, and do they speak the same language?

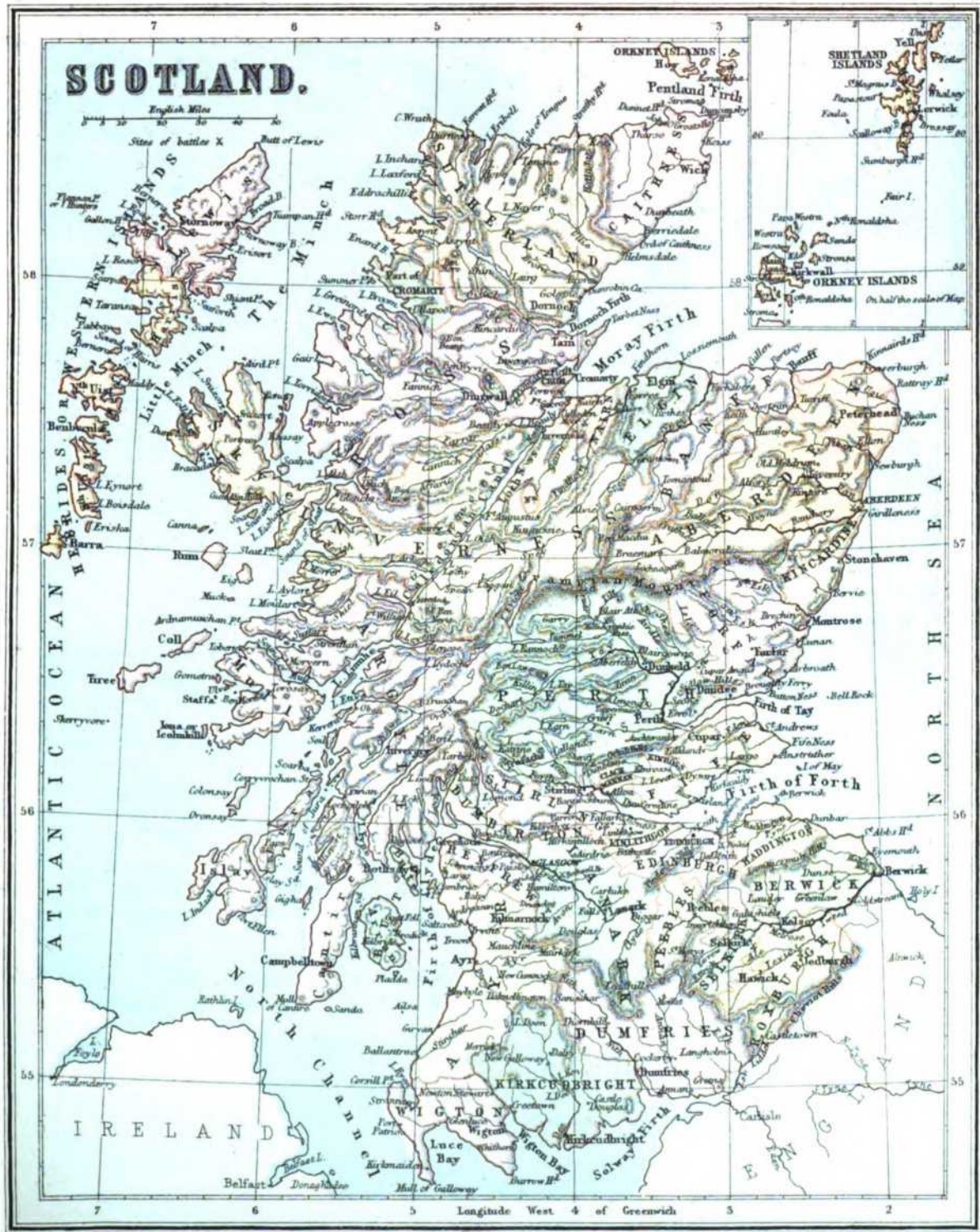
5. In which parts of England is the industry of the people chiefly agricultural?
6. What grains are most extensively grown in England, and in what localities?
7. What three articles form the great staples of manufacturing industry in Britain? Whence is each principally derived?
8. What three districts are respectively the great seats of the cotton, woollen, and iron manufactures; and what town is the chief industrial centre in each?
9. What circumstance characterises the foreign trade of Britain, as to the general nature of its imports and exports?
10. From what countries are the following imports chiefly derived—tea, coffee, sugar, timber, wine and spirits, tobacco, and hides?
11. To what countries are the largest quantities of British manufactures exported?
12. Name the principal ports, and describe briefly the position of each?

V.

1. How many counties are there in England? Which is largest of the number? Which the smallest?
2. Name the six northern counties, pointing them out upon the map.
3. Name the six western counties.
4. Name the five eastern counties.
5. Name the nine southern counties.
6. Name the fourteen midland counties.
7. Name the chief towns in the counties of Northumberland and Durham.
8. What are the chief towns within the West Riding of Yorkshire, and by what branches of industry are they distinguished?
9. Name the chief towns of Lancashire, distinguishing the county town.
10. Upon what rivers are the following towns:—Newcastle, Carlisle, Lancaster, Preston, Manchester, Shrewsbury, and Chester?
11. Name the county town of each of the six western counties, with the river on which it stands.
12. Name the county town of each of the five eastern counties, with the rivers on which they stand.
13. On what river does Norwich stand, and of what branch of manufacturing industry is it the seat?
14. Name the nine southern counties, with the chief town of each.
15. In what counties are the following towns:—Oswestry, Abergavenny, Taunton, Wells, Stroud, Boston, Lynn, Yarmouth, Ely, Ipswich, and Colchester?

VI.

1. In what counties are Maidstone, Guildford, Windsor, Lewes, Portsmouth, Newbury, Weymouth, and Salisbury?
2. On what rivers are Maidstone, Winchester, Reading, Salisbury, Dorchester, and Exeter?
3. By what branch of industry is Cornwall distinguished, and what towns does it contain?
4. Name the metropolitan county. What towns, besides London, does it contain?
5. In what counties are the following towns:—St. Albans, Aylesbury, Banbury, Peterborough, Dunstable, and Loughborough?
6. In what counties are Birmingham, Kidderminster, Dudley, Stourbridge, Lichfield, Chesterfield, and Newark?
7. Of what branch of manufacturing industry is Birmingham the centre, and what adjacent towns are within the same manufacturing district?
8. In what county is Stoke-upon-Trent?
9. Of what manufactures are the towns of Nottingham and Leicester the respective seats?
10. Upon what river is each of the following towns situated:—Derby, Leicester, Warwick, Peterborough, Bedford, and Nottingham?
11. In what counties of England are the sites of the following battles:—Hastings, Blenheim, Boadwin, Newbury, St. Albans, and Barnet?
12. In what counties are the following:—Flodden, Edgehill, Marston Moor, Naseby, and Sedgemoor?
13. Name the six counties of North Wales, with the chief town of each.
14. Name the counties of South Wales, with the chief town of each.
15. State what you know of Merthyr-Tydvil, Swansea, Cardiff, Milford, and Holyhead.
16. Give some particulars of the Isle of Man.
17. Where are the Channel Islands? Name the chief towns of Jersey and Guernsey.



II. SCOTLAND.

Scotland is divided from England by the Cheviot Hills, the Solway Firth, and the lower course of the river Tweed.

Boundaries.—Scotland is bounded on the north and west by the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by England; and on the east by the North Sea.

Extent.—Its area (inclusive of its numerous islands) is about 30,000 square English miles.¹ The mainland alone has an area of 26,000 square miles.

The greatest length from north to south is 280 miles; the greatest breadth from east to west is 175 miles.²

Coasts.—The coasts of Scotland are more irregular than those of England, especially on the west and south.³ The broader inlets are generally known as *firths*, the narrow inlets bear the name of *lochs*.

1. **Capes.**—The principal are: Dunnet Head, the most northerly point; the Mull of Galloway, the most southerly; Buchan Ness, the most easterly; Ardnamurchan Point, the most westerly. Besides these we have:—Cape Wrath, on the north; Duncansby Head, Fife Ness, and St. Abb's Head, on the east; the Mull of Cantire, on the west.

2. **Inlets.**—The principal inlets are:—the Firth of Forth, Firth of Tay, Moray Firth, and Cromarty Firth, on the east; Dunnet Bay, on the north; Loch Linnhe, Loch Fyne, the Firth of Clyde, on the west; and the Solway Firth, on the south.

3. **Channels.**—The principal are: *Pentland Firth*, between the Orkneys and the mainland; *North Minch*, between Lewis and the mainland; *Little Minch*, between Hebrides and Skye; *North Channel*, between Scotland and Ireland.

Islands.—The principal are the Shetland Islands, the Orkney Islands, the Hebrides or Western Islands, and the islands in the Firth of Clyde.

The *Shetland Islands* are the most northerly portion of the British archipelago. The *Orkney Islands* are divided from the mainland by the Pentland Firth. The *Hebrides* include a great number of islands situated off the western coasts of Scotland: the largest among them are *Lewis*, *Skye*, *Mull*, *Jura*, and *Islay*. The small islets of *Iona* and *Staffa*, lying off the west side of Mull, are famous—Iona for its remains of ancient churches, and Staffa for its basaltic cavern. The islands in the Firth of Clyde consist of *Arran* and *Bute* (which together form one of the counties of Scotland), with a few smaller islets.

Surface.—In Scotland, as in England, the higher grounds lie chiefly on the western side of the island. But mountains cover a much larger proportional extent of Scotland than is the case with the English hills, and they reach a greater height. Scotland is principally mountainous, and its plains are of limited extent.

(1) Scotland is naturally divided into the *Highlands* and the *Lowlands*. The Highlands embrace the northern and western portion of the country; the Lowlands its southern and eastern districts. The Lowlands of Scotland, however, are by no means level. They embrace numerous hilly tracts, but the hills are less elevated, and of more rounded form, with broader valleys between, than is the case in the Highlands.

(2) The division between the Highlands and the Lowlands is marked by a broad plain called *Strathmore*, which stretches across the island in

the direction of north-east and south-west, from near Stonehaven on the North Sea, to Dumbarton on the Clyde. A narrower valley, called *Glenmore*, extends through the Highland region, and forms a complete natural division across the island.

Mountains.—The mountains of Scotland may be divided into classes or systems—the Northern, Central, and Southern.

1. The **Northern System** includes the mountain-ranges and groups north of Glenmore.

2. The **Central System** comprises the *Grampians*,⁴ the highest mountains of Scotland, which stretch across the country in the direction of east and west. *Ben Nevis*, which is the highest of the Grampians, reaches 4,406 feet above the sea, and is the highest mountain, not only in Scotland, but in the British Islands.

3. The **Southern System** includes the *Cheviot Hills*, the *Moffat Hills*, and the *Lowthers*, and also the *Pentland*, *Moorfoot*, and *Lammermoor Hills*.

Plains.—The principal are *Strathmore*, and the Plains of Caithness and Cromarty.

Rivers.—Most of the larger rivers of Scotland belong to the east side of the island, and discharge their waters into the North Sea. The chief of them are the *Tweed*,⁵ *Forth*, *Tay*, *Dee*, *Don*, *Spey*,⁶ and *Ness*. Those on the west and south-west coasts are the *Clyde*, *Ayr*, and *Nith*.

The longest river of Scotland is the *Tay*.⁷ The *Clyde* and the *Tweed* are next in point of length. The Clyde is commercially the most important of the Scotch rivers. Few of the others are deep enough for ship-navigation. Many of the smaller streams form waterfalls, or cascades, in their passage through the hilly portions of the country.⁸

Lakes.—Scotland abounds in lakes, especially its Highland region. Most of them are of long and narrow shape. The largest is *Loch Lomond*,⁹ which borders on the counties of Stirling and Dumbarton. The mountain called Ben Lomond rises above its eastern shore.

The other principal lakes are *Loch Tay* and *Loch Katrine*,¹⁰ in Perthshire; *Loch Awe*, in Argyle; *Loch Ness*, in Inverness; *Loch Maree*, in Ross; and *Loch Leven*, in Kinross.

Climate.—The climate of Scotland is slightly colder than that of England, owing to its more northerly situation. Within the Highlands, especially, the winter is more severe; rain is also more abundant there than in the Lowland region.

Productions.—The natural productions of Scotland are the same as those of England, with a few exceptions.

¹ To the south of the Grampians are the minor hill ranges known as the *Sidlaw* and *Ochil Hills*, and *Campsie Fells*.

² The *Tweed* is noted for its salmon fisheries.

³ The *Spey* is the most rapid of British rivers.

⁴ The *Tay* carries more water to the sea than any other river of Great Britain.

⁵ Near Lanark are the celebrated "Falls of the Clyde."

⁶ The term *loch* is uniformly given to lakes in Scotland, as it also is to the narrow inlets of the sea upon the western and northern coasts, such as *Loch Fyne*, and others. There is, however, an important difference between the two. The inland *lochs*, such as *Loch Lomond*, have *fresh water*, like the lakes of England and other countries. The *lochs* that lie along the coast, such as *Loch Fyne*, are arms of the sea, and consist, consequently, of salt water.

⁷ *Loch Katrine* is in the beautiful tract known as the *Trossachs*, and is the scene of Scott's "Lady of the Lake."

¹ About half that of England and Wales.

² The *least breadth*, between the Firths of Forth and Clyde, is only 32 miles.

³ No part of Scotland is more than 40 miles from the sea.

1. **Animals.**—Same as those of England. *Deer*, however, are much more abundant, chiefly in the Highlands. Clydesdale is noted for a fine breed of *horses*, and the Shetland Islands for their hardy ponies.

2. **Vegetation.**—The vegetation consists for the most part of plants of harder growth than those of England. The *Scotch fir*, and other members of the pine tribe, are abundant upon the mountain sides, and the heather imparts its purple colour to their lower slopes. Several of the richer fruits and plants that thrive on the southern coasts of England (as the peach and apricot) will not come to perfection in Scotland; and the harder grains—*oats and barley*—are those most generally grown. Fine crops of *wheat*, however, are grown in many districts of southern Scotland.

3. **Minerals.**—The mineral resources of Scotland are very great. *Coal* and *iron* occur in vast abundance within an extensive district of the Lowlands—that which stretches across the country from Fifeshire on the east side to Ayrshire on the west, embracing the extensive plain between the Firths of Forth and Clyde. *Lead* is worked in some districts of southern Scotland. Good *building-stone* also occurs there. *Granite* is obtained from the Grampians, and also from the Isle of Arran, and some other localities.

Inhabitants.—Scotland is much less populous than England. In 1881 it contained 3,734,370 inhabitants. The Lowlands are much more populous than the Highlands.

The people of the Highlands and the Lowlands are distinct races, speaking different tongues. The language of the Lowlanders resembles the English tongue; the Highlanders speak a dialect called the *Gaelic*, but they are gradually becoming trained to the use of the English language.

Industry.—Manufactures and commerce are largely pursued in Lowland Scotland, chiefly within the coal and iron district between the Clyde and the Forth, and in the counties of Fife and Forfar, upon the eastern coast.

1. The *cotton* manufacture, which is the first in order of importance, characterises Glasgow, and the neighbouring tract of country on the western side of the island, within the counties of Lanark and Renfrew: the *linen* manufacture is found chiefly in the neighbourhood of the east coast—at Dundee, in Forfarshire, and Dunfermline, in Fifeshire. The making of *woollen fabrics*, as tartans (or plaids), carpets, &c., is pursued in many parts of the Lowlands, especially in the neighbourhood of Stirling and Kilmarnock.

2. In the Highlands the *rearing of cattle*, with the extensive *fisheries* pursued off the coasts, are the principal branches of industry. In the southern Lowlands, also, great numbers of cattle are reared, chiefly for the supply of the English markets.

Counties and Towns.—Scotland is divided into thirty-three counties. They are of very unequal size. Clackmannanshire, the smallest, is only one-third part the size of Rutland. Inverness-shire, the largest among them, is nearly four-fifths the size of Yorkshire.

1. *Thirteen* of the counties are within that portion of Scotland which lies to the south of the Firths of Forth and Clyde, and are entirely within the Lowlands. The names of these thirteen are Edinburgh, Linlithgow, Haddington, Berwick, Roxburgh, Selkirk, Peebles, Dumfries, Kirkcudbright, Wigton, Ayr, Lanark, and Renfrew. *Three* of the counties that are to the northward of the Firth of Forth are also wholly within the Lowland region, namely, Fife, Kinross, and Clackmannan.

2. In all, therefore, *sixteen* of the counties are comprised entirely within the Lowlands. Of the others several are partly Lowland counties and partly within the Highlands. All the counties that extend along the east coast of the country, Perth, Forfar, Kincardine, &c., belong in part to the Lowland region; but they stretch westward into the rugged mountain region of the interior, and their larger portion falls within the Highland limits.

3. Bute, Argyre, Inverness, Ross, Cromarty, and Sutherland are almost exclusively Highland counties. Stirling, Dumbarton, Perth, Forfar, Kincardine, Aberdeen, Banff, Elgin, Nairn, and Caithness are partly Highland. Buteshire consists of the two large islands of Arran and Bute, in the Firth of Clyde, with a few smaller islets.

4. The Orkney and Shetland Islands form a distinct county. Of the Hebrides, some belong to Argyre, some to Inverness, and others to Ross.

For convenience of description, the Scotch counties may be divided into four groups, viz., (a) thirteen south lowland, (b) seven north lowland, (c) three south highland, and (d) ten north highland counties.

(a) THIRTEEN SOUTH LOWLAND COUNTIES.

The *thirteen South Lowland Counties* extend from the Solway Firth and the Cheviot Hills on the south, to the Clyde and the Forth on the north.

Edinburghshire (or Mid-Lothian) is the metropolitan county of Scotland. It contains the city of *Edinburgh*, the capital of Scotland, which occupies a commanding position about two miles south of the Firth of Forth; its ancient castle crowns the summit of a high rock which rises in the heart of the town. Adjoining Edinburgh is the port of Leith, on the shore of the neighbouring firth, which is lined, on either side of Leith, by thriving ports and fishing villages. The battle of Pinkie (1547) was fought near Musselburgh, one of these, situated at the eastern extremity of the county, where the little river Esk enters the sea. Edinburgh is the seat of a university, and in 1881 had a population of 225,000.

Linlithgowshire (or West-Lothian)—chief towns, *Linlithgow* and Bathgate. Bo'ness trades in coal and iron.

Haddingtonshire (or East-Lothian)—chief towns, *Haddington*, Dunbar, North Berwick, and Prestonpans. Dunbar fills an important place in Scottish annals, and, besides its many sieges, has had two important battles fought in its neighbourhood (in 1296 and 1650). Prestonpans is noted for the victory gained by the followers of Prince Charles Edward over the English in 1745.

Berwickshire (or the Merse) contains the towns of *Greenlaw*, Dunse, Coldstream, and Eyemouth.

Roxburghshire—chief towns, *Jedburgh*, Hawick, and Kelso. Abbotsford, the residence of Sir Walter Scott, and Melrose, his burial place, are both in this county, upon the banks of the Tweed.

Selkirkshire—chief towns, *Selkirk* and Galashiels.

Peeblesshire—chief towns, *Peebles* and Inverleithen.

Dumfriesshire—chief towns, *Dumfries*, Annan, and Moffat. The town of Dumfries stands on the river Nith, near its mouth, and is the chief market for agricultural produce in the south of Scotland.

Kirkcudbright—chief town, *Kirkcudbright*, on the little river Dee.

Wigtonshire—chief towns, *Wigton*, Stranraer, and Port Patrick. The last-named place is only 22 miles distant from Donaghadee, on the coast of Ireland.

Ayrshire—chief towns, *Ayr*, Kilmarnock, Ardrossan, Saltcoats, Troon, and Girvan. The birthplace of Burns is a short distance from the town of Ayr, on the banks of the Doon. Kilmarnock, on the river Irvine, has extensive woollen manufactures.

Lanarkshire has for its county-town *Lanark*, in upper Clydesdale. But Glasgow, on the Clyde, is its most important place, and is the great seat of Scotch manufactures and commerce. Glasgow is the seat of a university. The towns of Airdrie and Hamilton are in this county.

Renfrewshire—chief towns, *Renfrew*, Paisley, Port Glasgow, Greenock, and Johnstone. Paisley is largest in size, and shares in the manufacturing prosperity of Glasgow.

(b) SEVEN NORTH LOWLAND COUNTIES.

The *seven North Lowland Counties*, north of the Firths of Forth and Clyde, are all, with the exception of Forfar, bounded on the north by Perthshire. Between Forfar and Fife is the Firth of Tay.

Dumbartonshire (or Lennox)—chief towns, *Dumbarton* (on the Clyde, at the mouth of the little river Leven), and *Kirkintilloch*.

Stirlingshire—chief towns, *Stirling*, *Falkirk*, and *Kilsyth*. *Stirling* stands beside the river Forth, and is conspicuous by its ancient castle, which crowns the summit of a lofty rock. Adjoining *Stirling* are *St. Ninians* and *Bannockburn*, the latter noted for the great victory of Bruce, in 1314.

Clackmannanshire—chief towns, *Clackmannan* and *Alloa*.

Kinross—chief town, *Kinross*, situated on the shore of Loch Leven, an island in which was the scene of the confinement of Mary Queen of Scots, in 1568.

Fife—chief towns, *Cupar*, *Dunfermline*, *Kirkcaldy*, and *St. Andrews*. The last-named is the seat of a university.

Forfarshire (or Angus)—chief towns, *Forfar*, *Dundee*, *Montrose*, *Arbroath*, *Brechin*, and *Cupar-Angus*. *Dundee* is a large and flourishing port, on the Firth of Tay.

Kincardine (or the Mearns)—chief towns, *Stonehaven* and *Bervie*.

(c) THREE SOUTH HIGHLAND COUNTIES.

The *three South Highland Counties* occupy the centre of the country. *Buteshire* comprises the two islands of Arran and Bute, in the Firth of Clyde. *Argyle* includes many of the islands off the western coast. *Perthshire* is lowland in the east and centre, but highland in the west.

Buteshire—chief towns, *Rothsay*, on the island of Bute, and *Brodick*, upon the isle of Arran.

Argyle—chief towns, *Inverary*, *Campbeltown*, and *Oban*. *Inverary* is near the head of Loch Fyne, and at the mouth of the little river Ary. *Oban* is a rising watering-place. *Glencoe*, the scene of the infamous massacre of the Macdonalds, in 1692, is in this county, near its northern border-line.

Perthshire—chief towns, *Perth*, *Dunblane*, *Doune*, *Dunkeld*, and *Crieff*. *Perth* is a fine city on the river Tay. The western part of the county includes the district of the Trossachs, famed for its scenic beauties.

(d) TEN NORTH HIGHLAND COUNTIES.

The *ten North Highland Counties* embrace the whole of Scotland north of the Grampians, and also the groups of the Orkney and Shetland Islands. Each of the counties of Aberdeen, Banff, Elgin, and Nairn, are partly highland and partly lowland; but those of Inverness, Ross, Cromarty, Sutherland, and Caithness, are entirely highland. The county of Orkney and Shetland consists of the groups of islands so called.

Aberdeenshire has for its capital the city of *Aberdeen*, situated between the mouths of the rivers Dee and Don. *Aberdeen* is a flourishing port, and the seat of a university. The other towns are *Peterhead*, *Fraserburgh*, and *Inverury*. *Balmoral*, the Highland residence of Her Majesty Queen Victoria, is in this county, on the south bank of the Dee.

Banffshire—chief towns, *Banff* (on the river Doveran), *Portsoy*, and *Cullen*.

Elgin (or Moray)—chief towns, *Elgin* and *Forres*.

Nairnshire—chief town, *Nairn*, on a river of the same name. A few miles south of *Nairn* is the village of *Auldearn*, which was the scene of one of *Montrose's* victories in 1645.

Inverness-shire—chief towns, *Inverness* and *Portree*. *Inverness* is at the mouth of the river Ness, which issues from Loch Ness and flows into Loch Beaulay, at the head of the Moray Firth. A few miles east of *Inverness* is *Culloden Moor*, the scene of *Prince Charles Edward's* final defeat, in 1746. *Ben Nevis*, the highest mountain in Britain, is in this county. *Portree* is a small place on the east coast of Skye.

Ross-shire—chief towns:—*Tain*, on the Dornoch Firth, *Dingwall*, and *Stornoway*. *Stornoway* is on the island of Lewis.

Cromartyshire—chief town, *Cromarty*, at the entrance of *Cromarty Firth*, one of the finest natural harbours.

Sutherland—chief town, *Dornoch*, on the northern side of the firth so called.

Caithness—chief towns, *Wick* and *Thurso*. *Wick* is a great seat of the herring-fishery. *Thurso* is on the north coast.

Orkney and Shetland—chief towns: *Kirkcwall*, on the island of *Pomona* or *Mainland*, the largest of the Orkneys, and *Lerwick*, on the east coast of *Mainland*, the principal island of the Shetland group.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Scotland bounded?
- Name the principal capes of Scotland, and point to them on the map.
- What is the area of Scotland?
- Point out upon the map the following estuaries—the Firth of Forth, Firth of Tay, Moray Firth, Loch Linnhe, Loch Fyne, the Firth of Clyde, and Solway Firth.
- Enumerate the principal islands of Scotland, giving their situation with reference to the mainland.
- To what county do the islands of Staffa and Iona belong? Point to their locality on the map, and say for what they are celebrated.
- What great natural division has Scotland, with reference to the features of its surface?
- In what parts of Scotland are the following—Strathmore, Glenmore, the Grampian Mountains, the Ochil Hills, and the Pentland Hills?
- Name the highest mountain in Scotland, with its elevation in feet.
- Point on the map to the principal rivers of Scotland, giving their names.
- Name the principal lakes of Scotland. Which is the largest among them?
- In what part of Scotland is the district of the Trossachs? By what is it distinguished?
- In what respect does the climate of Scotland differ from that of England?
- What minerals occur in Scotland, and in what parts of the country?
- Point out on the map the limits of the coal and iron district of Scotland.
- Is Scotland more populous, or less so, than England? What portions of the country are most numerously peopled?
- In what parts of Scotland are the cotton and linen manufactures most extensively carried on?
- What constitutes the chief industrial pursuit of the Highland population?
- Into how many counties is Scotland divided? Name the largest and the smallest of the number.
- Are the counties of Edinburgh, Dumfries, and Lanark, within the Highlands or the Lowlands?
- Are Argyle and Inverness Highland or Lowland counties?
- Several of the counties are partly Highland and partly within the Lowlands: name some of the number.
- Which two of the counties are entirely insular?
- Point out on the map the following places—Edinburgh, Glasgow, Dumfries, Kilmarnock, Dundee, Aberdeen, and Inverness.
- In what counties are the following towns respectively situated—Dunbar, Kelso, Paisley, Falkirk, Montrose, St. Andrews, Dunfermline, and Inverary?
- Of what branches of manufacturing industry are Glasgow and Paisley the seat?
- In what counties are the battle-fields of Bannockburn and Culloden?
- Name the chief towns of each of the following counties—Bute, Kincardine, Ross, Sutherland, and Orkney and Shetland.

III. IRELAND.

IRELAND lies to the west of Great Britain,¹ from which it is divided by the North Channel, Irish Sea, and St. George's Channel.

Boundaries.—On the *north, west, and south*, Ireland is bounded by the Atlantic Ocean; on the *east* by the Irish Sea, which is connected with the Atlantic by the North Channel and St. George's Channel.

Extent.—The area of Ireland is 31,874 square miles, or rather more than two-thirds that of England and Wales.

The *greatest length* (from Malin Head to Mizen Head) is 290 miles.

The *greatest breadth* (from Howth Head to Slyne Head) is 175 miles.

Coasts.—The west and south-west coasts of Ireland are more irregular than the east or south-east coasts. The chief features to be noted are :—

1. **Capes.**—The principal capes are :—Malin Head, the *most northerly* point; Dunmore Head, the *most westerly*; and Mizen Head, the *most southerly*. Besides these we have Benmore or Fair Head on the *north*; Achil Head, Slyne Head, Loop Head, Kerry Head, on the *west*; Cape Clear, Hook Head, and Carnsore Point, on the *south*; Wicklow Head and Howth Head on the *east*.

2. **Inlets.**—The principal inlets are :—Dublin Bay, Dundalk Bay, Strangford Lough, and Belfast Lough, on the *east*; Lough Foyle and Lough Swilly, on the *north*; Donegal Bay, Sligo Bay, Clew Bay, Galway Bay, the mouth of the Shannon, Dingle Bay, Kenmare Bay, and Bantry Bay, on the *west*; Cork Harbour and Waterford Harbour, on the *south*.

3. **Islands.**—None of any considerable size. The principal are :—Lambay, on the *east*; Rathlin, on the *north*; Achil, Aran, and Valentia, on the *west*; and Cape Clear Island on the *south*.

Mountains.—The interior of Ireland is generally level, the mountains lying for the most part in the neighbourhood of the coast. The principal are :—

1. The *Mourne Mountains and Wicklow Hills*, on the *east*.

2. *Mountains of Donegal*, in the *north-west*.

3. *Kerry Mountains*, in the *south-west*.

4. *Mountains of Connemara*, in the *west*.

. The Wicklow Hills are famed for their scenery. Of the less important ranges the principal are—the Slieve Bloom, and the Galty and Knockmeildown Mountains.

Plains.—A nearly level plain extends across the middle part of the island, from Dublin Bay on the east to Galway Bay on the west.

In some parts of this plain, and also in the various mountain regions, there are extensive bogs. These bogs furnish abundance of peat (used as fuel), and are capable, when drained, of being brought under cultivation.

Rivers.—Ireland abounds in inland waters. The principal rivers are :—

1. On the *north*, the *Bann* and the *Foyle*.

2. On the *west*, the *Shannon*, *Moy*, and *Erne*.

3. On the *south*, the *Barrow*, *Suir*, *Blackwater*, *Lee*, and *Bandon*.

4. On the *east*, the *Lagan*, *Boyne*, *Liffey*, and *Slaney*.

. All the rivers on the north, west, and south flow into the Atlantic Ocean, and those on the east into the Irish Sea.

. The Liffey has Dublin on its banks. The Shannon is the longest river in the British Islands. It passes through the large lakes of Allen, Ree, and Derg, and is navigable nearly to its source.

¹ The shores of Ireland and Great Britain are nearest each other between Fair Head and the Mull of Cantire, where the channel is only 18 miles wide.

Lakes.—The principal lakes are *Lough Neagh*,¹ *Lough Erne*, *Lough Ree*, *Lough Derg*, *Lough Mask*, *Lough Corrib*, and the *Lakes of Killarney*.

Lough Neagh is the largest lake in the British Islands. The river Shannon flows through *Lough Ree* and *Lough Derg*. The *Lakes of Killarney* are noted for their beautiful scenery. The highest mountains in Ireland rise immediately above their western shore.

Climate.—The climate of Ireland is moister than that of England. This preserves a more constant verdure to the fields, and a superior freshness and brightness of colour to its general vegetation. The winters are nearly always mild, and the prevalent winds, which are from the west, are laden with the warm and moist vapours derived from the waters of the Atlantic.

Ireland is at all times much more humid than England, and more rain falls on its western and southern than on its eastern coasts. The vegetation native to the coasts of Kerry (the south-westernmost county) is especially distinguished for its rich luxuriance.

Productions.—In respect of mineral produce, Ireland is inferior to England and Scotland in one essential particular—coal. This affects injuriously its manufacturing industry.

The *coal-fields* of Ireland are of limited extent compared to those of Great Britain, and their produce small in amount. *Peat* is the fuel most generally consumed, but coal is imported from the English and Scotch seaports. There are also ores of *copper*, *lead*, *iron*, and other mineral produce, and a rich variety of *marbles* and *building-stones*.

Inhabitants.—The population of Ireland amounted, in 1881, to 5,159,000,—about three millions fewer than the number of its inhabitants forty years previously. Famine, combined with extensive emigration, has caused this unexampled diminution during the interval.

The great majority of the people of Ireland belong to the Celtic race—the same as that by which the Highlands of Scotland are peopled; but in Ulster, the north-east province of the island, the population is principally of Lowland Scotch origin. People of English descent are scattered over every portion of the island. The native language of Ireland is rapidly becoming superseded by the English tongue.

Industry.—Ireland is chiefly an agricultural country, and a very large portion of the land is in pasture. *Cattle* and *pigs*, with various farm-produce, constitute (over by far the greater part of the island) its chief industrial wealth.

The *linen* manufacture flourishes in Ulster. *Woollen* and *cotton* goods are also made, but in smaller quantity. A great part of the *commerce* of Ireland consists in the export of its agricultural produce to the English market; and in the import of coal, with various articles of British and foreign produce.

¹ *Lough* in Ireland is equivalent to *loch* in Scotland, and is applied to inlets of the sea as well as to inland lakes. *Lough Neagh* is more than three times the size of Loch Lomond in Scotland, and fourteen times larger than Windermere in England.

Counties and Towns.—Ireland is divided into thirty-two counties, and into four provinces. The provinces are Leinster, Ulster, Connaught, and Munster—Leinster in the east, Ulster in the north, Connaught in the west, and Munster in the south.

1. **Leinster** contains twelve counties:—Dublin, Wicklow, Wexford, Kilkenny, Carlow, Kildare, Queen's County, King's County, Westmeath, Longford, Meath, and Louth.

2. **Ulster** contains nine counties:—Armagh, Down, Antrim, Londonderry, Donegal, Tyrone, Fermanagh, Monaghan, and Cavan.

3. **Connaught** includes five counties:—Leitrim, Roscommon, Sligo, Mayo, and Galway.

4. **Munster** contains six counties:—Clare, Limerick, Tipperary, Waterford, Cork, and Kerry.

1. **LEINSTER** contains twelve counties, which are named in the following table, with the chief towns¹ of each:—

Counties.	Chief Towns.	Counties.	Chief towns.
Dublin . .	<i>Dublin</i> , Kingstown	Queen's County	<i>Maryborough</i> .
Wicklow . .	<i>Wicklow</i> , Arklow.	King's County	<i>Tullamore</i> , Parsons-town.
Wexford . .	<i>Wexford</i> .	Westmeath . .	<i>Mullingar</i> , Athlone
Kilkenny . .	<i>Kilkenny</i> .	Longford . .	<i>Longford</i> .
Carlow . .	<i>Carlow</i> .	Meath . .	<i>Trim</i> , Navan.
Kildare . .	<i>Athy</i> , <i>Naas</i> , Maynooth.	Louth . .	<i>Dundalk</i> , Drogheda

DUBLIN,² situated at the mouth of the river Liffey, is the metropolis of Ireland, and is, besides, a great seat of trade. It is an archiepiscopal city, and possesses two cathedrals, and four universities. *Kingstown*, on the south side of Dublin Bay, has also considerable trade.

Kilkenny, on the river Nore (an affluent of the Barrow), is the largest inland town of Ireland. *Wexford*, at the outlet of the river Slaney into Wexford Haven, is a port of considerable trade. *Drogheda* and *Dundalk*, to the northward of Dublin, are flourishing commercial ports. *Drogheda* stands on the river Boyne, near its mouth. The battle of the Boyne, in 1690, between the armies of William III. and James II., was fought on the banks of the river, a short distance above the town. *Athlone*, on the Shannon, is a thriving inland town, partly in Leinster and partly in Connaught.

2. **ULSTER** has nine counties, which, with their towns, are named below:—

Counties.	Chief towns.	Counties.	Chief towns.
Armagh . .	<i>Armagh</i> , Portadown	Donegal . .	<i>Lifford</i> , Ballyshannon.
Down . .	<i>Downpatrick</i> , Newry, Donaghadee.	Tyrone . .	<i>Omagh</i> , Strabane.
Antrim . .	<i>Belfast</i> , Lisburn, Carrickfergus.	Fermanagh .	<i>Enniskillen</i> .
Londonderry	<i>Londonderry</i> , Coleraine.	Monaghan .	<i>Monaghan</i> .
		Cavan . .	<i>Cavan</i> .

*Belfast*³ is the largest city of Ulster, and the chief seat of the linen manufactures of Ireland. It has also manufactures of cotton, with potteries, glass-works, &c., and a larger amount of foreign trade than any other city in the island. *Armagh* has a great share in the linen manufacture, and is an archiepiscopal see—the ecclesiastical metropolis of Ireland. *Londonderry*, on the river Foyle, has considerable trade, and is famous in story for the gallant defence made by its Protestant inhabitants against the besieging army of James II., in 1689. *Coleraine*, near the mouth of the Bann, is a flourishing port. The Giants' Causeway, on the north coast of Antrim, is one of the chief natural wonders of the kingdom.

3. **CONNAUGHT** includes five counties, which, with their chief towns, are named in the following table:—

Counties.	Chief towns.	Counties.	Chief towns.
Leitrim . .	<i>Carrick-on-Shannon</i> .	Sligo . .	<i>Sligo</i> .
Roscommon .	<i>Roscommon</i> .	Mayo . .	<i>Castlebar</i> , Westport
		Galway . .	<i>Galway</i> , Tuam.

Galway, on the shore of Galway Bay, at the mouth of a stream which issues from Lough Corrib, is the largest town of Connaught. Its position on the western coast of the island gives it some importance as a station for the arrival and departure of vessels communicating with the other side of the Atlantic. Some distance to the westward begins the romantic tract of country known as Connemara, a region of alternate hills and valleys, with enclosed lakes and mountain streams. *Aughrim*, a village in the eastern part of the county (a few miles distant from the right bank of the Suck), witnessed a decisive victory gained by the army of William III. over the troops of James II., in 1691. *Sligo*, at the head of Sligo Bay, has considerable trade.

4. **MUNSTER** includes six counties, which, with their chief towns, are as follow:—

Counties.	Chief towns.	Counties.	Chief towns.
Clare . .	<i>Ennis</i> .	Waterford	<i>Waterford</i> , Dungarvan
Limerick .	<i>Limerick</i> .	Cork . .	<i>Cork</i> , Queenstown, Youghal, Bandon, Kinsale.
Tipperary .	<i>Clonmel</i> , Carrick-on-Shannon, Thurles, Cashel.	Kerry . .	<i>Tralee</i> , Killarney.

Cork, on the river Lee, at its entrance into Cork Harbour, is the largest city of Munster, and has a very extensive foreign trade. *Cork* is the third city in Ireland in point of population. *Queenstown* (at which the larger class of vessels belonging to Cork load and unload their cargoes) is on an island in Cork Harbour. *Youghal*, at the mouth of the river Blackwater, and *Kinsale*, at the mouth of the Bandon, are thriving seaports. *Limerick*, on the Shannon, is memorable for the sieges it underwent, in 1690 and the following year, in behalf of the Roman Catholic cause. *Clonmel*, on the Suir, is an inland town of some importance. *Waterford*, also on the Suir, immediately above its junction with the Barrow, has considerable export trade, and has extensive commercial relations with Bristol and other English ports.

* * The varied character of the south-western shores of Ireland deserves especial notice. Of its many inlets, the finest is Dingle Bay, which penetrates the land for upwards of thirty miles. Valentia Island lies at its entrance, on the southern side. The beautiful Lakes of Killarney, in this part of Ireland, are three in number—an Upper, Middle, and Lower Lake. The town of *Killarney* is close beside the Lower Lake.

¹ The county towns are distinguished by italics.

² In 1881 Dublin had a population of 320,000. A short distance south of Dublin begins the romantic district of the Wicklow Mountains.

³ Population, (1881) 207,000.

IV. THE UNITED KINGDOM.

GOVERNMENT, RELIGION, EDUCATION, AND COLONIES.

Government.—The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland is a constitutional and hereditary monarchy. The executive power is in the hands of the sovereign; the legislative power is divided between the sovereign, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons—the last consisting of members elected by qualified classes of the people. The House of Commons alone has the right to regulate the taxes and expenditure of the kingdom, and the Ministers of the Crown are responsible to it for their public proceedings. The people of the British Islands thus enjoy the blessings of a free constitution. The expression of opinion is free to all classes.

Religion.—The Protestant religion almost universally prevails in England and Wales, and also in Scotland. The *English Church* is under the government of two archbishops and twenty-six bishops. There are numerous dissenters from the established form of worship. In Scotland, the *Presbyterian Church*, under the General Assembly of Divines, is the established form of church government. But there is a numerous body of seceders from its ranks. The Protestant Church of Ireland, a branch of the Anglican Church, but disestablished in 1869, is under two archbishops and ten

bishops. The majority of the Irish people are *Roman Catholics*.

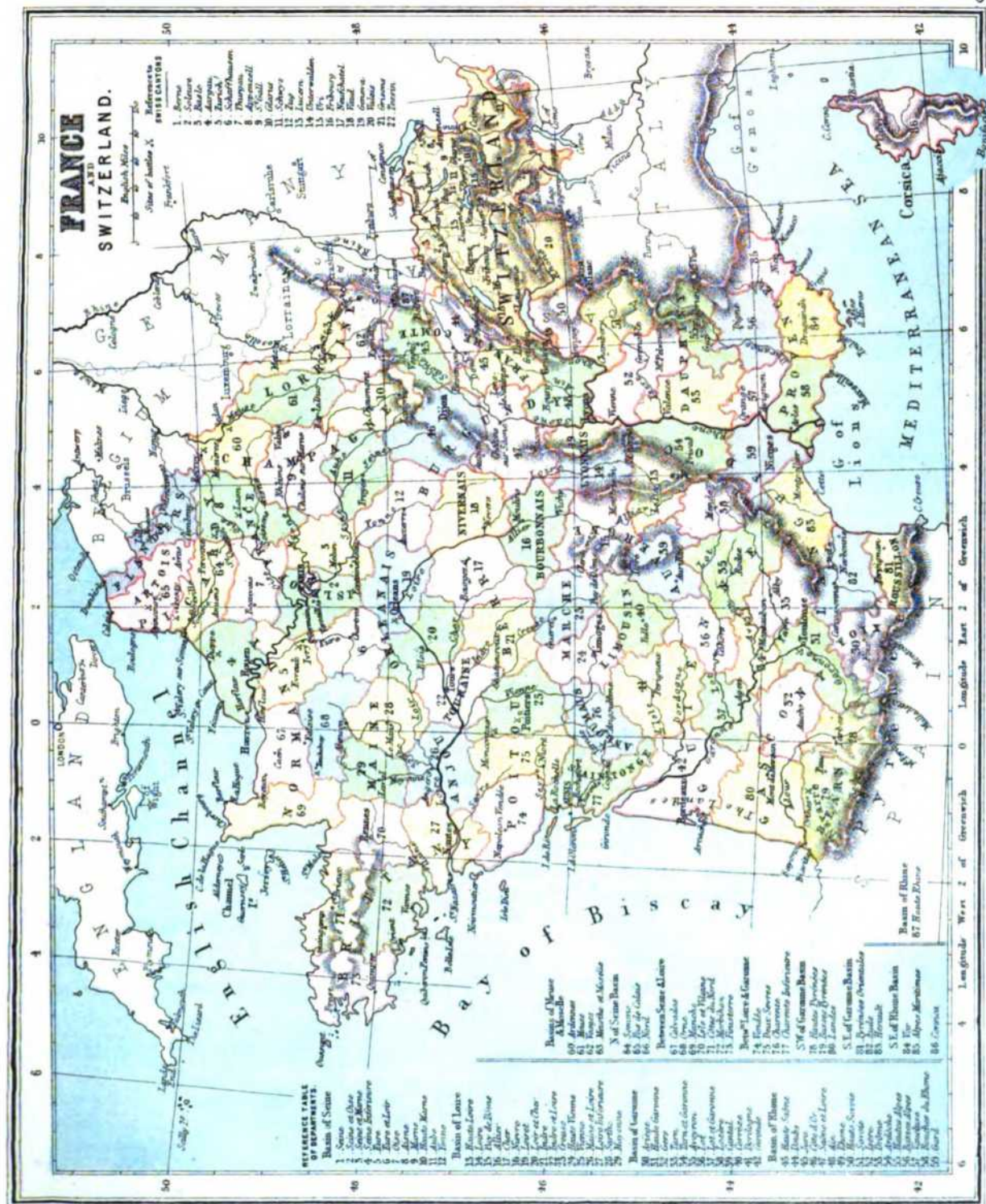
Education.—On the whole, good—especially in Scotland. *Elementary education* is mainly given in public schools, under government inspection. *Higher education* is well provided for in numerous grammar schools, colleges, and universities.

Colonies.—Besides Great Britain and Ireland, the British Empire embraces a vast number of colonies and dependencies, including amongst them territories in every quarter of the globe. These are briefly enumerated in the following list:—

1. In *Europe*:—Heligoland, Gibraltar, Malta.
2. In *Asia*:—British India, Ceylon, Straits Settlements, Aden, Hong-Kong, Labuan, Cyprus.
3. In *Africa*:—Gambia, Sierra Leone, Gold Coast, Lagos, the Cape Colony and dependencies, Natal, Ascension, St. Helena, Mauritius.
4. In *America*:—Dominion of Canada, Newfoundland, Bahamas, Bermudas, British West India Islands, British Guiana, Honduras, Falkland Islands.
5. In *Australasia*:—New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Western Australia, Queensland, Tasmania, New Zealand, Fiji Islands.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. By what is Ireland divided from Great Britain, and how is it bounded?
2. What is the area of Ireland?
3. Describe briefly the coasts, and name the principal capes, of Ireland?
4. Name the chief inlets and islands of Ireland?
5. Distinguish between the portions of Ireland that are mountainous, and those which possess a level surface.
6. What is the name of the longest river in Ireland? Trace out its course on the map, and say into what sea it flows.
7. Enumerate the other chief rivers of the island.
8. Name the principal lakes of Ireland, and say which is the largest.
9. What proportion does Lough Neagh bear, in respect of size, to the largest of the Scotch and English lakes?
10. Which two of the lakes belong to the course of the Shannon?
11. By what is the climate of Ireland distinguished from that of England?
12. What mineral produce has Ireland? In what particular, in this regard, is it inferior to Great Britain?
13. Is Ireland more or less populous than England and Scotland? Name the amount of its population in 1881. To what race do the majority of the Irish people belong?
14. In what respect do the people of Ulster differ from the population of the island in general?
15. In what does the industrial produce of Ireland chiefly consist?
16. In what part of the island does manufacturing industry flourish most, and what is the chief article of produce?
17. Into what number of counties, and into how many provinces, is Ireland divided? Name the provinces.
18. How many counties are in Leinster? How many in Ulster, Connaught, and Munster, respectively?
19. Name the counties within Leinster.
20. Name the counties within Ulster.
21. Name the counties within Connaught.
22. Name the counties within Munster.
23. In what counties are Dublin, Athy, Maryborough, Tullamore, and Dundalk, respectively?
24. On what rivers are Dublin, Kilkenny, Wexford, Drogheda, and Athlone?
25. What noteworthy event distinguishes the neighbourhood of Drogheda? At what period?
26. What place ranks first, in point of size, among the cities of Ulster, and by what kind of industry is it distinguished?
27. What city ranks as the ecclesiastical metropolis of Ireland, and in what county is it?
28. On what rivers are Londonderry and Coleraine situated?
29. What historical event distinguishes Londonderry?
30. Where is the Giant's Causeway, and of what does it consist?
31. Name the largest city of Connaught, and point to it on the map.
32. In what county is the village of Aughrim, and for what is it noteworthy?
33. What place is largest, and what second in size, among the cities of Munster?
34. Upon what rivers are Cork, Kinsale, Limerick, Waterford, and Clonmel?
35. For what is Limerick historically distinguished?
36. In what county are the Lakes of Killarney?
37. Under what form of government are the British Islands?
38. What form of religious worship prevails in England, Scotland, and Ireland, respectively?
39. What colonies or dependencies does Great Britain possess in Europe?
40. What colonies or dependencies does Great Britain possess in Asia?
41. What colonies or dependencies does Great Britain possess in Africa?
42. What colonies or dependencies does Great Britain possess in America?
43. What colonies has Great Britain in Australasia?



FRANCE.

FRANCE lies on the western side of Europe, and stretches across the continent, from the shores of the ocean to the Mediterranean.

Boundaries.—On the north by the English Channel and Belgium; on the east by Germany, Switzerland, and part of Italy; on the south by the Mediterranean Sea and Spain; on the west by the Bay of Biscay.

France is divided from England by the English Channel and Strait of Dover; from Belgium and Germany by an artificial frontier; from Switzerland by Mount Jura; from Italy by the Western Alps; and from Spain by the Pyrenees.

Extent.—France is about three and a half times larger than England and Wales, its area amounting to 200,000 square miles. Its length is about 600 miles, and its breadth about 540 miles.

Coasts.—France has three lines of sea-coast. Two of them are continuous—the Channel and the Bay of Biscay; the third belongs to the Mediterranean. It is therefore well situated for maritime commerce.

1. **Capes.**—Griz Nez and La Hague on the north-west; Ushant and Bec du Raz on the west.

2. **Inlets.**—The only considerable openings are the Bay of St. Malo; the estuaries of the Seine, Loire, Gironde; and the Gulf of Lions.

Islands.—At the entrance of the English Channel, *Ouessant* (or Ushant); in the Bay of Biscay, *Belle Isle*, *Ré*, and *Oléron*; in the Mediterranean, the large island of *Corsica*.

1. *Corsica* is an Italian island, but has belonged to France since 1768, and now forms one of the departments into which the country is divided. *Monte Rotondo*, in the interior of the island, is a lofty peak 9,600 feet above the sea.

2. The *Channel Islands*, off the north-west coast of France, belong to Great Britain, and have been attached to the English crown ever since the Norman conquest. They consist of *Jersey*, *Guernsey*, *Alderney*, *Sark*, and a few smaller islets. The chief town of Jersey, the largest of the number, is *St. Helier*.

Natural Features.—France is, in general, a level country; but it is mountainous on some parts of its border-line, and is hilly in portions of the interior, towards the centre and east.¹ It is well watered by numerous rivers; but there are no lakes of any considerable size.

1. **Mountains.**—The principal mountain-ranges are:—

(1) The *Alps*, which divide France from Italy, and rise above the snow-line.² The loftiest point is *Mont Blanc*, 15,780 feet high.³

(2) *Mount Jura*—less elevated than the Alps—extends along the border of France and Switzerland.

(3) The *Pyrenees* form the border between France and Spain, and are covered with snow on their higher peaks, though they are not so lofty as the Alps.

¹ In the south-west there is a remarkable tract known as the *Landes*, which is a flat, sandy waste—lined by sand-hills along the coast, and backed inland by pine-forests.

² That is, the line at which, owing to the severity of the cold, the snow never melts. The height of the snow-line in the Alps is between 8,000 and 9,000 feet.

³ *Mont Blanc* is on the frontier-line of France and Italy.

(4) The *Cevennes* are a long chain of hills in the east of France, on the western side of the valley of the Rhone.

(5) The *Vosges* are further to the northward, on the border of Germany.

(6) The *Mountains of Auvergne* are a group of extinct volcanoes in central France.

2. **Rivers.**—France has four considerable rivers, besides many of less size. The four great rivers are:—the *Seine*, flowing into the English Channel; the *Loire* and *Garonne*, flowing into the Bay of Biscay; and the *Rhone*, flowing into the Mediterranean.

The *Seine*, *Loire*, and *Garonne*, are entirely within the French territory. The upper part of the *Rhone* (above the Lake of Geneva) belongs to Switzerland. The upper portions of the *Moselle* and *Meuse*, both of which are affluents of the Rhine, are within France.

Climate.—France is, on the whole, a warmer country than England, especially in the south. The air is generally drier than in our own country. In the north of France, however, the winters are often severe.

Productions.—The productions of northern France resemble those of England, but its forests are much more extensive; and many wild animals are still found in the mountainous districts.

1. The *vine* is abundantly grown in the east, centre, and south of France; and the *olive*, the *mulberry*, and the *fig*, in the south.

2. In mineral produce France is inferior to England—coal especially being less abundant. Iron, however, is plentifully distributed.

Inhabitants.—At the last census, (December, 1876) the total number was 37,000,000, or 180 to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—The greater number of the people are French, and the French language, which is mainly derived from the Latin, is widely used by the higher classes all over Europe.

2. **Education.**—Public education is well advanced, and is directly under the control of the government.

3. **Religion.**—The great majority of the French nation are followers of the Church of Rome.

Industry.—Agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, are all extensively pursued, and the productions of French industry are of high value. *Wines* and *brandy* are two of the characteristic articles of produce. Of textile fabrics, *silk* takes in France the first place in importance. The silk manufacture is chiefly pursued in the south; the *woollen* manufacture, and also the making of *linen* and *lace*, principally in the north; the *cotton* manufacture in the north and east.

1. *Lyons*, *Nîmes*, and *Avignon* are noted for their silk goods; *Rouen*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville* for their woollen fabrics; *Lille* and *Valenciennes* for their laces and muslins; *Paris* for its artificial flowers, gloves, jewellery, and other works of taste and ornament.

2. *Marseilles*, *Bordeaux*, and *Havre* are the three great seats of the foreign export trade. The first-named is on the Mediterranean; *Bordeaux* is on the estuary of the Gironde (as the outlet of the river *Garonne* is called), and is the chief emporium of the wine trade; *Havre* is at the mouth of the Seine, and forms the port of Paris.

Government.—The present government of France is republican in form; the Franco-German war of 1870-1 having involved the downfall of the imperial dynasty.

Divisions and Towns.—France is divided into eighty-six departments, which are generally named according to the rivers which flow through them.

1. Twelve of the departments are included within the basin of the river Seine, which corresponds (among the older divisions of France) to the provinces of Champagne, Isle of France, and Lower Normandy. The most considerable towns within the basin of the Seine are Paris, Rouen, Havre, Troyes, and Rheims. PARIS, the capital of France, is in the department of Seine. It stands upon either bank of the river Seine, and contains nearly 2,000,000 inhabitants. Rouen, on the Lower Seine, has large woollen manufactories, and Havre, at the mouth of the same river, is the port of Paris. Troyes is on the Upper Seine.

2. Seventeen of the departments are within the basin of the river Loire, which comprehends the ancient provinces of Auvergne, Berry, Orléanois, Touraine, Maine, Anjou, and parts of Poitou and Brittany. The chief towns within the basin of the Loire are Nantes, Tours, Orléans, Poitiers, Moulins, Clermont, and St. Etienne. Nantes is a flourishing port on the Loire, a few miles above its mouth. Tours and Orléans are both on the Loire. Moulins is on the Allier. St. Etienne, near the Upper Loire, is the chief seat of the iron-works of France.

3. Thirteen of the departments are within the basin of the river Garonne, which includes the ancient Guienne, with parts of Gascony and Languedoc. The most important towns within the basin of the Garonne are Toulouse and Bordeaux. Toulouse is on the Upper Garonne; Bordeaux, the great wine port, at the head of the estuary which the river forms above its outlet.

4. Seventeen of the departments are within the basin of the Rhone, which comprehends the ancient Burgundy, Franche-Comté, Lyonnais, Dauphiny, and the chief parts of Provence and Languedoc. The principal towns within the basin of the Rhone are Lyons, Dijon, Besançon, Avignon, and Nîmes. Lyons, at the junction of the Saone with the Rhone, is the second city of France in population, and the great seat of the silk manufacture. Avignon is on the Rhone, lower down its course.

5. Four of the departments are within the valleys of the Moselle and the Meuse (Rhine-basin). The principal town within this region is Nancy, on the Meurthe, an affluent of the Moselle. Alsace and a large portion of Lorraine, previously French, were transferred to Germany in 1871.

6. Three of the departments lie to the north of the Seine valley, and include the ancient Picardy, Artois, and French Flanders. The most important towns in this portion of France are Amiens, Abbeville,

Dieppe, Boulogne, Calais, Lille, Valenciennes, and Arras. Both Amiens and Abbeville are on the river Somme, which flows into the English Channel. Cressy and Agincourt, names well-known in history, are in this part of France, the former near the Somme, and Agincourt further to the north. Calais, on the strait which divides the French and English coasts, is only 21 miles distant from Dover.

7. Seven of the departments are between the basins of the Lower Seine and Loire. They lie along the shores of the channel and the neighbouring ocean, and include the chief part of the ancient provinces of Brittany and Normandy. The principal towns in this division of France are Rennes, Caen, Cherbourg, St. Malo, and Brest. Cherbourg and Brest are important naval stations.

8. Four of the departments occupy the tract of country between the Lower Loire and the mouth of the Garonne, corresponding to the ancient Saintonge and Angoumois, with the chief part of Poitou. The principal towns in this part of France are La Rochelle, Rochefort, and Cognac. The two former are seaports; Cognac, in the valley of the river Charente, is famous for its brandies.

9. Three departments are south-west of the Garonne basin. They include the ancient Bearn and Navarre, with part of Gascony. The chief towns are Bayonne and Pau. Bayonne is at the mouth of the river Adour, which enters the Bay of Biscay.

10. Three departments lie south-east of the Garonne basin, along the coast of the Mediterranean, and for the most part within the ancient Languedoc. The chief towns are Montpellier, Cotte, and Narbonne.

11. Upon the coast of the Mediterranean, to the east of the Rhone, and within the ancient Provence, are Marseilles and Toulon, the former a flourishing commercial city; the latter an important naval station.

12. The Island of Corsica includes the towns of Bastia and Ajaccio, the latter distinguished as the birthplace of Napoleon I.

Colonies.—France possesses the following colonies and foreign dependencies:—

1. In Africa.—Algeria; St. Louis, at the mouth of river Senegal; Goree, near Cape Verde; Réunion, or Bourbon, in the Indian Ocean.

2. In Asia.—Pondicherry, in India; French Cochinchina, in the Indo-Chinese Peninsula.

3. In America.—Islands of Martinique, Guadaloupe, and St. Bartholomew, in the West Indies; French Guiana; Islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

4. In Polynesia.—New Caledonia, Loyalty Islands, Marquesas Islands, and Society Islands.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Name, and point out on the map, the boundaries of France.
2. What proportion does the size of France bear to that of England and Wales?
3. What lines of sea-coast does France possess?
4. Where are the Channel Islands? To what country do they belong? Name the different islands.
5. What mountains form part of the frontier-line of France?
6. Is France generally a level or a hilly country?
7. In what part of France is the district called the Landes? What are its features?
8. Name the four great rivers of France, with the seas into which they flow.
9. What kind of climate has France, compared with that of England?
10. What productions of the vegetable kingdom characterise the south of France?
11. In what parts of France is the vine most extensively grown for the purpose of wine produce?
12. What is the population of France? From what language is the modern French mainly derived? What is the prevailing religion?
13. What branch of manufacture is most characteristic of French industry?
14. In what parts of France are the silk, woollen, linen, and cotton manufactures, chiefly pursued?
15. What other articles enter into the list of French manufacturing produce?

16. What articles are most extensively exported from France?
17. Name the three great ports for the foreign commerce of France, and point them out on the map.
18. Under what form of government is France?
19. Into how many departments is France divided, and from what are their names in many cases derived?
20. Name some of the most important among the former provinces of France.
21. On what rivers are the following places situated:—Paris, Rouen, Troyes, Amiens, Orléans, and Nantes?
22. Name the principal sea-ports on the French shores of the Channel?
23. In what parts of France are Cressy, Agincourt, and Poitiers?
24. Where is Lyons, and of what branch of industry is it the seat?
25. Where are Rheims, La Rochelle, Rochefort, Montpellier, Dijon, and St. Etienne?
26. On what river is Bordeaux, and for what is it distinguished?
27. On what rivers are Toulouse, Bayonne, Avignon, Besançon, Nancy, and Verdun?
28. Point on the map to Cherbourg, Brest, and Toulon, the three great naval arsenals of France.
29. Where is Marseilles, and for what is it noteworthy?
30. What towns does the Island of Corsica contain?
31. For what is the town of Ajaccio noted?
32. Enumerate the foreign possessions of France.



GEORGE PHILIP & SON, LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

BELGIUM.

BELGIUM is a small country in the west of Europe, adjacent to France.

Boundaries.—It is bounded on the north by Holland; on the east by Prussia; on the south by France; and on the west by the North Sea or German Ocean.

Extent.—Its area is 11,000 square miles, which is nearly one-fifth the size of England and Wales.¹

Surface.—The greater part of Belgium is level; but in its eastern division the ground becomes hilly, and includes the wooded region of the Ardennes.

Rivers.—The *Meuse* (or *Maas*) and the *Scheldt* are the two chief rivers of Belgium, but both of them pass thence into Holland, and have their lower courses in that country.

Climate.—The climate is temperate, and generally resembles that of England.

Productions.—The most valuable of the natural productions are coal² and iron, which Belgium contains in rich abundance.

Inhabitants.—Belgium has above 5,000,000 inhabitants, and is, for its size, a very populous country.

1. **Language.**—The language of the lower orders of the Belgian population is *Flemish*, but the upper classes of society speak *French*.

2. **Religion.**—Nearly all the Belgians belong to the *Roman Catholic Church*. There are only about 13,000 Protestants.

Industry.—The Belgians are highly distinguished by their industry.

1. Nearly every part of the country is well cultivated. *Corn, flax, hemp, madder, tobacco, and clover* are grown.

2. The *woollen, linen, lace, cotton, and silk* manufactures are largely carried on, and the *iron-works*³ are very extensive. The *fine laces* of Brussels, Mechlin, and Antwerp are particularly celebrated.

¹ Its greatest extent, from east to west, is about 160 miles, and from north to south about 115 miles. Its sea-coast is only 40 miles in length.

² Belgium supplies more coal than any other country in Europe, excepting Britain. The two chief coal-fields are those of *Hainault* and *Liege*.

³ Iron-works are numerous in the eastern part of the kingdom, towards the banks of the *Meuse*.

3. **Commerce.**—The principal imports are colonial produce and wool; the chief exports are coal, iron, manufactured goods, and agricultural produce. The chief ports are Antwerp, Ostend, and Bruges.

* The internal trade and industry of Belgium are greatly facilitated by excellent roads, numerous canals, and an extensive system of railways, radiating from Mechlin.¹

Government.—Belgium is a kingdom under constitutional forms, and prior to the revolution of 1830 was attached to the neighbouring kingdom of the Netherlands.

Divisions and Towns.—Belgium is divided into nine provinces, which, with their chief towns, are as follow:—

Provinces.	Towns.
WEST FLANDERS	Bruges, Ostend.
EAST FLANDERS	Ghent, St. Nicholas.
HAINAULT	Tournay, Mons.
SOUTH BRABANT	Brussels, Louvain.
ANTWERP	Antwerp, Mechlin.
LIMBURG	St. Tron, Hasselt.
LIEGE	Liege, Verviers.
NAMUR	Namur, Dinant.
LUXEMBURG	Arion, Marche.

BRUSSELS (population 376,000) is the capital of Belgium.² It stands on the river *Senne*, in the centre of the kingdom, and is a well-built and attractive city. Ten miles to the south is the battlefield of Waterloo.

Antwerp, on the river *Scheldt*, is the principal port of Belgium, and the chief seat of its foreign trade. *Mechlin* is the centre of the railway system of Belgium, and is noted for its lace manufactures. *Ostend*, on the North Sea, is a port of secondary importance. *Liege*, in the eastern part of the kingdom, on the river *Meuse*, is the chief seat of the iron-works of Belgium. *Mons* and *Namur* are within the principal coal district. *Ghent*, on the *Scheldt*, is the chief seat of the cotton manufacture.

* Belgium formed part of the region known in former ages as the *Low Countries*, and was the frequent theatre of war. The sites of numerous battle-fields are, therefore, within its limits. Among them are:—Steinkirk, Landen, Fontenoy, Quatre-bras, and Waterloo.

¹ Or Malines.

² Nearly all the great cities of Belgium were more populous at a former period—during the 13th and 14th centuries—than they are at the present day.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- Where is Belgium, and how is it bounded?
- What is its extent, compared with that of England and Wales?
- What kind of country is Belgium, as to its surface?
- Name the chief rivers of Belgium. Into what sea do they flow?
- What kind of climate has Belgium?
- In what kind of mineral produce is Belgium rich?
- What is the population of Belgium?
- What are the people of Belgium properly called? What language is generally spoken?

- What articles of industrial produce does Belgium supply?
- What is the form of government?
- Into how many provinces is Belgium divided? Name them.
- Point on the map to the capital of Belgium. On what river does it stand?
- Name the chief sea-port of Belgium. On what river does it stand?
- For what are Mechlin, Ghent, Bruges, and Liege respectively noted?
- Where are Mons and Namur?
- What battle-fields are included within the limits of Belgium?

HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS.

Boundaries.—Holland is bounded on the north and west by the North Sea, on the east by Germany, and on the south by Belgium.

Extent.—The area of Holland is 20,000 square miles, which is about three times the size of Wales.

Coasts.—Holland includes the Zuyder Zee¹ and the Dollart Zee,² both of them arms of the North Sea. The coasts are low and flat, and consist, in many parts, of islands formed by the mouths of the great rivers.

Islands.—Two principal groups: one in the north-west (Texel, &c.), and another in the south-west (Walcheren, &c.)

Surface.—Holland is a flat country, and large parts of it are naturally marshy.

Along the coast the land is, in some places, below the level of the adjacent sea, which is only prevented from overflowing it by means of *dykes*, or mounds of artificial construction. Many tracts, now fertile, have been by like means reclaimed from the sea.

Rivers.—The three principal are the *Rhine*, *Meuse*, and *Scheldt*, all of these flowing into the North Sea.

The Rhine and the Meuse form a united *delta*, and their various channels render the country, in that part, a complete net-work of water-courses. Besides these rivers and their branches, Holland is also traversed by a vast number of canals.

Climate.—The climate is temperate, but rather colder, and also moister, than that of England.

Productions.—There are no metals, and but few *minerals*. The country is chiefly famous for its dairy and farm produce.

Inhabitants.—In 1877 the population of Holland numbered 3,800,000,—an average of 190 to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—The people mostly belong to the Teutonic or German race; but the common language is *Dutch*.

2. **Education.**—In an advanced condition.

3. **Religion.**—The *Protestant* religion is followed by about two-thirds of the inhabitants—the rest are *Roman Catholics*.

¹ The Zuyder Zee was formed by an irruption of the sea in 1282.

² The Dollart Zee was formed by two inundations in 1277 and 1287.

Industry.—The people of Holland are distinguished for their industry, frugality, and cleanliness. They are among the best farmers and most successful traders in the world.

Farm and dairy produce (cattle, butter, cheese, &c.), and *foreign commerce*, are the things which chiefly engage the attention of the Dutch nation. They have a large carrying-trade in the productions of other lands. The *fisheries* are also of value, and there are also some important *manufactures*.

* * The internal trade of Holland is carried on mostly by the rivers and canals. Of the latter, the principal are the *North Holland Canal*, from the Helder to the Y, and the deeper *North Sea Canal*, from Amsterdam to the North Sea.

Government.—The kingdom of the Netherlands is an *hereditary monarchy*, under constitutional forms.

Provinces and Towns.—Holland includes ten provinces, besides portions of Limburg and Luxemburg. The last is properly a part of Germany, but is attached to the Dutch crown. Their names, with the chief towns in each, are:—

Provinces.	Towns.
NORTH HOLLAND	Amsterdam, Haarlem, Horn, Alkmaar.
SOUTH HOLLAND	Rotterdam, The Hague, Leyden.
ZEELAND	Middelburg, Flushing.
NORTH BRABANT	Hertogenbosch, Breda.
UTRECHT	Utrecht.
GUELDERLAND	Nimeguen, Zutphen.
OVERYSSEL	Zwoll.
DRENTHE	Meppel.
FRIESLAND	Leeuwarden.
GRONINGEN	Groningen.
LIMBURG	Maestricht.
LUXEMBURG	Luxemburg.

AMSTERDAM (population, 300,000) is the largest city of the Netherlands, and the great seat of its foreign trade. It stands at the entrance of the river Amstel, into an estuary of the Zuyder Zee. But *The Hague* is the seat of government, and forms the political capital of the kingdom. *Rotterdam* is on the river Meuse. *Leyden*, on a branch of the Rhine, to the south-west of Amsterdam, is famous for its university.

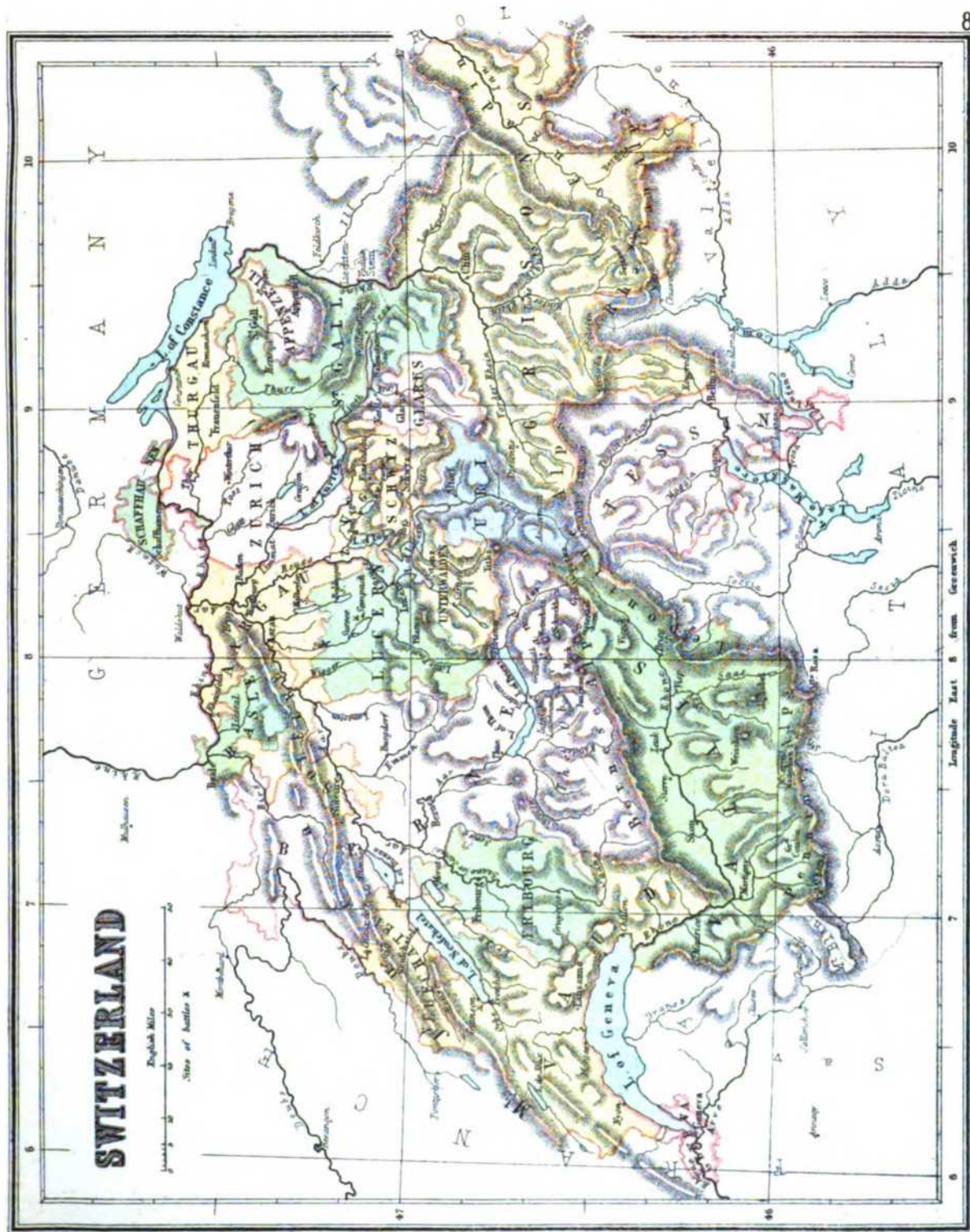
Colonies.—The chief foreign possessions of Holland are:—

1. **In the East Indies:**—Java, parts of *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, &c.

2. **In the New World:**—Part of *Guiana*, and some of the West India Islands. Of the latter the principal is *Curaçao*.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Holland, or the kingdom of the Netherlands, bounded?
- What is the area of Holland?
- What arms of the sea occur on the coast of Holland? Point them out upon the map.
- What kind of country is Holland, as to its surface?
- Name the three principal rivers of Holland. Into what sea do they flow?
- What kind of climate has Holland?
- By what qualities are the Dutch people distinguished?
- What is the population of Holland?
- Of what do the productions of Dutch industry chiefly consist, and what kind of trade do the Dutch carry on?
- Name the two great canals of Holland.
- Under what kind of government is Holland?
- What is the prevailing religion?
- Name the provinces into which Holland is divided?
- How is Amsterdam situated, and for what is it distinguished?
- Name some of the other principal towns of Holland. Which is the seat of government?
- By what characteristics (as to appearance) are the towns of Holland generally distinguished?
- Name the chief foreign possessions of Holland.



GEORGE PHILIP & SON, LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

SWITZERLAND.

Boundaries.—SWITZERLAND is an entirely inland country, and is bounded on the *north* by Germany, on the *east* by Austria, on the *south* by Italy, and on the *west* by France.

Extent.—Its area is nearly 16,000 square miles—little more than a third part of the size of England and Wales.

Mountains.—Two-thirds of the surface of Switzerland consist of high mountains and intervening valleys: the remaining third is an elevated plain. It is, therefore, a mountainous country.

The **Alps** cover the greater part of Switzerland, and form a stupendous chain along the Swiss and Italian border. *Mont Blanc*, the highest summit of the Alps, is not in Switzerland, but within the adjacent province of Savoy. The highest of the Swiss Alps are *Mont Rosa*, *Mont Cervin* (or the Matterhorn), *Finster-aar-horn*, and the *Jungfrau*. All the higher portions of these and other lofty summits are covered with perpetual snow.

Rivers.—The four principal are the *Rhine*, the *Rhone*, the *Aar*, and the *Inn*.

The *Rhine* flows through the Lake of Constance; the *Rhone* through the Lake of Geneva. The *Aar* is a tributary of the *Rhone*; the *Inn* is a tributary of the Danube.

Lakes.—The largest are *Geneva* and *Constance*; next come *Neufchâtel*, *Lucerne*, and *Zurich*.

Climate.—The air of the higher open country is cool, but on the shores of the lakes and in other sheltered localities the climate is warm, more so than that of England.

Productions.—The *vine* flourishes in the lower valleys and plains. But Switzerland is rather pastoral than an agricultural country. Some metals and minerals are found, but not much worked.

Inhabitants.—Switzerland had in 1880 above 2,800,000 inhabitants—an average of 180 to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—The Swiss are partly of French and partly of German descent, and speak respectively the languages of France and Germany.¹

¹ In one of the Swiss cantons—that of Tessin, to the south of the Alps—the people are of Italian origin, and speak the Italian language.

2. **Education.**—Education is compulsory, and highly advanced, especially in the Protestant cantons.

3. **Religion.**—Rather more than half the Swiss people are Protestants; the rest belong to the Roman Catholic Church.

Industry.—The Swiss are a frugal and industrious race.

Manufactures are extensively pursued, chiefly silk and cotton goods, watches,¹ and musical boxes. In the mountain-tracts the rearing of cattle and the produce of the dairy are the chief features of Swiss industry. In spite of great natural disadvantages, the commerce of Switzerland is extensive. Communication with Italy is carried on by means of several magnificent roads across the Alps, and the railway systems of the two countries are now united by the recently completed great *St. Gothard Tunnel*, which is upwards of nine miles in length.

Government.—Switzerland is a federal republic. Each canton has a government of its own, and the whole are joined in a federal union, governed by a Diet.

Divisions and Towns.—Switzerland comprehends twenty-two cantons, the names of which, with the principal towns in each, are as follow:—

Cantons.	Towns.	Cantons.	Towns.
BERNE	Berne.	ZUG	Zug
SOLEURE	Soleure.	LUCERNE	Lucerne.
BASLE	Basle.	UNTERWALDEN	Stanz, Sarnen.
AARGAU	Aargau.	URI	Altorf.
ZURICH	Zurich.	FRIBOURG	Fribourg.
SCHAFFHAUSEN	Schaffhausen.	NEUCHÂTEL	Neuchâtel.
THURGAU	Frauenfeld.	VAUD	Lausanne.
APPENZELL	Appenzell.	GENEVA	Geneva.
ST. GALL	St. Gall.	VALAIS	Sion.
GLARUS	Glarus.	GRISONS	Chur or Coire.
SCHWYZ	Schwyz.	TESSIN	Bellinzona, Lugano.

BERNE (population 36,000) is the capital of Switzerland. It stands on the river Aar. Geneva, Zurich, and Basle are next in importance. Geneva, the largest town in Switzerland, is on the Rhone, at its outlet from the Lake of Geneva. Zurich is at the foot of the Lake of Zurich, at the outlet of the river Limmat, which joins the Aar. Basle is on the Rhine, and is the seat of a considerable trade.

* The Lake of Lucerne, in the heart of the mountain country, is enclosed by the four forest cantons of Schwyz, Uri, Unterwalden, and Lucerne—the cradle of Swiss independence.

¹ About half a million watches are made annually, occupying above 85,000 workmen.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Name the boundaries of Switzerland. What natural features do they embrace?
2. What, in round numbers, is the area of Switzerland?
3. What kind of surface does Switzerland exhibit?
4. Name some of the principal Alpine summits that are within or on the borders of Switzerland. Which is highest of the number?
5. Mention the principal rivers of Switzerland, tracing their courses on the map.
6. Name the principal lakes?
7. Describe briefly the climate.

8. What productions of the soil belong to Switzerland?
9. What was the population of Switzerland in 1880?
10. What languages are commonly spoken by the Swiss people?
11. What industrial pursuits distinguish the Swiss nation?
12. Under what form of government is Switzerland?
13. How many cantons does Switzerland embrace? Which, among them, contains the seat of the general government?
14. In what parts of the country are the cities of Geneva, Zurich, and Basle? For what are the two former distinguished?
15. Name the four "forest cantons" of Switzerland.

THE GERMAN EMPIRE.

Boundaries.—On the *north* by the North Sea, Denmark, and the Baltic; on the *south* by Switzerland and Austria; on the *east* by Austria and Russia; and on the *west* by France, Belgium, and Holland.

Extent.—The total area of the German Empire as now constituted is 212,000 square miles, or about three and a-half times that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The total length of the coast-line is about 1,200 miles. There are numerous inlets, but few good harbours.

1. **Inlets.**—The principal inlets are the Jahde, estuaries of the Weser and Elbe, Gulf of Lübeck, Stettiner Haff, and Gulf of Danzig, with Frische Haff and Kurische Haff.

2. **Islands.**—The Frisian Islands, Norderney, &c., in the North Sea; Rugen, &c., in the Baltic.

Natural Features.—Germany is for the most part level, but includes many detached groups of high ground within its southerly and westerly divisions.

1. **Mountains.**—The chief mountain-ranges are the *Vosges*, on the left bank; and the *Schwarz Wald*, *Taunus*, and *Westerwald*, on the right bank of the Rhine; *Böhmer Wald*, *Erz Gebirge*, and *Riesen Gebirge*, on the Austrian frontiers; and the *Harz Mountains*, *Teutoburger Wald*, *Vogelsberg*, and *Thüringer Wald*, between the basins of the Elbe and the Rhine.

2. **Rivers.**—The principal rivers are the *Rhine*, *Ems*, *Weser*, and *Elbe*, flowing into the North Sea; the *Oder*, *Vistula*, and *Niemen*, flowing into the Baltic; and the *Danube*, flowing into the Black Sea.

3. **Lakes.**—Lake Constance, or Bodensee, on the south; Ammer See and Wurm See, König See and Chiem See, in Bavaria.

Climate.—The climate of Germany resembles, on the whole, that of Britain; it is, however, somewhat colder, and the winters are more severe.

Productions.—The forests are extensive, and give shelter to numerous wild animals. The minerals include coal, with iron and other metals.

Inhabitants.—The total population of the German Empire was, according to the last census (1880), 45,194,000—an average of more than 200 persons to the square mile.

1. **Race and Language.**—Nearly 90 per cent. of the people are *Germans*, and the German language is almost universally spoken. There are about 2,500,000 Poles, and 500,000 Jews.

2. **Education.**—Education is general, and compulsory throughout the empire.

3. **Religion.**—The majority of the Prussians are *Protestants*, but south Germany is chiefly *Roman Catholic*.

Industry.—Germany in general is rather agricultural than manufacturing.

1. **Agriculture** employs three-fourths of the German population. Various grains, flax, and the vine are extensively grown.

2. **Manufactures.**—The linen manufacture is extensively pursued in Silesia; the cotton, woollen, and silk manufactures, with various works in metal, in the western half of the kingdom. Berlin is especially noted for its glass, porcelain, jewellery, and fancy goods in general.

3. **Commerce.**—The imports are cotton and woollen goods; iron, coals, hemp, tallow, &c., and colonial produce. The exports are corn, oxen, sheep, and horses; raw sugar, wool, timber, linen, and provisions. The trade of the Empire is under the control of the *Zollverein* or Customs League, which at present embraces all the German States, except Hamburg and Bremen.

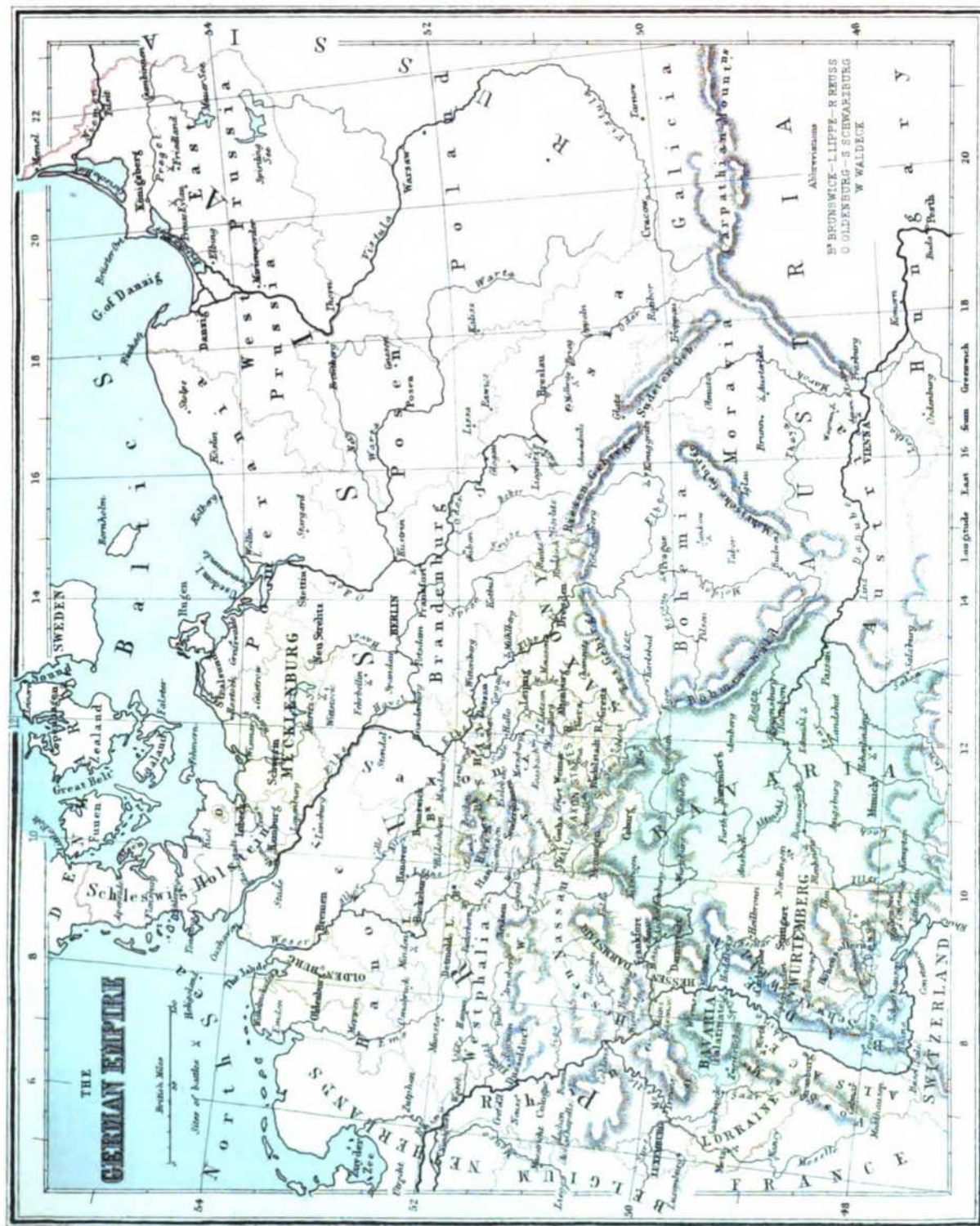
Government.—By the constitution of April, 1871, all the German states "form an eternal union for the protection of the realm, and the care of the welfare of the German people." The supreme direction of all affairs is in the hands of the King of Prussia, who is thus the Emperor of Germany.

Up to 1866, Germany was politically divided into numerous states, united into a body called the Germanic Confederation, but each of them with a government of its own. Austria ranked first amongst the German States in size and importance—Prussia second. The Austro-Prussian war of 1866 effected a material alteration in the affairs of Germany, and raised Prussia to the foremost place amongst the German States. The former Confederation was dissolved, and a new Confederation—consisting of the States of North Germany, with Prussia at their head, Austria being expressly excluded—formed in its place. This latter was terminated by the issues of the Franco-German war of 1870-1, which resulted in the creation of a new German Empire, under the hereditary headship of the royal house of Prussia. It involved, besides, the transfer from France to Germany of the territory of Alsace-Lorraine, embracing an area of 5,600 square miles (nearly the size of Yorkshire), and a population of above a million and a half. Alsace-Lorraine is under the immediate administration of the Empire: each of the other States comprehended within it has a distinct government of its own.

Divisions.—The following table shows the states included in the present German Empire:—

States.		Capitals.
1. Kingdoms of	PRUSSIA	Berlin.
	BAVARIA	Munich.
	WURTEMBERG	Stuttgart.
	SAXONY	Dresden.
2. Grand Duchies of	BADEN	Carlsruhe.
	MECKLENBURG-SCHWERIN	Schwerin.
	HESSE	Darmstadt.
	OLDENBURG	Oldenburg.
	SAXE-WEIMAR	Weimar.
3. Duchies of	MECKLENBURG-STREELITZ	New Strelitz.
	BRUNSWICK	Brunswick.
	SAXE-MEININGEN	Meiningen.
	ANHALT	Dessau.
	SAXE-COBURG-GOTHA	Gotha and Coburg.
4. Principalities of	SAXE-ALTENBURG	Altenburg.
	LIPPE-DETMOLD	Detmold.
	WALDECK	Arolsen.
	SCHWARZBURG-RUDOLSTADT	Rudolstadt.
	SCHWARZBURG-SONDERHAUSEN	Sonderhausen.
5. Free Cities of	REUSS (YOUNGER LINE)	Gera.
	SCHAUMBURG-LIPPE	Bückeburg.
	REUSS (ELDER LINE)	Greiz.
	HAMBURG	Hamburg.
	LÜBECK	Lübeck.
6. Reichsland of	BREMEN	Bremen.
	ALSACE-LORRAINE	Metz, Colmar, Strasbourg.

Besides the German provinces of Austria (which are described in a succeeding section), the little territories of *Luxemburg* and *Lichtenstein* are not included within the Empire. The former, a Grand-duchy, is attached to the kingdom of the Netherlands. *Lichtenstein* is a petty principality on the east border of Switzerland.



PRUSSIA.

Boundaries.—Prussia is bounded on the north by the Baltic Sea, Denmark, and the German Ocean; on the east by Russia and Poland; on the south by Austria, Saxony, various small German States, and France; on the west by the kingdom of the Netherlands, and Belgium.

Extent.—Area, 137,000 square miles—nearly two and a half times that of England and Wales, or two-thirds that of the whole empire.

Inhabitants.—Prussia has a population of 27,260,000, of whom about 2,500,000 are *Poles*; the remainder are *Germans*.

Government.—The kingdom of Prussia is an hereditary monarchy, in most respects under military forms of administration.

Most of the people are Protestants; but there are numerous Roman Catholics and Jews. Education is in a highly advanced state.

Divisions and Towns.—The kingdom of Prussia includes the following provinces and towns:—

Provinces.	Towns.	Provinces.	Towns.
Brandenburg .	Berlin, Potsdam, Frankfurt-on-the-Oder.	Westphalia .	Münster, Minden.
Prussia Proper	Königsberg, Danzig, Memel.	Hessen-Nassau	Frankfurt-on-the-Main, Cassel, Hanau.
Pomerania . .	Stettin, Stralsund.	Rhine Province	Cologne, Aachen, Elberfeld, Crefeld, Coblenz, Treves.
Posen . . .	Posen.	Lauenberg . .	Lauenburg.
Silesia . . .	Breslau.	Jahde Territory	Wilhelmshafen.
Saxony . . .	Magdeburg, Halle, Erfurt.	Hohenzollern .	Hechingen, Sigmaringen.
Schleswig-Holstein . .	Altona, Kiel, Tönning.		
Hanover . . .	Hanover, Göttingen.		

BERLIN, the capital of the Prussian monarchy, and also of the new German Empire, stands on the river Spree, which joins the Havel, an affluent of the Elbe. *Breslau*, on the river Oder, is the second city of Prussia in point of size; *Cologne*, on the Rhine, comes third in point of population; and *Frankfurt-on-the-Main*, fourth. *Danzig*, on the river Vistula, near its mouth, and *Stettin*, on the river Oder, are seats of great foreign trade. *Magdeburg*, on the Elbe, with *Barmen*, *Elberfeld*, *Düsseldorf*, *Coblenz*, and other towns on or near the Rhine, are large and flourishing seats of industry. *Altona*, on the Elbe, immediately adjoins Hamburg, and is virtually a suburb of that city.

SMALLER STATES OF THE GERMAN EMPIRE.

The principal of these are:—Saxony, Bavaria, Wurtemberg, Baden, Hesse, Alsace-Lorraine, and the Hanse Towns.

Saxony lies between Prussia and Bohemia, and is traversed by the river Elbe. Its chief towns are:—*Dresden* (the capital), which stands beside the river Elbe, and *Leipzig*, near the river Elster, a tributary of the Elbe.

Bavaria, in point of size, comes next to Prussia in the list of German States. Its chief town is *Munich* (the capital), which stands on the river Isar, an affluent of the Danube.

Wurtemberg lies to the west of Bavaria. Its capital, *Stuttgart*, lies near the left bank of the Neckar.

Baden lies on the east bank of the Rhine. Its capital, *Carlsruhe*, lies a few miles east of the Rhine.

Hesse includes two detached portions of territory. The chief cities are *Darmstadt* (the capital) and *Mentz*.

Alsace-Lorraine lies between the Rhine and the Vosges Mountains. Part of the Moselle Valley is also within its limits. *Strasbourg*, the chief city of Alsace-Lorraine, lies near the left bank of the Rhine, beside the tributary stream of the Ill, and is of much note in history. *Mühlhausen*, to the southward (in the plain between the Rhine and the Vosges, and also on the Ill), has large cotton and other mills. *Metz* is a strong fortress and military arsenal, on the river Moselle. Before 1871, Alsace-Lorraine formed part of France.

The Hanse Towns.—The “free cities” of Hamburg, Lubeck, and Bremen, are among the most important commercial centres in the empire. *Hamburg* stands on the Elbe, sixty miles above its mouth. *Lubeck* stands on the little river Trave, which enters the Baltic. *Bremen* is on the river Weser, forty miles above its mouth.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is the German Empire bounded?
- What is its total area?
- Name the principal inlets and islands.
- Describe briefly the natural features of Germany, noting the position of the chief mountain ranges and the courses of the larger rivers.
- Name the chief lakes.
- What kind of climate has Germany?
- What are the chief natural productions?
- What was the total population of the empire in 1880? To what race do the people mostly belong?
- Mention the chief industrial pursuits of the German people.
- What is the *Zollverein*?
- What is the form of the general government?
- Mention a few of the great events which led to the formation of the present German Empire.
- Name the chief states included in the empire.
- What are the boundaries of Prussia, and what proportion of the total area of the empire does it embrace?
- What does the population of Prussia amount to?
- Mark on the map the mountains and rivers that strictly belong to Prussia?
- Name the provinces of Prussia, and a few of the chief towns in each.
- On what rivers are Berlin, Breslau, Cologne, Danzig, Magdeburg, and Altona?
- Name some of the larger towns on or near the Rhine.
- Name some of the smaller states of the German Empire. Which of them rank as kingdoms? Which form grand-duchies, duchies, or principalities?
- Name the capitals of Saxony, Bavaria, and Wurtemberg.
- In which states, respectively, are Leipzig, Darmstadt, and Carlsruhe?
- Where is Alsace-Lorraine? Name its chief cities.
- Point out on the map to the three Hanse Towns, naming the rivers on which they are situated.

THE AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN EMPIRE.

Besides part of Germany, the "AUSTRIAN EMPIRE" embraces several large countries of middle Europe, lying beyond the German limits.

Boundaries.—Austria-Hungary is bounded on the *north* by Saxony, Prussia, and Poland; on the *east* by Russia and Roumania; on the *south* by Roumania, Servia, the Adriatic Sea, and Italy; on the *west* by Switzerland and Bavaria.

Extent.—Including Bosnia and Herzegovina, the empire has a total area of 265,000 square miles, about four and a half times the area of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The only sea-coast of Austria is at the head of the Adriatic Sea. Total length, 500 miles.

1. **Capes.**—Puntas de Promontore, and Capo de Istria.
2. **Inlets.**—Gulfs of Trieste, Quarnero, and Cattaro.
3. **Islands.**—Numerous small islands along the coast.

Natural Features.—The Austro-Hungarian Empire includes a large portion of the *Alps*, and the whole of the *Carpathian Mountains*.

The *Alps* stretch over great part of its German provinces; the well-defined and elevated plain of Bohemia, to the north of the Danube, is enclosed by the Bohmer Wald, the Erz-gebirge, the Riesen-gebirge, and other mountains. The *Carpathians* extend round the north and east of Hungary. The chief part of Hungary is an extensive plain, watered by the Danube and its tributaries: Transylvania, to the south-eastward, is altogether a mountain-land. Dalmatia, which borders on the Adriatic, is traversed by the south-eastward extensions of the Alps.

Rivers.—The principal rivers are the *Danube* and the *Dniester*, flowing into the Black Sea; the *Adige*, flowing into the Adriatic Sea; the *Oder* and *Vistula*, flowing into the Baltic; and the *Elbe*, flowing into the North Sea.

The *Danube* is the great river of Austria. Of its tributaries the *Inn*, the *Drave*, the *Save*, and the *Theiss*,¹ are the most considerable.

Lakes.—Hungary contains the considerable *Lake of Balaton*, or the *Platten See*, the water of which is salt. The *Neusiedler See* has disappeared within recent years. In the Julian Alps is *Lake Zirkintz*, the waters of which occasionally disappear.

Climate.—The climate is generally dry, temperate, and healthy. Hungary, and the eastern provinces in general, are distinguished by extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons. The warmest portions of the empire are those lying south of the Alps, towards the coast of the Adriatic.

Productions.—The natural productions are extremely varied. Every plant indigenous to Europe is found in Hungary alone, while the mineral wealth of the empire is said to be greater than that of any other European country.

The *vine* thrives in Hungary, and to the south of the Alps. The *fig*, *olive*, and *mulberry* are found on the shores of the Adriatic. The mineral produce is of high value; it includes *gold*, *silver*, *iron*, *lead*, *quicksilver*, and *salt*—the last in Galicia; the others chiefly in Hungary and the Illyrian provinces (Carinthia and Carniola).

Inhabitants.—The Austro-Hungarian Empire has above 37,000,000 inhabitants—fewer than one-fourth of them Germans, the other three-fourths composed of Slaves, Poles, and other races.

1. **Education.**—Rather backward, but improving.

2. **Religion.**—The majority of the people are *Roman Catholics*, but there are numerous *Protestants* and members of the *Greek Church* in the Hungarian countries.

Industry.—The industry of Austria is chiefly agricultural. Manufactures are mostly pursued in the German provinces, where linen, woollen, and other fabrics are largely made. Bohemia is famous for its glass works.

Foreign commerce is restricted by the limited extent of sea-coast, which is confined to the Adriatic. *Trieste*, at the head of that sea, is the chief seat of maritime trade for the German provinces of the empire; *Fiume* for the Hungarian countries.

Government.—The administration is dual in form. The German provinces, with Galicia and Dalmatia, are under the immediate rule of the "reich," or Empire; the other provinces are under the Hungarian crown. Both divisions of the monarchy now enjoy representative institutions.

The Empire, as a whole, has no nationality. The ruling power is German; but four-fifths of the subjects of Austria are of races differing in language, habits, and ideas, from the Germans, whose rule they reluctantly obey. This division of races is a source of political weakness to the empire, and necessitates the maintenance of a large standing army.

Divisions and Towns.—Austria includes the following:—

German Provinces.	Polish Province.
Austria Proper ... Vienna, Linz.	Galicia.....Lemberg, Cracow.
SalzburgSalzburg.	
StyriaGraz.	<i>Hungarian Provinces.</i>
Carinthia.....Klagenfurt.	Hungary.....Pesth, Buda, Presburg.
CarniolaLaybach.	Transylvania...Kronstadt.
The Littoral or } Trieste.	SlavoniaPeterwardein.
Coast-Region }	CroatiaAgram, Fiume.
TyrolInnsbruck.	
BohemiaPrague.	Dalmatia.....Zara, Ragusa.
MoraviaBrünn, Olmütz.	BukowinaCzernowitch.
SilesiaTroppau.	

VIENNA,¹ the capital of the empire, is a populous and commercial city on the south bank of the Danube. *Prague*, the chief city of Bohemia, ranks next to Vienna in size and population. *PESTH* and *BUDA*,² upon the opposite banks of the Danube, form together the largest city of Hungary, and the seat of government for the Hungarian provinces. *Presburg*, also on the Danube, was the former capital of Hungary. *Cracow*, on the Vistula, was the ecclesiastical capital of Poland while that unfortunate country maintained its place as an independent nation.

The provinces of *Bosnia and Herzegovina*, which formerly belonged to Turkey, were in 1878 occupied by Austria. They have an area of about 24,000 square miles, and a population of 1,200,000. The chief towns are *Bosna-Serai*, the capital, and *Mostar*, the chief town of Herzegovina.

¹ The *Theiss* is the largest strictly Austrian river.

¹ Population, 1,020,000.

² Total population, 250,000.

QUESTIONS ON THE AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN EMPIRE.

1. By what countries is the Austro-Hungarian Empire bounded?
2. What countries beyond the limits of Germany does the Austrian Empire embrace?
3. What two mountain systems are (one of them partly, the other wholly) within the limits of Austria? Which of the two is the loftier?
4. What plains are within the limits of the Empire?
5. Name the chief rivers and lakes of the Austrian Empire.
6. Which portions of the Austrian Empire are distinguished by the greater warmth of their climate? Name some of the fruits that belong to these provinces?
7. What descriptions of mineral wealth does the Empire contain, and in which of its provinces?
8. What races of people are included among the subjects of Austria?
9. What branches of industry are most characteristic of the people?
10. Name the chief ports for the foreign commerce of the Empire.
11. What is the form of government in the Austro-Hungarian Empire?
12. How many of the provinces of Austria fall within the limits of Germany?
13. Name the other provinces of the Empire.
14. Which of the Austrian provinces was formerly a part of Poland, and what is its chief city?
15. On what rivers are the cities of Vienna, Presburg, Prague, Pesth, and Cracow, respectively situated?
16. State what you know of Bosnia and Herzegovina.

DENMARK.

Denmark consists of the peninsula of Jutland, and the neighbouring group of islands lying at the entrance of the Baltic. The largest of these islands is *Zealand*; the second in size is *Funen*. Of the others the principal are *Laaland*, *Bornholm* and *Falster*.

Boundaries.—The boundaries of Denmark are—on the north, the Skagerrack; on the east, the Kattegat, and the Baltic Sea; on the west, the North Sea; on the south, Germany.

Extent.—The present area of Denmark is 14,500 square miles—about one-fourth that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The coast-line is very extensive, and is broken by numerous inlets.¹

Surface.—Denmark is a flat country.

The peninsula of Jutland forms an outlying portion of the great European plain, and exhibits merely gentle undulations of surface.

Rivers.—The rivers, though numerous, are all of small size.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of Denmark is somewhat colder than that of Britain, and is also moister. The chief sources of national wealth are found in the rich pastures, and in the fisheries carried on in the adjacent seas.

Inhabitants.—Denmark has nearly 2,000,000 inhabitants. The Danes, properly so called, are of Scandinavian race.

Education.—Widely diffused; numerous government schools.

Religion.—Nearly all the Danes are Lutherans.

Industry.—The industry of Denmark is chiefly agricultural.

Cattle, with *butter* and *cheese*, and other farm produce, are the most valuable productions. The Danes are good sailors, and carry on considerable maritime commerce.

Government.—Denmark forms an hereditary monarchy.

Divisions and Towns.—The kingdom of Denmark includes the following divisions and towns:—

Divisions.	Towns.
The Islands	Copenhagen, Elsinore.
Jutland	Aalborg, Aarhus.

COPENHAGEN,¹ the capital of Denmark, is on the east coast of the island of Zealand, beside the strait of the Sound. *Elsinore* lies some distance to the northward, on the same channel. *Aalborg* and *Aarhus*, the largest towns of Jutland, are both of small size.

The group of the **FAROE ISLANDS**, and the large island of **ICELAND**, belong to Denmark.

The **Faroe Islands** are situated in the North Atlantic, 200 miles to the north-westward of the Shetland Islands. Their inhabitants are chiefly engaged in fishing and fowling (that is, collecting the feathers and down of the numerous birds which frequent their steep and rugged cliffs). The chief town is *Thorshavn*.

Iceland is, next to Great Britain, the largest of European Islands. Its northern coasts just touch the border of the frigid zone. The climate is cold, and the surface generally barren—exhibiting a succession of volcanic mountains, and plains covered with lava. Several of the volcanoes are in occasional eruption—amongst them Mount Hekla, upwards of 5,000 feet high.

The most remarkable feature of Iceland, however, consists in its boiling springs, or *geysers*, situated near Mount Hekla. The geysers are fountains which at intervals throw up columns of hot water and spray. The largest of them—called the Great Geyser—throws up a column of water to the height of 80 feet.

Iceland has about 70,000 inhabitants. The chief town is *Reikiavik*, on the south-west coast.

Foreign Possessions.—The foreign settlements belonging to Denmark, besides Iceland, consist of the island of *Santa Cruz*, with *St. Thomas* and *St. John*, in the West Indies; and a few stations on the west coast of *Greenland*, in North America.

¹ Population, 193,000.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. How is Denmark bounded? Point to its place on the map.
2. What is the present area of Denmark?
3. Is Denmark a flat or a hilly country, and what kind of climate has it?
4. What is the present population of Denmark?
5. In what branches of industry are the Danes chiefly engaged?
6. Name the great divisions of Denmark, and name the chief towns?
7. On what island is the capital of Denmark situated? What strait does it adjoin?
8. Where are the Faroe Islands? What town do they contain?
9. Where is Iceland? What kind of natural features does it exhibit?
10. What are the Geysers, and where are they situated?
11. What foreign possessions belong to Denmark?

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

Boundaries.—Sweden and Norway form one kingdom, and are together known as Scandinavia. Its boundaries are, on the *north*, the Arctic Ocean; on the *west*, the Atlantic; on the *south*, the Skager-rack, the Kattegat, and the Baltic Sea; on the *east*, the Baltic, the Gulf of Bothnia, and part of Russia.

Extent.—Sweden and Norway have an area of about 300,000 square miles, or more than five times that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Sweden and Norway have a very extensive coastline, indented on the side of Norway by numerous narrow inlets, which are called *fjords*.

1. **Capes.**—The *North Cape* and the *Naze*, both belonging to Norway. The North Cape is the northernmost point of Europe.

2. **Islands.**—The *Lofoten Islands*, off the west coast of Norway; the islands of *Gothland* and *Oland*, in the Baltic Sea, to the east of Sweden.

Surface.—The whole of Norway is a vast mountain region, which rises steeply above the waters of the Atlantic, and declines with a gradual slope to the eastward.

1. **Mountains.**—The highest portions bear the name of *Ymesfield*, and reach 8,500 feet above the sea. *Snechatten*, in the *Dovrefield*, is upwards of 7,600 feet high.

2. **Rivers.**—The two principal rivers of Sweden are the *Dal* and the *Göta*. The *Dal* flows into the Gulf of Bothnia; the *Göta* into the Kattegat. The longest river of Norway is the *Glommen* (400 miles long), which flows into Christiania Fiord.

3. **Lakes.**—Extremely numerous in both countries.¹ The largest lakes in Sweden are *Wener* (the third largest lake in Europe), *Wetter*, and *Mälär*. The largest in Norway is *Lake Mjøsen*.

Climate.—The climate is colder than that of England, owing to the higher latitude.

The winters are long, but the cold is less severe than is elsewhere the case under similar parallels. The air of both countries is dry and healthy. More rain falls in Norway than in Sweden.

¹ In Norway alone the lakes are estimated to number 30,000, while in Sweden they cover nearly a tenth part of the total area of the country.

Productions.—Vast *forests*, and valuable ores of *copper* and *iron*, with other metals, form the natural sources of wealth in Sweden and Norway. The *fisheries* are also of high value.

Inhabitants.—Sweden has 4,500,000 inhabitants; Norway, 1,800,000. Both countries are thinly populated, comparatively to their size (Norway, 14 to the square mile; Sweden, 26).

Education.—Compulsory, and well advanced, especially in Sweden.

Religion.—The people of both countries are nearly all *Lutherans*.

Industry.—With both Swedes and Norwegians, the pursuits of industry are found chiefly in connexion with their mines, their forests, and their fisheries, the produce of which is extensively exported.

The Laplanders, who dwell in the extreme north of the peninsula, have their wealth in their herds of rein-deer, which furnish them alike with food and clothing.

Government.—Sweden and Norway form together a kingdom, under constitutional forms.

Divisions and Towns.—Sweden and Norway include the following divisions and towns:—

IN SWEDEN.		IN NORWAY.	
Divisions.	Towns.	Divisions.	Towns.
Sweden Proper	Stockholm, Upsala.	Sondenfields	Christiania.
Gothland . .	Gottenborg, Carlscrona.	Nordenfields	Bergen, Drontheim.
Nordland . .	Sundsväl.	Norlandens	Hammerfest.

STOCKHOLM,¹ the capital of the Swedish monarchy, lies at the entrance of Lake Mälär, near the coast of the Baltic. *Gottenborg*, at the mouth of the river Göta, is the second city of the kingdom in commercial importance. *Upsala* is the seat of a famous university.

CHRISTIANIA,² at the head of a long fiord called by its name, is the capital of Norway. *Hammerfest*, only a short way from the North Cape, is the most northerly town in Europe.

¹ Population, 173,000.

² Population, 116,000.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. In what part of Europe are Sweden and Norway situated? Name their boundaries.
2. By what are the coasts of Norway distinguished?
3. What capes form respectively the extreme north and south points of Norway?
4. What islands belong to Norway, and where are they situated? What islands to Sweden, and where?
5. What kind of a country is Norway, as to the features of its surface?
6. Name the principal rivers of Sweden and Norway, with the seas into which they flow.
7. Mention the three principal lakes of Sweden; also the largest lake of Norway.
8. What natural productions of value do Sweden and Norway possess?
9. In what does their commerce chiefly consist?
10. What is the form of government, and what the national religion, in Sweden and Norway?
11. Name the three divisions of Sweden, with the principal town of each.
12. What city forms the capital of Sweden, and how is it situated?
13. Name the three divisions of Norway.
14. Point on the map to the chief city of Norway. At the head of what inlet does it stand?
15. Where are the following places:—Carlscrona, Bergen, Drontheim, and Hammerfest? Point them out on the map.



GEORGE PHILIP & SON LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

George Philip & Son, London & Liverpool.

RUSSIA.

Boundaries.—European Russia is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Baltic Sea, Prussia, and Austria; on the south by Roumania, the Black and Caspian Seas, and Mount Caucasus; on the east by Siberia or Asiatic Russia.

Extent.—European Russia includes upwards of 2,000,000 square miles—more than thirty-four times the area of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Russia possesses a coast-line upon four inland seas, the *Baltic, Black, Caspian, and White Seas*, besides part of the shores of the Arctic Ocean. The *Sea of Azov* is an arm of the Black Sea. The *Gulfs of Finland and Riga* are both arms of the Baltic.

Islands.—*Waigatz, Nova Zembla, and Spitzbergen*, in the Arctic Ocean; *Aland, Dago, and Oesel*, in the Baltic; and several small islands in the Caspian Sea.

Natural Features.—Russia is chiefly a level country. It consists principally of vast plains, which slope respectively towards the Baltic, Black, Caspian, and White Seas.

The most perfectly level of these plains are in the south-east, where they are called *steppes*. The steppe is an open plain, without trees, and generally without any perennial streams. Its surface, during the dry season of the year (the period of summer and autumn), is parched, arid, and often sandy, the vegetation burnt up by the intense heat; but at other times it exhibits a luxuriant expanse of grass, upon which the inhabitants pasture immense herds of horses and cattle.

1. **Mountains.**—The only mountains belonging to European Russia are the *Ural* and the *Caucasus*. The *Ural* are on the eastern, *Mount Caucasus* on the southern, border-line. The *Caucasus* is covered in its higher portions with perpetual snow. The *Valdai Hills*, in the centre, contain the sources of the Volga and Dvina.

2. **Rivers.**—The following are the principal rivers:—

- (1.) *Flowing into the Baltic Sea*, the Neva, Dvina, and Niemen.
- (2.) *Flowing into the Black Sea*, the Dniester, Dnieper, and Kouban.
- (3.) *Flowing into the Sea of Azov*, the Don.
- (4.) *Flowing into the Caspian Sea*, the Volga and Ural.
- (5.) *Flowing into the White Sea*, the North Dvina and Onega.
- (6.) *Flowing into the Arctic Ocean*, the Petchora.

3. **Lakes.**—The two largest are *Ladoga* and *Onega*; next are *Saima, Peipous, Enara, Bieloe, and Ilmen*. In the Steppes, east of the Volga, is the salt lake of *Jellon*.

Climate.—Russia has great variety of climate, owing to its vast extent.

Its northerly portions are very cold, compared with Britain, but towards the south it becomes warmer. Throughout Russia, however, the winters are excessively severe, and the summers are intensely hot.

Productions.—The extensive forests of Russia furnish some of its most valuable productions—*timber, tar, pitch, turpentine, and potash*. Its mines of *iron and platinum*, within the Ural district, are also of high value.

Inhabitants.—European Russia has nearly 74,000,000 inhabitants, which is a small number compared to its vast size. It is, on the whole, a thinly-peopled country.

1. **Race.**—More than five-sixths of the entire population belong to the *Slavonic* race; the rest are Finns, Lapps, Tartars, &c.

2. **Language.**—The majority of the people speak the Russian language, of which there are three principal dialects.

3. **Religion.**—In religion the majority of the people of Russia are followers of the *Greek Church*.

4. **Education.**—Very backward, except in Finland. Numerous government schools, and six universities.

Industry.—Agriculture is the chief industrial pursuit.

Immense crops of the finest *wheat* are annually raised and exported. *Rye* is the grain chiefly consumed by the Russian population. *Hemp, tallow, hides, and bristles*, with *timber* and other forest produce, are likewise articles of export. Some metal works are carried on within the valleys of the Ural; but Russia is not, upon the whole, a manufacturing country.

Government.—Russia is an empire, under despotic government, the sovereign bearing the title of *Czar, or Emperor*.

Until within a recent date the great mass of the people were serfs, attached to the land, and rated as the property of their owners, like so many head of cattle. Serfdom was, however, abolished in 1861.

Divisions and Towns.—Russia is divided, for administrative purposes, into governments and districts, which are generally grouped under eight great divisions.

These divisions, with their principal towns, are shown in the following table.

Divisions.	Chief Towns.	Divisions.	Chief Towns.
Baltic Provinces.	St. Petersburg. Cronstadt. Riga.	Little Russia, West Russia, Poland.	Kiev, Poltava. Wilna, Minsk. Warsaw, Kalisch.
Finland	Revel. Helsingfors, Abo.	South Russia.	Odessa, Nikolaev. Sevastopol. Kertch.
Great Russia.	Moscow, Toula. Nijni-Novgorod. Smolensk. Archangel.	East Russia.	Kazan, Saratov. Astrakhan. Perm.

ST. PETERSBURG,¹ the capital of the Russian Empire, stands at the mouth of the river Neva, which enters the Gulf of Finland. *Cronstadt*, situated on an island a few miles to the west, is the chief naval arsenal of the Russian empire. *Riga* is a great commercial city on the southern Dvina, a few miles above its mouth. *Helsingfors*, on the north side of the Gulf of Finland, is the provincial capital of Finland. *Archangel*, the chief port of northern Russia, is at the mouth of the northern Dvina.

Moscow, situated on the river Moskva (a tributary of the Volga), in the heart of the country, was the ancient capital of Russia. *Kiev*, on the Dneiper, is another city of ancient fame in Russian history. *Nijni-Novgorod*, at the junction of the Oka with the Volga, is an important centre of inland commerce.

Warsaw, the former capital of the Polish monarchy, is on the river Vistula, and is still a large city, though fallen from its former greatness.

Odessa, on the coast of the Black Sea, is a great seat of Russian commerce. *Nikolaev*, on the river Boug, is now the chief naval station of Russia in the Black Sea. *Sevastopol*, famous for its prolonged siege by the united armies of France and England in 1854-5, is on the south-west coast of the Crimea. *Kazan* is a large city to the east of the Volga, and is the centre of the trade with the Siberian provinces. *Astrakhan*, at the mouth of the Volga, commands the commerce of the Caspian Sea.

¹ Population, 668,000. Founded by Peter the Great in 1702.

QUESTIONS ON RUSSIA.

1. Name the boundaries of Russia, pointing to them on the map.
2. In point of size, what proportion does Russia bear to England and Wales?
3. What seas adjoin the coast-line of Russia? In what way are they connected with the ocean?
4. What are the general features of Russia, as to its surface?
5. What are the steppes, and in what part of Russia are they?
6. Name the principal rivers of Russia, with the seas into which they flow.
7. Mention the chief lakes. Which two of them are largest in size.
8. By what is the climate of Russia distinguished?
9. What articles of utility are derived from the extensive forests of Russia?
10. In what part of Russia is mineral produce abundant? Of what articles does it consist?
11. To what number does the total population of Russia amount? Is this relatively large, or small, as compared with the size of the country?
12. What industrial pursuits employ the greater number of the Russian population?
13. What articles of commercial produce does Russia export?
14. What form of government has Russia, and what is the national religion?
15. What eight great divisions has Russia?
16. On what river does the capital of Russia stand? Point to it on the map.
17. What city was the ancient capital of the Russian Empire?
18. In what part of Russia are Helsingfors, Nijni-Novgorod, Kiev, Odessa, Nikolae, and Sevastopol? Point out their places on the map.
19. On what rivers are Riga, Kiev, Warsaw, and Astrakhan?

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

Boundaries.—Turkey in Europe is bounded on the north by Austria, Servia, and Roumania; on the west by the Adriatic and Mediterranean; on the south by Greece, the Archipelago, and Sea of Marmora; on the east by the Black Sea.

Extent.—The area of Turkey is 128,000 square miles, or more than twice the size of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The Dardanelles and the Channel of Constantinople, which form (with the intervening Sea of Marmora) the entrance to the Black Sea, both belong to Turkey.

Islands.—Most of the islands in the Archipelago belong to the kingdom of Greece; but Candia (the ancient *Crete*) belongs to Turkey.

Mountains.—The chief mountains of Turkey are the *Balkan* and the range of *Mount Pindus*. The easternmost portion of the Alpine system, known by the name of the *Dinaric Alps*, is partly within Turkey, stretching along the coasts of the Adriatic.

Plains.—The extensive plain of *Bulgaria* is in the north of Turkey, within the valley of the Danube. The plain of *Thessaly*, east of Mount Pindus, is drained by the *Salembria*.

Rivers.—The chief river of European Turkey is the *Danube*. The *Maritza*, *Kara-su*, *Struma*, *Vardar*, and *Salembria*, all flow into the Archipelago.

Lakes.—The chief lakes are *Skutari*, *Ochrida*, and *Ianina*.

Climate.—Turkey has, in general, a warm and delightful climate—much warmer than that of England, especially in the provinces to the south of the *Balkan* mountains.

Productions.—The productions of the vegetable kingdom are rich and varied. The vine grows luxuriantly to the south of the *Balkans*, and the fig, olive, mulberry, and the orange also thrive.

Divisions.—By the Treaty of Berlin, 1878, *Bulgaria* and *East Roumelia* were formed into self-governing tributary states; *Bosnia* and *Herzegovina* were handed over to Austria; *Roumania*, *Servia*, and *Montenegro* became independent states, and acquired additional territory.

TURKEY PROPER.

Turkey Proper extends south of Eastern Roumelia, Servia, and Montenegro, and has an area of about 60,000 square miles, scarcely half its area before the war with Russia.

Inhabitants.—In 1880, the actual population was estimated at 4,275,000. Before the Russo-Turkish War of 1877-8, European Turkey contained upwards of 8,000,000 inhabitants. The Turks themselves are followers of Mohammed, but the rest of the population of Turkey are members of the Greek Church.

Industry.—Industrial pursuits are at a low ebb in Turkey, for the country is badly governed. The culture of the soil is the most important occupation. *Fruits*, *olive-oil*, *wax*, *honey*, *wool*, and *morocco leather*, constitute the exportable produce.

Government.—Turkey is a despotic monarchy, the sovereign of which is entitled the Sultan. The government of the various provinces is administered by *pashas*.

Divisions and Towns.—Turkey Proper includes:—

Divisions.	Chief Towns.
1. ROUMELIA	Constantinople. Adrianople, Gallipoli, Rodosto. Salonica, Drama, Seres.
2. ALBANIA	Ianina, Berat. Prisrend, Divra.
3. CANDIA OF CRETE	Khania, Retimo, Candia.

CONSTANTINOPLE (population, 700,000), the capital of the Turkish empire, is finely situated at the entrance of the channel called by its name, and hence commands the passage to and from the Black Sea. *Adrianople*, the second city in rank, is on the river *Maritza*. *Gallipoli* is on the Dardanelles; *Salonica*, at the north-west corner of the Archipelago, is a place of considerable trade.

BULGARIA.—The principality of Bulgaria extends from the Danube on the north, and Servia on the west, to the *Balkans* on the south, and the Black Sea on the east. Its area is estimated at 24,000 square miles, and its population at about 2,000,000.

The chief towns are *Sofia*, the capital; *Varna*, the port on the Black Sea; *Tirnova*, the old capital of the Bulgarian kingdom; and the famous fortresses of *Widdin*, *Bustchuck*, *Shumla*, and *Silistria*, memorable in connection with the war between Russia and Turkey.

EASTERN ROUMELIA.—This province has an area of 13,000 square miles, and a population estimated, in 1880, at 800,000.

The chief towns are *Philippopolis*, the capital, and *Bourgas*, the port. In the *Balkans*, on the north, is the famous *Skipka Pass*.

BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA.—These provinces, which formerly belonged to Turkey, are now occupied by Austria, and are virtually annexed to the Austrian Empire.



GEORGE PHILIP & SON, LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

George Philip & Son, London & Liverpool.

MONTENEGRO.

This small state lies to the north-west of Turkey Proper, and has an area of 3,500 square miles, and a population of 300,000. The capital is *Cettinje*, a small village with about 1,400 inhabitants. Its only ports are *Antivari* and *Dulcigno*.

SERVIA.

Servia includes the territory on either side of the Morava, and extends to Bulgaria on the east, and Bosnia on the west. The Danube forms the boundary on the north. Its area is 20,000 square miles, or rather less than half that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Servia is decidedly mountainous, being traversed in all directions by spurs of the *Dinaric Alps* and *Balkans*. It is well watered by numerous tributaries of the *Danube*, of which the largest is the *Morava*.

Climate.—Servia is subject to extremes of heat and cold.

Productions.—Immense herds of swine are reared, and form the principal article of export. *Grain, tobacco, silk, wine, and timber* are also exported.

Inhabitants.—The population is estimated at 1,670,000, nearly all of whom are Servians or Sclavs.

Government.—Servia is an independent principality, governed by a Prince, aided by a Senate and a National Assembly.

Divisions and Towns.—Servia is divided into eighteen districts, which are named after the chief towns in each. The principal towns are *Belgrade*, the capital; and *Kruschevat*, the ancient capital.

ROUMANIA.

Roumania occupies the plain between the Carpathians and the Danube. Its area is about 50,000 square miles, nearly equal to that of England.

Natural Features.—The western districts are hilly, but the greater part of the country is level, and well watered by the *Aluta, Prahova, Sereth*, and other tributaries of the Danube.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is strictly a continental one, *i.e.*, subject to extremes of heat and cold. The productions comprise the various kinds of *grain*, and immense herds of *cattle* and *sheep* are reared. Various minerals are abundant, but are not much worked.

Inhabitants.—Roumania contains about 5,300,000 inhabitants. The entire population, with the exception of 1,000,000 Catholics, Protestants, and Jews, are members of the *Greek Church*.

Industry.—Cattle and sheep rearing, and agriculture, are the chief industries. Wheat, wool, and timber are the chief articles of export. Manufactures on a limited scale in a few of the larger towns.

Government.—Roumania has recently¹ been erected into a kingdom. The government is a limited monarchy.

Divisions and Towns.—Wallachia is divided into eighteen, and Moldavia into thirteen, districts, each under a prefect or governor. The chief towns are *Bucharest*, the capital and seat of the government; *Jassy*, the chief town of Moldavia; and *Galatz*, the principal port. *Braila* and *Ismail* are two other important ports on the Danube.

¹ March, 1881.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Turkey bounded? What is its area?
- What islands belong to Turkey?
- What mountain-chains are within the limits of Europe and Turkey? Point to them on the map.
- Trace on the map the course of the river Danube, and name the principal streams by which it is joined.
- What five rivers flow through Turkey into the Archipelago?
- What kind of climate has Turkey? Name some of its vegetable productions?
- What were the chief provisions of the Treaty of Berlin?
- Give the area and boundaries of Turkey Proper. Name its principal industries and productions.
- Give in round numbers the population of Turkey in Europe before and after the war of 1877-8.
- What form of government prevails in Turkey, and how is the sovereign styled?
- What is the religion of the Turks themselves, and what is that of the majority of the population of Turkey?
- How is Turkey divided for administrative purposes? Name its divisions and chief towns.
- In what province of Turkey is Constantinople situated? What advantages of position belong to its site?
- What do you know of Adrianople, Gallipoli, and Salonika?
- Which of the provinces are now semi-independent principalities?
- What form of government prevails in Bulgaria and Eastern Roumelia?
- Give particulars of the situation, productions, &c., of these two provinces.
- What three states became completely independent of the Porte in 1878?
- Where is Montenegro? State what you know of the country and its inhabitants.
- How is Servia bounded? What is its present area?
- Describe the physical character of Servia, its climate and productions.
- How is Servia divided? Name the chief towns.
- What is the present form of government?
- Where is Roumania, and what are its boundaries?
- What is its area?
- What part of the country is (a) mountainous, (b) level?
- What is meant by a "continental" climate?
- Name the principal industries and productions of Roumania.
- What is the population of Roumania?
- What is the prevailing form of religion?
- What is the present (1881) form of government?
- Where are Bucharest, Jassy, Galatz, Braila, and Ismail?

GREECE.

Boundaries.—Greece is bounded on the north by Turkey, on the west and south by the Mediterranean, on the east by the Ægean Sea.

Extent.—Including the Ionian Islands, and the territory recently acquired from Turkey, the total area of Greece is 25,000 square miles, about half that of England.

Coasts.—Greece has a very irregular outline, and includes a great number of gulfs and narrow channels.

Its southern portion forms a peninsula, called the *Morea*, which is united to the rest of the mainland by the *Isthmus of Corinth*. The *Gulf of Corinth* washes the north side of the *Morea*.

Capes.—The two most important are—*Cape Matapan*, the southernmost point of the *Morea*, and *Cape Colonna*, the south point of *Attica*.

Islands.—A great part of Greece consists of islands.

1. The largest of these is *Negropont*, or *Eubœa*. Among those of smaller size are *Kuluri* (ancient *Salamis*), *Egina*, *Hydra*, *Spezzia*, *Syra*, *Paros*, *Santorin*, and many others.

2. The *Ionian Islands* are situated to the west and south of Greece. They consist of seven principal islands, viz.:—*Corfu*, *Pazo*, *Santa Maura*, *Ithaca*, *Cephalonia*, *Zante*, and *Cerigo*. These islands enjoy a delightful climate, and are famous for their abundant produce of the small species of grape which furnishes the dried currants of commerce. The olive and the vine also flourish. The population numbers 250,000. These islands were formerly a dependent portion of the British Empire. The town of *Corfu* is the capital.

Mountains.—Every part of Greece is mountainous, and its highest elevations reach more than 8,000 feet above the sea.

The interior of the *Morea* (the ancient *Peloponnesus*) forms a high plain, or table-land, bordered by mountain-ranges. *Æta*, *Parnassus*, *Helicon*, and *Cithæron*, are among the most famous mountains of ancient Greece, and are still commonly referred to by those names.

Rivers.—There are no rivers of any size within the modern kingdom of Greece. The streams are merely mountain-torrents, the beds of which are often dry.

Climate.—The climate is warm and delightful, and vegetation is abundant in the valleys and lower grounds.

Productions.—The vine, olive, orange, lemon, citron, fig, and mulberry, are among the native fruits. The honey of *Attica* is still celebrated, as it was in ancient times.

Inhabitants.—Greece has about 1,800,000 inhabitants.

1. **Race and Language.**—Three-fourths of the people are probably descended from the old *Greeks*, and their language closely resembles the ancient Greek tongue. The Greek race is found in every part of the Levant or Eastern Mediterranean.

2. **Religion and Education.**—The great majority of the people belong to the *Greek Church*. The Albanians or *Arnauts* are mostly Mohammedans. Public education is backward, but improving.

Industry.—The industry of the greater part of Greece is pastoral. Currants and other fruits, with olive-oil, honey, tobacco, and corn, are exported.

Government.—Modern Greece forms a kingdom, only established in 1832, previous to which the country had formed part of the Turkish dominions.

Divisions and Towns.—Greece contains the following:—

Divisions.	Towns.
Northern Greece	Athens, Livadia, Thebes, Lepanto.
The <i>Morea</i>	Nauplia, Corinth, Patras.
The Islands	Syra, Egripo (or Negropont), Corfu.

ATHENS¹ is the capital of modern Greece. It is on the west side of the peninsula of *Attica*, five miles distant from the harbour of the *Piræus*, its port. The site of ancient *Marathon* is about twenty miles north-east of the capital. *Thebes* (the ancient metropolis of *Bœotia*) is to the north-west of Athens. The village of *Kastri*, further to the west, represents the ancient *Delphi*.

Nauplia and *Patras*, both situated within the *Morea*, are, next to Athens, the most important seats of Greek commerce. *Syra* is the chief commercial town among the Greek Islands.

¹ Population, 46,000; or including the *Piræus*, 52,000.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. In what part of Europe is Greece? How is it bounded?
2. What is the area of Greece?
3. What peninsula forms part of Greece, and by what is it joined to the mainland?
4. Name the two most important capes of Greece, and point them out on the map.
5. Name some of the Greek Islands.
6. Where are the Ionian Islands? Mention them by name.
7. What article of commerce forms the chief produce of the Ionian Islands?
8. How are the Ionian Islands governed? What town constitutes the seat of government?
9. What mountains, well known in classical antiquity, are within the limits of modern Greece?
10. What kind of climate and soil has Greece? Name some of the fruits that are native to its soil.
11. To what pursuits is the industry of Greece chiefly devoted? What articles of produce does it export?
12. What are the three divisions of modern Greece? Point to them on the map.
13. What city forms the capital of Greece? Point to its place on the map.
14. What two places are—next to Athens—the chief seats of Greek commerce?
15. Where is *Syra*?



GEORGE PHILIP & SON LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

Divisions.—Before the year 1860, Italy was politically divided into nine distinct states. The public events of that year, however, resulted in the union of all these states—with the exception of the Venetian and Roman territories, the small republics of San Marino, and the principality of Monaco—under a single sovereignty. In 1866 the transfer of Venice, and in 1870 of Rome, completed the union of all Italy under a single ruler. Italy includes the following divisions and towns:—

Divisions.	Towns.	Divisions.	Towns.
ROMAN TERRITORY . . .	Rome, Civita Vecchia.	UMBRIA	Perugia, Spoleto.
TUSCANY	Florence, Leghorn, Pisa.	CAMPANIA	Naples, Capua, Caserta, Salerno.
PIEDMONT	Turin, Alessandria.	ABRUZZO AND MOLISE	Chieti.
LIGURIA	Genoa, Spezia.	APULIA	Foggia, Bari, Brindisi, Taranto.
LOMBARDY	Milan, Pavia, Bergamo.	BASILICATA	Potenza.
VENETIA	Venice, Verona, Padua, Mantua.	CALABRIA	Reggio.
EMILIA	Bologna, Ferrara, Modena, Parma.	SICILY	Palermo, Messina, Catania, Marsala.
THE MARCHES	Ancona.	SARDINIA	Cagliari, Sassari.

ROME (population 250,000), now the capital of Italy, is situated on the river Tiber, a few miles above its mouth. It is famous for its matchless treasures of art, as well as its cathedral church of St. Peter, and is the residence of the Pope. The area included within modern Rome is marked by the walls of the ancient city, which are still standing; but great portions of the included space is a mere wilderness of ruin. The Coliseum, which is beyond the populated portion of the city, is the most imposing amongst the many magnificent works of ancient art which belong to Rome. *Civita Vecchia* is the port of Rome.

Florence, one of the most beautiful of Italian cities, is situated on the bank of the river Arno, and is distinguished for its collections of works of art. *Leghorn*, on the Mediterranean coast, is the chief seaport of Tuscany. *Pisa*, on the Arno, a short distance above its mouth, has a great name in mediæval history, and is famed for its leaning tower. The island of Elba lies off the coast of Tuscany.

Turin, on the river-Po, is the chief city of Piedmont, and, prior to 1864, the capital for a time of the Italian kingdom. *Alessandria* is a strongly fortified town, to the southward of Turin. *Genoa*, at the head of the gulf to which it gives name, is one of the most considerable of Italian seaports. *Spezia* is an important seaport and arsenal, to the south-east of Genoa. *Milan*, the chief city of northern Italy, lies in the heart of the Lombard plain, midway between the rivers Ticino and Adda,

and beside the stream of the Olona—all three tributaries of the Po. *Pavia*, on the Ticino, is to the southward of Milan.

Venice lies on the shore of the Adriatic, amidst extensive lagoons. Canals divide its different quarters, but the city itself is now accessible by the railway, which, crossing the lagoons, connects it with Milan and other places in northern Italy. *Verona* is an inland city, on the river Adige, and is an important fortress. *Mantua* is on the Mincio.

Bologna, a large city, lies in the plain to the eastward of the Apennines. *Ferrara* is near the right bank of the Po. *Parma* and *Modena* are also situated within the plains between the Apennines and the Po—the former on the banks of a river called by its name. *Ancona*, on the Adriatic coast, is a flourishing seaport. *Perugia* is an inland town.

Naples (population 450,000), situated on the shore of the beautiful bay of that name, is the largest city in Italy. Mount Vesuvius is only a few miles distant from it, to the south-eastward. The disinterred city of Pompeii, buried eighteen centuries since, under the ashes ejected from the mountain, is beside the shore of the bay. *Taranto* is near the head of the gulf which intervenes between the two extreme peninsulas of southern Italy. *Brindisi* is an important packet-station.

Palermo, the largest city of Sicily, is on the north coast of that island. *Messina* is at the north-eastern extremity of Sicily: *Marsala* at its opposite or western extremity. *Cagliari*, the chief city of Sardinia, is on the south-east coast of Sardinia.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Italy bounded?
- Name the gulfs, bays, and straits, which belong to the Italian coasts, and point them out upon the map.
- Where are Cape Spartivento, Cape di Leuca, the Lipari Islands, Elba, and Malta? Point to each on the map.
- To what nation does Malta belong? What is its chief town called?
- What mountains belong to Italy? Which among them are active volcanoes, and where are they situated?
- Name the chief rivers of Italy, and trace their courses on the map.
- Enumerate the principal lakes. Which of the number belong to the Alpine region?
- What kind of climate has Italy?
- Mention some of the chief productions of Italy in the vegetable and mineral kingdoms.
- What is the present population of Italy?
- For what articles of industrial produce is Italy chiefly noted? Which portion of the country is especially distinguished for its silk?
- Name the great divisions of Italy.
- Under what form of government is Italy in the present day?
- What city forms the capital of the Kingdom of Italy, and how is it situated?
- Name the chief towns, respectively, of Piedmont, Sardinia, Tuscany, and Emilia.
- Point to the following upon the map:—Venice, Genoa, Spezia, Leghorn, Civita Vecchia, and Ancona.
- On what rivers are Verona, Mantua, Turin, Florence, Pisa, and Rome?
- Where are the provinces of the Romagna and Umbria? What are the names of their chief cities?
- In what parts of Italy are Bologna, Ferrara, Taranto, and Brindisi?
- In what parts of Italy are Salerno, Messina, Catania, and Marsala?
- Where are Palermo, Cagliari, and Sassari?
- What cities of Italy are particularly distinguished for their works of art, and their remains of antiquity?

ITALY.

ITALY is a large country of southern Europe. The greater portion of it forms a peninsula, which advances far into the Mediterranean.

Boundaries.—Italy is bounded on the north by Austria and Switzerland; on the west by France; on the south-west and south by the Mediterranean Sea; on the east by the Adriatic Sea.

Italy is divided from France, Switzerland, and Austria by the Alps, and from Turkey and Greece by the Adriatic Sea.

Extent.—The total area of Italy, including the islands, is estimated at 110,000 square miles, or nearly twice that of England and Wales.

The greatest length is about 700 miles. The breadth varies from 350 miles in the north to between 80 and 140 in the centre, and less than 20 miles in the extreme south.

Coasts.—Very extensive, and includes a great number of good harbours. The principal capes, inlets, and straits are:—

1. **Capes.**—*Cape Spartivento*, the most southerly point of the Italian mainland; and *Cape Di Leuca* is the extreme south-east point.

2. **Inlets.**—The *Adriatic Sea* (the northerly part of which forms the Gulf of Venice), the *Gulf of Taranto*, the *Bay of Naples*, and the *Gulf of Genoa*—all of them arms of the Mediterranean.

3. **Straits.**—The *Strait of Otranto*, at the entrance of the Adriatic; the *Strait of Messina*,¹ between Italy and the island of Sicily; and the *Strait of Bonifacio*, between the islands of Sardinia and Corsica.

Islands.—The three large Italian islands are Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica. The smaller islands are Malta, Gozo, Comino, the Lipari Islands, Elba, Ischia,² and several others of less note lying near the western coast.

Sicily is the largest island in the Mediterranean. Its shape is triangular, and its surface is extremely uneven. The next in size is the mountainous island of **Sardinia**. **Corsica** belongs to France. The **Maltese Islands** have belonged to England since the year 1800. Malta is highly valued as a naval station. The chief town is *Valetta*.

Mountains.—The *Alps* encircle the north of Italy, dividing it from France, Switzerland, and Austria. The *Apennines* stretch, in a long chain, through the peninsular portion of Italy, branching off from the Alps near the head of the Gulf of Genoa.

All the higher portions of the *Alps* are covered with unmelting snow. *Mont Blanc*, which is the highest summit of the Alps, is on the border of Italy and France. The *Apennines* are much less elevated than the Alps. Their highest point is *Monte Corno*, or *Gran Sasso d'Italia*, "the great rock of Italy," in the Central or Neapolitan Apennines.

Volcanoes.—*Mount Vesuvius*, near the city of Naples, is an active volcano—the only one upon the European mainland. *Mount Etna*, in the island of Sicily, is also a volcano, and of much greater height. *Stromboli*, one of the Lipari Islands, is a volcano in constant activity.

Plains.—The plain of *Lombardy*, in the north of Italy, is

among the most fertile portions of the country. The coast plains, especially in the south, are also exceedingly fertile.

Rivers.—The principal are the *Po*, *Adige*, *Arno*, and *Tiber*.

The most considerable of these rivers is the *Po*, which, like the *Adige*, rises in the Alps and flows into the Adriatic Sea. The *Arno* and *Tiber* rise in the Apennines, and flow into the Mediterranean. The *Tiber* is, historically, the most famous river in Europe.

Lakes.—The principal Italian lakes are *Maggiore*, *Lugano*, *Como*, and *Garda*, situated among the southern valleys of the Alps; with *Perugia*, *Bolsena*, and *Bracciano*, in the middle portion of the peninsula. *Albano* and *Nemi* are small lakes near Rome.

Climate.—Italy, like all the countries that border on the Mediterranean, has a warm and generally healthy climate, and a rich and luxuriant vegetation.

Productions.—The vegetation of Italy has the *vine*, *olive*, *fig*, and *mulberry*, among its fruits; and crops of the finest *wheat* are raised. The Neapolitan territory, in the south of Italy, yields the chief supply of *sulphur* to Britain and other countries. The island of Elba furnishes *iron-ore*, which has been worked from the times of the Romans.

Inhabitants.—Italy has above 28,000,000 inhabitants. Lombardy, in the north, is more thickly populated than any other part of Italy, and is, indeed, one of the most populous portions of Europe.

1. **Race and Language.**—Although the modern Italians are a distinct people, they have descended from numerous and widely-different races. The Italian language is derived from the Latin.

2. **Religion and Education.**—In religion, the Italians are members of the Church of Rome. The higher classes are well educated; but the great majority of the people are almost entirely illiterate.

Industry.—The industrial produce of Italy is varied, and large in amount. Wheat, olive-oil, silk, straw plait, and wines, are its most important items.

Lombardy is especially distinguished for the culture of the mulberry, reared for the purpose of supplying the food of the silkworm. Piedmont and Tuscany are noted for their *olive-oil*; Tuscany also for its straw hats and plait. The *silks* and *velvets* of Italy rival those of France. The silk manufacture gives extensive employment in most of the towns in Lombardy, and also to a less extent in other parts of the country. Coarse woollen and linen goods are made, both in Lombardy and elsewhere, and supply the ordinary clothing of the peasantry. But the wealth of Italy consists principally in its raw produce; and the chief supply of manufactured articles, whether of luxury or necessity, is derived from abroad.

Government.—The kingdom of Italy is a constitutional monarchy, under an hereditary sovereign.

Prior to 1860, Italy was divided into several states (kingdoms, duchies, &c.) One of these was the kingdom of Sardinia, to which, in accordance with the national will, the people of the other states allied themselves; and the previous ruler of Sardinia has become, in virtue of subsequent events, the recognised sovereign over the whole country.

¹ In the Strait of Messina are the once-dreaded whirlpool *Charybdis* and the rock *Scylla*.
² Most destructive earthquake, March, 1881.

Divisions.—Before the year 1860, Italy was politically divided into nine distinct states. The public events of that year, however, resulted in the union of all these states—with the exception of the Venetian and Roman territories, the small republics of San Marino, and the principality of Monaco—under a single sovereignty. In 1866 the transfer of Venice, and in 1870 of Rome, completed the union of all Italy under a single ruler. Italy includes the following divisions and towns:—

Divisions.	Towns.	Divisions.	Towns.
ROMAN TERRITORY	Rome, Civita Vecchia.	UMBRIA	Perugia, Spoleto.
TUSCANY	Florence, Leghorn, Pisa.	CAMPANIA	Naples, Capua, Caserta, Salerno.
PIEDMONT	Turin, Alessandria.	ABRUZZO AND MOLISE	Chieti.
LIGURIA	Genoa, Spezia.	APULIA	Foggia, Bari, Brindisi, Taranto.
LOMBARDY	Milan, Pavia, Bergamo.	BASILICATA	Potenza.
VENETIA	Venice, Verona, Padua, Mantua.	CALABRIA	Reggio.
EMILIA	Bologna, Ferrara, Modena, Parma.	SICILY	Palermo, Messina, Catania, Marsala.
THE MARCHES	Ancona.	SARDINIA	Cagliari, Sassari.

ROME (population 250,000), now the capital of Italy, is situated on the river Tiber, a few miles above its mouth. It is famous for its matchless treasures of art, as well as its cathedral church of St. Peter, and is the residence of the Pope. The area included within modern Rome is marked by the walls of the ancient city, which are still standing; but great portions of the included space is a mere wilderness of ruin. The Coliseum, which is beyond the populated portion of the city, is the most imposing amongst the many magnificent works of ancient art which belong to Rome. *Civita Vecchia* is the port of Rome.

Florence, one of the most beautiful of Italian cities, is situated on the bank of the river Arno, and is distinguished for its collections of works of art. **Leghorn**, on the Mediterranean coast, is the chief seaport of Tuscany. **Pisa**, on the Arno, a short distance above its mouth, has a great name in mediæval history, and is famed for its leaning tower. The island of Elba lies off the coast of Tuscany.

Turin, on the river-Po, is the chief city of Piedmont, and, prior to 1864, the capital for a time of the Italian kingdom. **Alessandria** is a strongly fortified town, to the southward of Turin. **Genoa**, at the head of the gulf to which it gives name, is one of the most considerable of Italian seaports. **Spezia** is an important seaport and arsenal, to the south-east of Genoa. **Milan**, the chief city of northern Italy, lies in the heart of the Lombard plain, midway between the rivers Ticino and Adda,

and beside the stream of the Olona—all three tributaries of the Po. **Paria**, on the Ticino, is to the southward of Milan.

Venice lies on the shore of the Adriatic, amidst extensive lagoons. Canals divide its different quarters, but the city itself is now accessible by the railway, which, crossing the lagoons, connects it with Milan and other places in northern Italy. **Verona** is an inland city, on the river Adige, and is an important fortress. **Mantua** is on the Mincio.

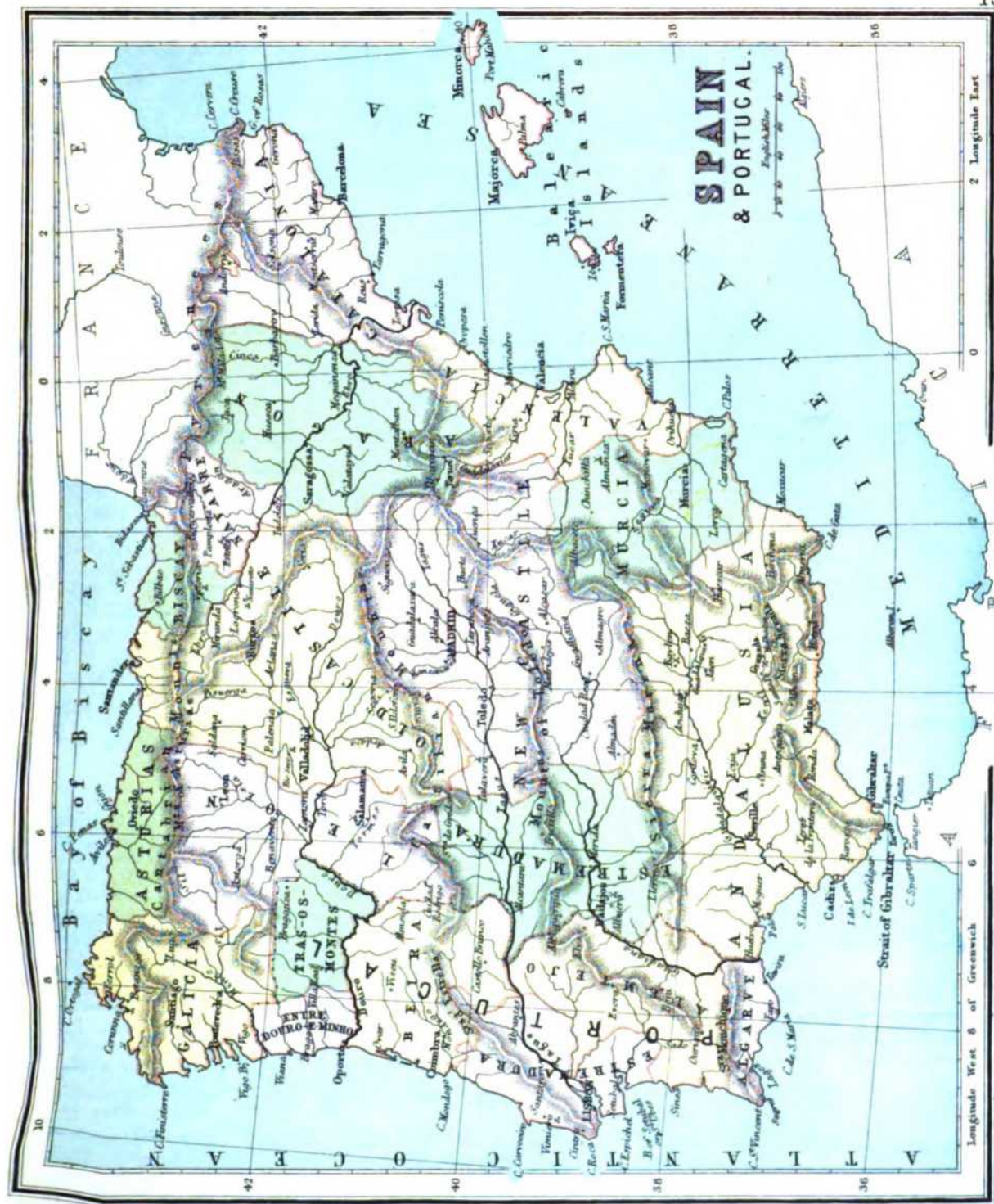
Bologna, a large city, lies in the plain to the eastward of the Apennines. **Ferrara** is near the right bank of the Po. **Parma** and **Modena** are also situated within the plains between the Apennines and the Po—the former on the banks of a river called by its name. **Ancona**, on the Adriatic coast, is a flourishing seaport. **Perugia** is an inland town.

Naples (population 450,000), situated on the shore of the beautiful bay of that name, is the largest city in Italy. Mount Vesuvius is only a few miles distant from it, to the south-eastward. The disinterred city of Pompeii, buried eighteen centuries since, under the ashes ejected from the mountain, is beside the shore of the bay. **Taranto** is near the head of the gulf which intervenes between the two extreme peninsulas of southern Italy. **Brindisi** is an important packet-station.

Palermo, the largest city of Sicily, is on the north coast of that island. **Messina** is at the north-eastern extremity of Sicily; **Marsala** at its opposite or western extremity. **Cagliari**, the chief city of Sardinia, is on the south-east coast of Sardinia.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Italy bounded?
- Name the gulfs, bays, and straits, which belong to the Italian coasts, and point them out upon the map.
- Where are Cape Spartivento, Cape di Leuca, the Lipari Islands, Elba, and Malta? Point to each on the map.
- To what nation does Malta belong? What is its chief town called?
- What mountains belong to Italy? Which among them are active volcanoes, and where are they situated?
- Name the chief rivers of Italy, and trace their courses on the map.
- Enumerate the principal lakes. Which of the number belong to the Alpine region?
- What kind of climate has Italy?
- Mention some of the chief productions of Italy in the vegetable and mineral kingdoms.
- What is the present population of Italy?
- For what articles of industrial produce is Italy chiefly noted? Which portion of the country is especially distinguished for its silk?
- Name the great divisions of Italy.
- Under what form of government is Italy in the present day?
- What city forms the capital of the Kingdom of Italy, and how is it situated?
- Name the chief towns, respectively, of Piedmont, Sardinia, Tuscany, and Emilia.
- Point to the following upon the map:—Venice, Genoa, Spezia, Leghorn, Civita Vecchia, and Ancona.
- On what rivers are Verona, Mantua, Turin, Florence, Pisa, and Rome?
- Where are the provinces of the Romagna and Umbria? What are the names of their chief cities?
- In what parts of Italy are Bologna, Ferrara, Taranto, and Brindisi?
- In what parts of Italy are Salerno, Messina, Catania, and Marsala?
- Where are Palermo, Cagliari, and Sassari?
- What cities of Italy are particularly distinguished for their works of art, and their remains of antiquity?



SPAIN.

SPAIN is an extensive country in the south-west of Europe. It includes the greater part of a peninsula which lies between the Mediterranean Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, and the Bay of Biscay. The western and smaller portion of this peninsula forms the kingdom of Portugal.

Boundaries.—Spain is bounded on the north by France and the Bay of Biscay; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean and the kingdom of Portugal; on the south-west by the Atlantic; on the south and east by the Mediterranean Sea.

Extent.—Spain is above three times larger than England and Wales, and nearly as large as France—its area being nearly 200,000 square miles.

Coasts.—The coast-line of Spain is 1,300 miles in length, of which 600 miles are formed by the Atlantic, and 700 miles by the Mediterranean. It is, however, much less varied than the coasts of Italy or Greece, and the Spanish peninsula has a more solid shape than belongs to either of these countries. The *Strait of Gibraltar*, which connects the Atlantic with the Mediterranean, washes the extreme southern coast of Spain.

Capes.—The principal are:—*Cape Ortegal*, the north-west point of Spain; *Cape Finisterre*, on the west coast; *Cape Trafalgar*, on the south-west coast; *Cape Tarifa*, the southernmost point of Spain, and of Europe; *Cape Creuse*, the eastern extremity of the Pyrenees.

Islands.—The *Balearic Islands*, in the Mediterranean, and the *Canaries*, in the Atlantic Ocean, off the coast of Africa, belong to Spain.

The *Balearic Islands* are five in number, viz., Majorca, Minorca, Ibiza, Formentera, and Cabrera. The *Canary Islands* are situated in the Atlantic Ocean, about 60 miles off the west coast of Africa.

Natural Features.—The interior of Spain is a high tableland. The whole peninsula is crossed by mountain-chains, which have the general direction of east and west. These chains are—

1. The *Pyrenees*, on the borders of France and Spain.
2. The *Cantabrian Mountains*, extending west from the Pyrenees to *Capes Ortegal* and *Finisterre*.
3. The *Castilian Mountains*, *Mountains of Toledo*, and *Sierra Morena*, stretching across the interior of Spain.
4. *Sierra Nevada*, in the south, along the Mediterranean coast.

Rivers.—The chief rivers are the *Minho*, *Douro*, *Tagus*, *Guadiana*, and *Guadalquivir*, all of which flow west into the Atlantic; the *Ebro*, *Xucar*, and *Segura*, which flow east into the Mediterranean.

*• The *Douro*, *Tagus*, and *Guadiana*, have their lower courses through the kingdom of Portugal. The *Tagus* is the longest river of the peninsula. The *Guadiana*, at a distance of 10 miles, disappears, and for 14 miles flows underground, re-emerging in the two small lakes called *Los Djos de Guadiana*. The current of the *Ebro* is rapid, and its navigation consequently difficult.

Climate.—The climate of Spain exhibits great varieties.

The north is temperate: the middle parts are liable to great extremes of heat and cold—parched in summer by intense heat, and piercing cold in winter: the south and south-east are hot, like southern Europe in general.

Productions.—The natural productions of Spain are rich and varied.

1. The vegetation is equally various as the climate. In the north, upon the shores of the Bay of Biscay, the fruits common to the south of England flourish. In the south and south-east, along the Mediterranean coasts, the foliage is evergreen, and the fruits are such as belong to southern lands. The *orange*, *lemon*, *citron*, and *fig*, are here abundant; the *sugar-cane* thrives, and the rich foliage of the *banana* and other tropical fruits is seen beside the groves of *myrtle*, *oleander*, and *Indian fig*.

2. The mineral wealth of Spain is very great. The *quicksilver* mines of *Almaden* (on the north slope of the *Sierra Morena*) are among the richest in the world. The *lead* mines are also of great value. *Silver*, *iron*, *copper*, *zinc*, and *tin* occur in various parts of Spain, and valuable *marbles* and *building stones* abound.

Inhabitants.—Spain is one of the least populous among European countries. Its population amounts to 16,600,000, an average of 85 persons to the square mile.

Race and Language.—The Spaniards are the descendants of the old Iberians, largely mixed, however, with other races. The Spanish language is of Latin origin. The *Basques* of the north are the descendants of the aboriginal Iberians, and still speak the old Celtic language.

Religion and Education.—The Spanish people are nearly all followers of the Church of Rome. Public education is very backward.

Industry.—The pursuits of industry are not generally in a flourishing state. Indeed the whole country exhibits, in nearly every respect, a great decline from its condition at a former period.

Agriculture is less an object of national pursuit than the rearing of *sheep*—vast numbers of which are reared on the interior plains. The *silk* manufacture is pursued, principally at *Valencia*. The chief articles of produce which Spain supplies are *wines*, *fruits* (raisins, oranges, figs, &c.), *wool*, *salt*, *barilla*, *quicksilver*, *lead*, and *cobalt*; with *leather*, *olive-oil*, and *cork*. The foreign trade carried on with France and England is considerable. The *sherry wines* so largely consumed in the latter country are the produce of the south-west of Spain, in the vicinity of *Cadiz*.

Government.—Spain is at present a kingdom: the long period of misgovernment under which the country has laboured, until within a recent time, has injured its resources and retarded its progress.

Divisions and Towns.—Spain is now divided into forty-nine provinces. But the older division into thirteen provinces—some of them formerly separate kingdoms—is more generally followed; and (as in the case of France) the names of these provinces are inseparably mixed up with the historic records of the country.

The thirteen older provinces of Spain, with the chief towns in each, are as follows :—

Provinces.	Towns.	Provinces.	Towns.
NEW CASTILE	Madrid, Toledo, Ciudad-Real.	VALENCIA	Valencia, Alicant.
OLD CASTILE	Burgos, Santander. [Rodrigo.	CATALONIA	Barcelona, Tarragona.
LEON	Valladolid, Salamanca, Ciudad-	ARAGON	Saragossa.
ESTREMADURA	Badajos.	NAVARRA	Pamplona.
ANDALUSIA	Seville, Malaga, Granada, Cordova,	BISCAY	Bilbao, St. Sebastian.
	Cadiz, Xeres, San Lucar.	ASTURIAS	Oviedo.
MURCIA	Murcia, Cartagena.	GALICIA	Corunna, Santiago, Ferrol, Vigo.

MADRID (population, 475,000), the capital of Spain, lies in the centre of the kingdom, upon the little stream of the Manzanares, a tributary of the Tagus, in the midst of an arid plain, which is upwards of 2,000 feet above the level of the sea.¹ Toledo, an ancient city to the south-west of Madrid, is on the Tagus. Talavera, also on the Tagus, lower down its stream, is famous for the victory gained in 1809 by the British over the French army. Burgos, the capital of Old Castile, is on the Arlanzon, one of the small tributaries of the Douro. Santander is a port on the Bay of Biscay. Valladolid, the chief city of Leon, and the former capital of the Spanish monarchy, is in the valley of the Douro. Seville, now chiefly noted for its extensive trade in oranges, stands beside the river Guadalquivir. At the mouth of that stream is San Lucar, the port whence (in 1519) Magellan sailed on the first voyage of circumnavigation round the globe. Palos, a small port to the westward, is yet more noteworthy in the annals of discovery: Columbus sailed thence (in 1492) on the great voyage in which he discovered the New World. Cadiz, one of the chief seaports of Spain, is on an island which immediately adjoins the Spanish coast. The town of Xeres (whence the name of sherry is derived) is in the midst of the wine district, to the north-east of Cadiz. Cordova, greatly decayed from its former splendour, is on the Guadalquivir. Granada stands in a beautiful plain at the northern foot of the Sierra Nevada. Malaga is a flourishing port on the southern coast. The town of Murcia is on the river Segura, on the eastern side of the kingdom: Cartagena is on the coast of the same province. Alicant, also on the Mediterranean coast, is to the northward. Valencia, still further north, is a short distance

inland: it has flourishing silk manufactures and extensive trade. Barcelona, situated on the coast of Catalonia, commands the Mediterranean trade of Spain. Saragossa, the chief city of Aragon, on the river Ebro, is noteworthy for its memorable sieges in 1808-9, during the Peninsular War. Santiago, the chief city of Galicia, like many other of the cities of Spain, has greatly decayed from its former importance. Corunna and Ferrol, at the opposite extremities of an extensive bay, and Vigo, on a fine bay further south, are important seaports.

Colonies.—Spain possesses the following foreign dependencies—a mere fragment of those which, until within the last half-century, owned her sway :—

1. *In the West Indies*:—Cuba and Porto Rico.
2. *In the East Indies*:—The Philippine Islands.
3. *On the North coast of Africa*:—Ceuta, opposite to Gibraltar.

*. The Canary Islands, off the west coast of Africa, are considered as an integral portion of the kingdom.

Gibraltar, in the extreme south of Spain, is a possession of the British Crown. It was captured by an English squadron in 1704, and has ever since remained a British possession.

The town of Gibraltar occupies the western declivity and base of a lofty rock, which advances a length of four miles into the sea, and terminates to the southward in Europa Point. A narrow and sandy isthmus connects this rock with the mainland of Spain. The natural strength of Gibraltar is increased by extensive fortifications, and its position at the entrance of the Mediterranean renders it of great importance as a naval station.

¹ The royal palace of the Escorial, built by Philip II., is to the north-west of the capital, at the foot of the Mountains of Castile.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. How is Spain bounded; and what is its size as compared with that of England and Wales?
2. In what particular does the coast-line of Spain differ from that of the Italian or the Grecian peninsulas?
3. Name the principal capes of Spain. Point to them on the map.
4. What is and in the Mediterranean Sea belong to Spain? Which is the largest among them?
5. Name the mountain-chains by which Spain is crossed from east to west. Which of them are highest?
6. What kind of country (as to physical features) does the interior of the Spanish peninsula form?
7. Enumerate the principal rivers of Spain. Which among them flow into the Atlantic, and which into the Mediterranean?
8. By what is the climate of Spain chiefly characterised?
9. What productions of the vegetable kingdom belong to the southern and eastern shores of Spain?
10. What minerals does Spain possess? Which among them is furnished by the mines of Almaden, and where is that place?
11. What branches of industry chiefly distinguish Spain?
12. Name the thirteen provinces into which Spain is historically divided.
13. Which of these provinces is most to the southward? Which in the north-west angle of the peninsula? Which in the north-east? Which two in the central parts of the kingdom?
14. In which of the provinces are the following towns,—Madrid, Burgos, Valladolid, Seville, Cadiz, Cartagena, and Alicant?
15. In which provinces are Saragossa, Corunna, and Santiago?
16. Upon what rivers are the following towns situated,—Madrid, Toledo, Cordova, Saragossa, and Granada?
17. Upon what portions of the Spanish coasts are Cadiz, Malaga, Cartagena, St. Sebastian, Ferrol, and Vigo?
18. For what is Saragossa historically noteworthy?
19. By what events have the ports of Palos and San Lucar been distinguished? In what part of Spain are they situated?
20. What foreign possessions belong to Spain?
21. In what part of Spain is Gibraltar? What are the peculiarities of its situation (as to natural features), and to what nation does it belong?

PORTUGAL.

PORTUGAL is a small country in the south-west of Europe. It lies on the western side of the Spanish continent, and is thus the most westerly portion of continental Europe.

Boundaries.—Portugal is bounded on the *north* and the *east* by Spain; and on the *south* and the *west* by the Atlantic.

Extent.—Portugal has an area of 36,000 square miles, or nearly three-fifths that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The coast-line of Portugal belongs wholly to the Atlantic, and is remarkably regular and unbroken.

1. **Capes.**—The principal are *Cape Roca*, the most westerly point of the European continent, and *Cape St. Vincent*, its south-western point.

2. **Inlets.**—The *Bay of Lisbon* and the *Bay of Setubal*.

Mountains.—The high grounds of Portugal are extensions of the Spanish mountain-chains. The highest are the *Sierra d'Estrella*, to the northward of the Tagus.

Rivers.—The principal rivers of Portugal are the *Minho*, *Douro*, *Mondego*, *Tagus*, and *Guadiana*, all flowing into the Atlantic.

Only one of the number—the *Mondego*—is wholly Portuguese. The four others have the larger portion of their courses in Spain.

Climate.—The climate of Portugal is warm and equable. Lisbon, its capital, exhibits remarkably little variation of temperature throughout the year.

Productions.—The natural productions resemble those of the south and south-east coasts of Spain.

The *vine* and the *olive*, the *orange*, *lemon*, *citron*, *almond*, and *fig*, the *myrtle* and the *cork-tree*, abound. The mineral resources of the country comprehend *copper*, *lead*, and numerous other metals; very few of them, however, are worked.

Inhabitants.—The population of Portugal is about 4,800,000, exclusive of the colonies.

1. **Race and Language.**—The Portuguese are of the same origin as the Spaniards, and speak a dialect of the same language.

2. **Education and Religion.**—Public education is in a very backward state. The Roman Catholic religion is almost uniformly followed.

Industry.—Industry is in a backward condition.

The most important article of produce is *port wine*, and the foreign trade consists in the export of wine, with *lemons*, *almonds*, and other *fruits*. The valley of the Douro, above Oporto, constitutes the wine district. The chief ports are Lisbon and Oporto.

Government.—The kingdom of Portugal is an hereditary and limited monarchy.

Divisions and Towns.—Portugal includes the following:—

Provinces.	Towns.	Provinces.	Towns.
ESTREMADURA	Lisbon, Setubal.	TRAZ OS MONTES	Villa Real.
ALENTEJO . .	Evora, Elvas.	ENTRE DOURO E	Oporto, Braga.
BEIRA ALTA .	Coimbra.	MINHO . . .	Faro, Tavira.
BEIRA BAIXA .	Castello Branco.	ALGARVE . . .	

LISBON and Oporto are the only two considerable cities of Portugal. Lisbon (population, 280,000), at the mouth of the river Tagus, is the capital, and Oporto, near the mouth of the Douro, is the seat of the wine trade.

* * The Azores and Madeira Islands are also considered parts of the home country, and are directly represented by deputies in the Portuguese Parliament.

1. The **Azores** are situated in the Atlantic Ocean, 800 miles west of the coast of Portugal. They consist of a group of nine islands, the largest of which are St. Michael and Terceira. The island of St. Michael furnishes great numbers of oranges, which (with some corn) are the chief articles of export. *Angra*, on Terceira, is the capital; but *Ponte Delgada*, on St. Michael, is commercially more important.

2. **Madeira** is a beautiful and fertile island, off the west coast of Africa. The climate of Madeira is particularly celebrated, and the vegetation is rich and luxuriant. The chief town of the island is *Funchal*, on the south coast. The small island of Porto Santo, to the eastward of Madeira, also belongs to Portugal.

Colonies.—The foreign possessions of Portugal comprehend the *Cape Verde Islands*; *Angola* and *Benguela*, on the west coast of Africa, with *St. Thomas* and *Prince's Islands* (in the Gulf of Guinea); *Mozambique* and other territories on the east side of the African continent; together with *Goa* (on the coast of India), *Macao* (in China), and part of the island of *Timor*, in the East Indies.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Portugal bounded? What is its size as compared with that of England and Wales?
- Name the chief capes and inlets.
- Which are the highest of the Portuguese mountains?
- Name the rivers of Portugal. Which of the number has its course entirely within the country?
- What kind of climate has Portugal? What fruits are among its productions?
- What is the population of Portugal?

- What branch of industry is most important in Portugal? In what does its foreign trade chiefly consist?
- Under what form of government is Portugal? What religion is almost uniformly followed?
- In which of the provinces of Portugal are Lisbon and Oporto respectively situated? On what rivers are they?
- Where are Coimbra and Setubal? What article of commerce does Setubal furnish?
- State what you know of the Azores and Madeira.
- What foreign possessions belong to Portugal?

ASIA.

ASIA is largest among the divisions of the globe, and is the most eastwardly of the three continents which constitute the Old World. The continent falls entirely within the northern hemisphere.*

Boundaries.—Asia is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the east by the Pacific Ocean; on the south by the Indian Ocean; on the west by the Red Sea, the Mediterranean Sea, the Black Sea, Mount Caucasus, the Caspian Sea, the river Ural, and the Ural Mountains.

Extent.—Asia measures more than 5,000 miles across in the direction of east and west, and about 4,000 miles in its average dimensions from north to south.

Its area is 17,500,000 square miles, so that it is nearly five times larger than Europe. Asia thus embraces more than a third part of all the land, or a twelfth part of the entire surface of the globe.

Coasts.—Less irregular than those of Europe. Total length of coast line, 35,000 miles; about 1 mile of coast to every 500 square miles of area.

1. Inlets.—The principal are:—

- (1) The Arctic Ocean, on the north, has the *Gulf of Obi*, and the *Gulf of Yenesei*.
- (2) The Pacific Ocean, on the east, has the *Sea of Kamchatka*, the *Sea of Okhotsk*, the *Japan Sea*, the *Yellow Sea*, and the *China Sea*.
- (3) The Indian Ocean, on the south, divides into the *Bay of Bengal* and the *Arabian Sea*. The *Red Sea* and the *Persian Gulf* are also arms of the Indian Ocean.

2. Straits.—The most important straits of Asia are:—

- (1) *Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb*, forming the entrance to the Red Sea.
 - (2) *Strait of Ormuz*, forming the entrance to the Persian Gulf.
 - (3) *Strait of Malacca*, forming one entrance to the China Sea.
 - (4) *Strait of Sundra*, forming another entrance to the China Sea.
 - (5) *Behring Strait*, between Asia and North America.
- Besides these there are the *Dardanelles*, and the *Channel of Constantinople*, which are European as well as Asiatic; the *Gulf of Aden*, between the Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb and the Indian Ocean; and the *Gulf of Oman*, leading to the Strait of Ormuz.

3. Capes.—The principal capes are:—

- (1) The *North Cape* of Asia, the most northerly point of the continent.
- (2) *Cape Romania*, the most southerly point.
- (3) *East Cape*, the most easterly point.
- (4) *Cape Baba*, in Asia Minor, the most westerly point.

Peninsulas.—The following peninsulas belong to Asia:—

Kamchatka, *Corea*, the *Indo-Chinese Peninsula with Malaya*, *India proper*, *Arabia*, and *Asia Minor*.

Isthmuses.—The two principal are:—

- (1) *Isthmus of Suez*, which unites Asia to Africa.
- (2) *Isthmus of Kra*, joining the Malay peninsula to the mainland.

Islands.—Numerous and important. The principal are:—

- (1) In the Arctic Ocean:—The *Liakhov* and *Bear Islands*.
- (2) In the Pacific Ocean:—The *Aleutian Islands*; *Kurile Islands*; *Sogation*; the *Japanese Islands* (*Jesso*, *Nippon*, *Sikok*, and *Kiusiu*); *Loo-Choo Islands*, a group midway between *Kiusiu* and *Formosa*; *Hainan*; and the *Malay Archipelago*, which embraces the *Philippine Islands*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, *Java*, and *Celebes*, with the *Moluccas*, and the *Lesser Sundra Islands*.

(3) In the Indian Ocean:—*Ceylon*; the *Andaman* and *Nicobar Islands*, in the Bay of Bengal; and the *Laccadive* and *Maldiv Islands*, off the south-western coast of India.

(4) In the Mediterranean Sea:—*Cyprus* (in the Levant), with *Rhodes*, *Chos*, *Samo*, *Mytilene*, and other islands of the Archipelago.

Natural Features.—The mountains of Asia are the highest in the World; but they are, notwithstanding, of inferior importance to its vast and elevated masses of tableland. The mountain-chains of Asia generally form the outer borders of these interior plateaus.

1. Tablelands.—The principal tablelands, or highlands, of Asia are:—1. Tibet; 2. Mongolia; 3. Afghanistan; 4. Iran, or Persia; 5. Armenia; 6. Asia Minor; 7. The Deccan, (India); 8. Arabia.

*. These regions are of various heights, ranging between 2,500 and 16,000 feet. The most elevated of them is Tibet, the plains of which are 16,000 feet (or upwards of three miles) above the sea. Tibet is, hence, comparatively to its latitude, a cold country.

2. Mountains.—The principal mountain-chains are:—

- (1) *Himalaya Mountains*, between India and Tibet.
- (2) *Hindu-Kush*, between Afghanistan and Turkestan.
- (3) *Altai Mountains*, between Mongolia and Siberia.
- (4) *Kuen-luen*, between Tibet and Chinese Turkestan.
- (5) *Thian-shan*, through Chinese Turkestan and Mongolia.
- (6) *Mountains of Armenia*, on the plateau of Armenia.
- (7) *Mount Taurus*, in Asia Minor.
- (8) *Mountains of Lebanon*, on the east coast of Syria.
- (9) The *Ghats*, on the eastern and western coasts of India.

*. The highest of these chains is the *Himalaya*, all the upper portions of which rise above the line of perpetual snow. The most elevated of the Himalaya peaks is *Mount Everest*, which reaches 29,000 feet above the sea, and is the highest known mountain on the globe. This is nearly double the altitude of *Mont Blanc*, the highest of the Alps.

3. Plains.—The chief plains are as follow:—

- (1) The *Plain of Siberia*, occupying all the north of Asia.
- (2) The *Plain of Turkestan*, extending south and east of Lake Aral.
- (3) The *Plain of China*, in the N.E. of China, along the Yellow Sea.
- (4) The *Plain of Tonquin*, in the N. of Anam, along the Gulf of Tonquin.
- (5) The *Plain of Siam*, at the head of the Gulf of Siam.
- (6) The *Plain of Pegu*, in Farther India, to the south of Burmah.
- (7) The *Plain of Hindustan*, the northerly portion of India proper.
- (8) The *Plain of Mesopotamia* and *Babylonia*, in Asiatic Turkey.

4. Deserts.—Asia contains some extensive deserts, viz:—

- (1) *Desert of Gobi* or *Shamo*, in Mongolia (Chinese Empire).
- (2) *Indian Desert*, in India, between the Indus and Ganges.
- (3) *Deserts of Scistan* and *Makran*, to the south-west of Afghanistan.
- (4) *Great Salt Desert* (*Dasht-i-kavir*), in Persia.
- (5) *Desert of Mesopotamia*, between the Tigris and the Euphrates.
- (6) *Syrian Desert*, in the east of Syria, Asiatic Turkey.
- (7) *Desert of Arabia*, in the interior of Arabia.

* Some of the islands of Asia extend south of the equator.

* The northern part of the Japan Sea is called the *Gulf of Tartary*.

5. Rivers.—The principal rivers of Asia are :—

- (1) **Flowing into the Arctic Ocean :** the *Obi*, *Yenesai*, and *Lena*.
- (2) **Flowing into the Pacific Ocean :** the *Amur*, *Hoang-ho*, *Yang-tze-kiang*, *Choo-kiang* or *Canton river*, *Mekon*, and *Menam*.
- (3) **Flowing into the Indian Ocean :** the *Saluen*, *Irawaddy*, *Brahmaputra*, *Ganges*, *Mahanuddy*, *Godavery*, *Krishna*, *Cauvery*, and *Tapti* ; the *Nerbudda*, *Indus*, *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*.
- (4) **Flowing into the Caspian :** the *Kur*.
- (5) **Flowing into the Sea of Aral :** the *Amu*, and the *Syr*.
- (6) **Flowing into the Black Sea :** the *Kizil-Irmak* and the *Rion*.
- (7) **Inland Rivers**, of which the principal are the *Helmund*, the *Jordan*, and the *Tarim* or *Eryghu*.

*. The longest river in Asia (and the longest in the Old World) is the *Yang-tze-kiang*, in China, which has a course of more than 3000 miles. The great rivers of Siberia—*Obi*, *Yenesai*, and *Lena*—come next in length, but they flow through a cold and barren region. The three chief rivers of India—the *Indus*, *Ganges*, and *Brahmaputra*—are among streams of the highest importance. The *Euphrates* and the *Tigris* are also important rivers.

6. Lakes.—The principal lakes of Asia are as follow :—

Aral	Turkestan.	Tong-ting	China.
Baikal	Siberia.	Poyang	Do.
Balkash	Do.	Hamum	Persia.
Zaisang	Mongolia.	Urumiya	Do.
Oubsa	Do.	Van	Turkish Armenia.
Lop-nor	Do.	Goukcha, or Sevan	Russian Armenia.
Koko-nor	Do.	Koj-hissar	Asia Minor.
Tengri-nor	Tibet.	Dead Sea	Syria.
Bouka-nor	Do.	Galilee, or Tiberias	Do.
Palte	Do.		

*. The two largest lakes of Asia (if we except the Caspian Sea, which is partly European) are *Aral* and *Baikal*. *Lake Aral* is so large as to be sometimes called a sea, and, like the Caspian, consists of salt water. *Lake Baikal* is the largest fresh-water lake in the Old World.

Climate.—Asia comprehends a greater variety of climates than any other division of the globe. This results from its vast extent of land, and its great range of latitude.

1. The extreme south of the Asiatic continent nearly touches the equator, and its northernmost portions are within 12 degrees of the pole. Hence there are experienced, within different portions of its vast extent, every variety of temperature, from the burning heat of the tropics to the intensest cold of the frigid zone.

2. In general, the eastern parts of Asia are colder than the western, and they have greater extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons ; that is, they have hotter summers and colder winters. Similar extremes distinguish the high plains of Central Asia.

3. The quantity of rain that falls in most parts of Southern Asia is very great—vastly greater than is the case in any part of Europe. But it falls at particular seasons only, and within a brief space of time.

4. Three natural divisions, in respect of climate, may be marked out upon the map of Asia—(1.) A southern belt of countries, in which the air is hot and moist ; (2.) A middle belt, which is generally cold and dry, but with great extremes of summer and winter temperature ; (3.) A northerly zone, which is a region of intense and prolonged cold.

Productions.—The productions are varied and important.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—Asia furnishes some of the most valued productions of the mineral kingdom, including the diamond and other gems, and the precious metals :—

Gold is found in Siberia (Ural and Altai mountains), Indo-Chinese countries, China, and Japan. *Silver* and *lead* in Siberia and China. *Iron* and *copper* in southern and western Asia in general. *Tin*, in the island of Banca (East Indies). *Coal*, in India, China, Burmah, Labuan Island (near Borneo), Asia Minor, Syria.

2. **Vegetation.**—Many of the food-plants most extensively used were originally derived from this quarter of the globe.

(1) *Rice*, and probably *wheat*, among the cereals ; the *date*, *fig*, *vine*, *plum*, *cherry*, *peach*, *apple*, *pomegranate*, *olive*, *mulberry*, *lime*, *walnut*, *almond*, *cocoa-nut*, *orange*, *lemon*, *citron*, and *banana*, amongst fruits—together with the *tea-plant* and various *spices*—are all native to the soil of Asia. The *sugar-cane*, *indigo*, *cotton*, and *hemp* plants are also natives of Asia. There are, besides, an immense variety of forest trees, as the *teak*, *ebony*, *iron-wood*, *sandal-wood*, *rosewood*, *cedar*, and many other valuable woods, besides abundant varieties of the *oak*, *birch*, *cypress*, and others.

(2) *Rice* is the chief food-plant of southern Asia, and is the prime support of life to the immense population of China and India. The fruit of the *date-palm* supplies a like place to the people of Arabia and other parts of south-western Asia. The *cocoa-nut* palm is characteristic of the islands of southern and south-eastern Asia, with the shores of the two Indian peninsulas. The *tea-plant* is a native of China and Japan, and scarcely reaches beyond their limits. The high plateaux of central Asia are distinguished chiefly by the abundance of their grasses ; boundless pastures stretch through the whole middle belt of Asia, from the shores of the Caspian to the banks of the river Amoor.

3. **Animals.**—Among domesticated quadrupeds belonging to Asia are the *camel*, the *elephant*, the *horse*, and the *ox*. Among carnivorous quadrupeds, the *lion*, *tiger*, *leopard*, *hyena*, *wolf*, and *jackal*.

(1) The *camel* ranges from the coasts of the Red Sea to the extremity of the Gobi and the shores of Lake Baikal. The *elephant* belongs to the warm and watered regions in the south-east of the continent, including the two Indian peninsulas and the island of Ceylon. Animals belonging to the ox tribe, and also *antelopes*, are particularly numerous.

(2) The range of the *lion* is now restricted to the countries lying between the Euphrates and the Indian desert. The *tiger* frequents the woods and jungles through all southern and south-eastern Asia. The *hyena* and *jackal* belong chiefly to western Asia : the *wolf* to the colder districts of the north and west. Numerous fur-bearing animals are native to the extreme north of Asia—among them the *bear*, *glutton*, *badger*, *wolf*, *fox*, *lynx*, *pole-cat*, *weasel*, *ermine*, *marten*, *otter*, and *sable*.

Inhabitants.—The population of Asia comprehends at least half the human race, and probably numbers about 830,000,000. China alone is said to contain more than 300,000,000 of people, and India has upwards of 250,000,000.

The Chinese, the Indo-Chinese, and the Mongolian tribes belong to what is called the Mongol variety of the human race. They have a yellowish-brown (or olive) complexion ; a broad and flattened face, with obliquely-set and deeply-sunk eyes (the inner corner slanting down towards the nose) ; lank and black hair, with little beard ; a broad, square, and thick-set frame, with a stature considerably below that of Europeans. The Malays, who inhabit the Malay peninsula and the islands of the East Indian Archipelago, belong to a distinct stock of nations.

Divisions.—Asia is divided into the following countries :—

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Turkey in Asia. | 5. Afghanistan. | 9. Turkestan. |
| 2. Arabia. | 6. India. | 10. Asiatic Russia. |
| 3. Persia. | 7. Further India. | 11. Malay Archipelago. |
| 4. Beluchistan. | 8. Chinese Empire. | 12. Japan. |

*. By far the larger portion of Asia is held by three powers, two of which are European. The *Russian* dominions embrace the whole of the northern part of the continent, a large portion of Central Asia, and the Caucasus. Under *British* control, direct or indirect, is the vast peninsula of India. The *Chinese* Empire comprises China Proper and the adjacent regions.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

I.

1. In what position is Asia with respect to the other divisions of the Old World?
2. By what oceans is Asia bounded on the north, east, and south?
3. What are the dimensions of Asia in the direction of east and west, and also in that of north and south?
4. How many square miles of surface does Asia embrace? What proportion does this bear to the whole extent of the land upon the globe?
5. What characterises the coast-line of Asia, as compared with that of Euro, e?
6. What two gulfs does the Arctic Ocean, on the north of Asia, form? Point them out upon the map.
7. What seas occur on the east side of Asia? Of what ocean do they form portions?
8. What two great arms has the Indian Ocean, to the south of Asia?
9. What two inland seas belong to Asia? Which is the larger of the two?
10. Point on the map to the following:—the Gulf of Obi, the Sea of Okhotsk, the Gulf of Tartary, the China Sea, and the Bay of Bengal.
11. Name the five principal straits of Asia, and point to their places on the map.
12. What strait forms the entrance to the Red Sea? What to the Persian Gulf?
13. What two straits lead from the Indian Ocean into the China Sea?
14. What strait divides Asia from North America?
15. Where are the channels called the Gulf of Aden and the Gulf of Oman? Point them out upon the map.

II.

1. Name the principal capes of Asia, and find out their places on the map.
2. How near does the most northerly cape of Asia approach to the pole?
3. Which is the most southerly point of Asia, and how near is it to the equator?
4. Asia has six considerable peninsulas. Name them, pointing to their places on the map.
5. Which two of the Asiatic peninsulas are on the east side of Asia?
6. Which three peninsulas are in the south of Asia?
7. What peninsula is in the west of Asia? By what seas is it washed on the north and south?
8. What smaller peninsula forms the southwardly portion of Further India?
9. What isthmus joins Asia to Africa? How many miles is it across?
10. What isthmus joins the Malay peninsula to the mainland?
11. What group of islands is situated to the north of Asia? In what ocean are they?
12. What islands lie off the east coasts of Asia?
13. Of what archipelago do the Philippine Islands form a portion?
14. What islands (besides the Philippines) are included within the Malay Archipelago? Which is largest amongst them?
15. What islands are to the southward of Asia, in the Indian Ocean? Which is the largest of the number?
16. What islands are to the west of Asia? In what sea are they situated?
17. Point out on the map to the following:—Japan, the Kurile Islands, Formosa, Sumatra, Ceylon, the Andaman Islands, the Maldivé Islands, and Cyprus.

III.

1. What is meant by a table-land or plateau?
2. How many principal table-lands are there in Asia? Name them.
3. Point on the map to the table-lands of Tibet and Mongolia. What is their situation with respect to the rest of the Asiatic continent?
4. Point in succession, to the plateaus of Afghanistan, Persia, Armenia, and Asia Minor.
5. Where is the region called the Deccan? Point it out upon the map.
6. Which of the table-lands of Asia is most elevated? What height does it reach?
7. Name the principal mountain-systems of Asia.
8. Point out the following upon the map—the Himalaya, Altai, Taurus, Ghauts, Hindu-Kush, and Mountains of Lebanon.
9. Which is highest among the mountain-systems of Asia? What is the name of its loftiest summit?
10. What proportion does the altitude of the highest peak of the Himalaya bear to that of Mont Blanc, in the Alps?
11. How many lowland-plains does Asia comprehend? Name them, pointing to each upon the map.
12. Name the deserts of Asia, and point to them on the map.

IV.

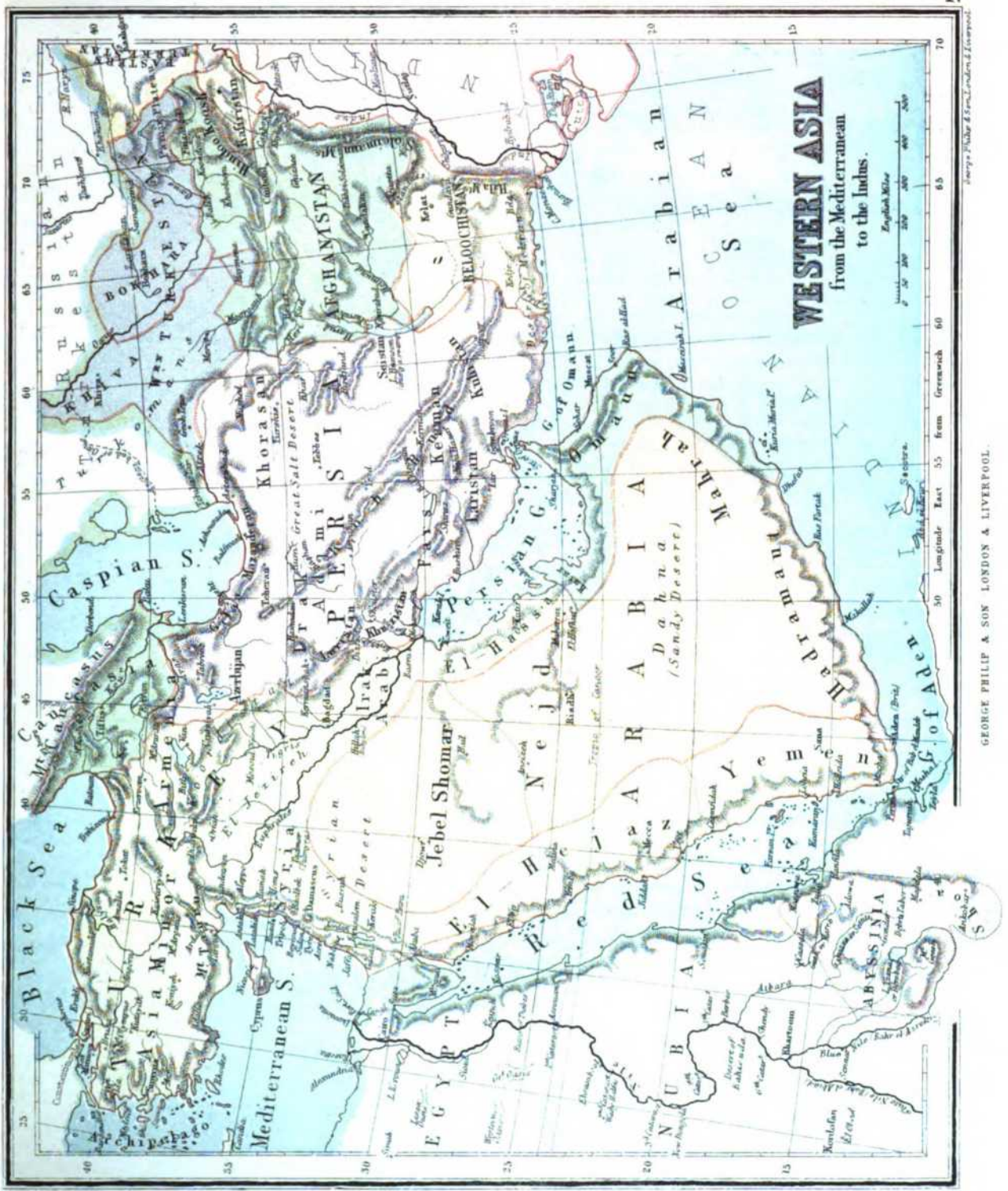
1. An extensive region of Asia is watered by rivers which have no outlet to the sea. What portion of the continent does this comprise? Point it out upon the map.
2. How many of the great rivers of Asia flow into the Arctic Ocean? Point out their courses on the map.
3. How many of the Asiatic rivers have their courses towards the Pacific Ocean? Name them.
4. Name as many as you can of the rivers that flow into the Indian Ocean, pointing them out upon the map.
5. What two rivers of Asia flow into the Sea of Aral? What two into the Caspian Sea? And what two into the Persian Gulf?
6. Which is longest amongst the rivers of Asia? Which three rank next in order of length?
7. What three rivers rise in the mountain-system of the Himalaya?
8. What are the two largest among the lakes of Asia? What characteristic difference is there between them?
9. What lakes are situated on the plateau of Armenia?
10. Name the lakes that are situated within Mongolia.
11. What three lakes are situated on the plateau of Tibet?
12. What two lakes are within China?
13. What two lakes are in Syria?

V.

1. Why is so great a variety of climates experienced within the limits of Asia?
2. Besides latitude, what else serves to account for the extreme heat and cold of opposite seasons experienced in many parts of the Asiatic continent?
3. Which portions of Asia are within the Torrid Zone; which in the Temperate, and which in the Frigid Zone? Point them out upon the map.
4. What characteristic difference is there between the climates of eastern and western Asia in similar latitudes?
5. Dividing Asia into three belts or zones, what kind of climate is characteristic of each?
6. What parts of Asia are distinguished by abundance of rain?
7. In what countries of Asia is gold found, as an article of native produce?
8. In what countries does silver occur?
9. Over what parts of Asia are iron, copper, and other useful metals distributed?
10. In what island of the East Indies is tin found? Find out the place of this island on the map.
11. In what countries of Asia does coal occur?
12. Name some of the fruits that are native to the soil of Asia.
13. Mention some of the forest-trees that belong to this division of the globe.
14. Among the cereals (corn), what grain forms the chief food-plant of southern and south-eastern Asia?
15. To what parts of Asia is the tea-plant native?

VI.

1. By what kind of vegetation are the table-lands of central Asia distinguished?
2. Of domesticated quadrupeds, name some of those that are natives of Asia.
3. Within what portions of Asia is the camel found? Mark out, as well as you are able, its limits of range upon the map.
4. Among carnivorous animals, name some that are natives of Asia.
5. In what part of Asia is the lion now found in a native state?
6. In what parts is the tiger found?
7. To what regions of Asia do the hyena and jackal chiefly belong? To what parts the wolf?
8. In what region of Asia are fur-bearing animals common? Name some of them?
9. To what (in round numbers) is the population of Asia supposed to amount?
10. Which two countries of Asia contain the largest number of inhabitants?
11. In what particular of appearance do the Chinese and the people of south-eastern Asia differ from other varieties of mankind?
12. Point on the map to some of the countries that are respectively occupied by the Mongolian and the Malay varieties of the human race.
13. Name the principal countries of Asia.



George Philip & Son, London & Liverpool.

GEORGE PHILIP & SON LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

TURKEY IN ASIA.

Boundaries.—Turkey in Asia is bounded on the *north* by the Black Sea; on the *west* and *south-west* by the Mediterranean; on the *south* by the Arabian Desert; and on the *east* by Persia and the Russian territory of Transcaucasia.

Extent.—The area is estimated at 700,000 square miles, or about twelve times greater than that of England and Wales.

Divisions.—Turkey in Asia comprehends three distinct regions:—(1) Asia Minor; (2) Syria; and (3) the countries on the Euphrates and Tigris.

I. ASIA MINOR is an extensive peninsula, enclosed on three sides by the Black Sea, the Sea of Marmora, the Archipelago, and the Mediterranean.

Coasts.—The *Dardanelles* and the *Channel of Constantinople* divide Turkey in Asia from European Turkey. On the west coast of Asia Minor are the *Gulfs of Mytilene, Smyrna, Samos, and Kos*; on the south, the *Makri* and *Adalia*; in the south-east (on the borders of Asia Minor and Syria), the *Gulf of Scanderoon*.

Islands.—Cyprus, Rhodes, Samo, Kio (or Chios), and Mytilene.

Surface.—The interior of Asia Minor is a high tableland. The principal mountains are:—

1. *Mount Taurus*, on the south side of Asia Minor.
2. *Mount Olympus*, in the north-west corner of Asia Minor.
3. *Mount Argæus*, on the interior table-land.

Rivers.—The largest river of Asia Minor is the *Kizil-Irmak*, which flows into the Black Sea.

II. SYRIA extends along the coast of the Mediterranean, from the Gulf of Scanderoon southward to the border of Egypt. The S.W. portion of Syria is the *Palestine* of sacred history.

Capes.—The chief headlands are *Cape Khanzir* and *Cape Carmel*. Cape Carmel is on the south side of the Bay of Acre.

Surface.—The mountains of Syria consist principally of two chains, which constitute the *Mount Lebanon* of the Bible, and were known to the Greeks and Romans by the names of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*. Between the two is a narrow valley, through which the river *Orontes* flows.

Rivers.—The two chief rivers of Syria are the *Orontes* and the *Jordan*. The former enters the Mediterranean; the latter flows south, and falls into the Dead Sea.

Lakes.—The principal are the *Dead Sea* and the *Lake of Tiberias*.

III. COUNTRIES ON THE EUPHRATES AND TIGRIS.—These comprehend a high table-land—the plateau of Armenia—and an extensive lowland plain.

Surface.—The plateau of Armenia is crossed by mountains whose highest summit, *Mount Ararat*, is 17,000 feet above the sea. Below the mountain region, to the south-eastward, are the plains of *Al-jézireh* and *Irak-Arabi*, through which the Euphrates and Tigris flow.

Rivers.—The *Euphrates* and *Tigris* are the chief rivers of this region. The Euphrates, which is 1700 miles long, is the most considerable river of western Asia. The Tigris joins the Euphrates about 100 miles above the Persian Gulf; the united stream bears locally the name of *Shatt-el-Arab*, or river of the Arabs.

Lakes.—The largest is *Lake Van*, which lies at an elevation of more than 5000 feet. It has no outlet, and consequently its waters are salt.

Climate.—The climate is generally warm, excepting on the upland plains and in the mountain regions.

Productions.—Among the natural productions are a variety of rich fruits and other valuable plants, and some minerals.

1. The *vine* grows luxuriantly in the watered valleys, and the *date-palm* flourishes on the borders of the desert. *Wheat, barley, rice*, and *maize*, with *tobacco, hemp*, and *flax*, are articles of culture.

2. The mineral produce includes *coal* (found on the north coast of Asia Minor, and also on the slopes of the Lebanon, upon the Syrian coast), together with ores of *iron, lead*, and *copper*.

Inhabitants.—The population amounts to 16,000,000.

1. **Race.**—Besides Turks—the ruling people—it includes Greeks, Syrians, Jews, Arabs, Armenians, Turkomans, Kurds, Druses, &c.

2. **Religion.**—The Turks are followers of the Mohammedan religion. The Greeks, Armenians, and others of the population, are Christians.

Industry.—The pursuits of industry are generally at a low ebb. The bulk of the population are engaged in agriculture, which, however, is pursued in a very inefficient manner, and scanty harvests are of frequent occurrence.

The amount of foreign trade is considerable. It is carried on chiefly with Britain and other European countries, from various ports upon the coasts of Asia Minor and Syria; and with the countries to the eastward of Turkey by means of caravans which cross the Syrian and Arabian deserts. *Smyrna*, on the coast of the archipelago: *Trebizond*, on the Black Sea; and *Beirut*, on the Syrian coast, are the principal seats of maritime trade. The cities of *Aleppo, Damascus*, and *Bagdad* are the chief centres of caravan traffic.

Government.—Turkey in Asia is under the same general government as European Turkey. Constantinople is the capital of the whole empire.

Divisions and Towns.—The principal towns in the three great divisions of Asiatic Turkey are shown in the following table:—

Divisions.	Chief Towns.
ASIA MINOR.....	Smyrna, Brusa, Kutaya, Koniye, Trebizond, Adana, Tarsus.
SYRIA	Damascus, Aleppo, Homs, Hamah, Beyrout, Acre, Jerusalem, Gaza.
COUNTRIES ON THE EUPHRATES	Bagdad, Erzeroum, Diarbeker, Orfah, Mosul.

*. Each of these divisions embraces numerous governments or pashaliks—so called from being under the rule of Pashas.

Smyna is the largest city of Asia Minor, and the chief emporium for the commerce of the eastern Mediterranean. It is also of great historic fame, and was one of the seven churches of the Apocalypse. *Trebizond*, on the Black Sea, is also an important seaport. *Koniye*, in the interior of the peninsula, represents the ancient Iconium, and is interesting in connection with the history of St. Paul. *Tarsus* was the birthplace of that apostle.

. Nearly every part of Asia Minor (and, indeed, of western Asia in general) exhibits remains of antiquity; its plains and hill-sides, its rivers and mountain-passes, are richly stored with historic associations, and its towns—now often in ruins—display the abundant traces of former splendour. Troy stood in the north-western corner of this peninsula; Smyrna, Ephesus, Miletus, and other famous cities of Ionia, were on its western shores; Sardis, Philadelphia, Laodicea, Nice, Angora, Iconium, Caesarea, upon its interior plains. The invincible phalanx of the Macedonian conqueror, in ancient times, and the armies of the Crusaders, in a more recent period, have marched through its plains, and the footsteps of Christian apostles have imparted sanctity to its soil.

The chief cities of modern Syria are Damascus, Aleppo, Homs, Hamah, Antioch, Jerusalem, Nablous, and Tiberias—all of them inland; with Beyrout, Tripoli, Latakia, Sidon, Tyre, Acre, Jaffa, and Gaza, which are on or near the coast. Jerusalem, Nablous, Tiberias, Jaffa, and Gaza, fall within the former limits of the Holy Land.

Damascus, the largest city of Syria, stands in a fertile plain near the eastern foot of Anti-Lebanon, on the little river Barnada, (the Abana of Scripture). *Aleppo*, in the north of Syria, has declined from the importance it formerly possessed. *Beyrout* is the chief port on the Syrian coast. The ancient Tyre and Sidon—now insignificant fishing towns—are to the southward of Beyrout. *Acre* (the Acco or Ptolemais of Scripture, and the St. Jean d'Acre of the Crusaders) is further south.

The south-western portion of Syria embraces Palestine, or the Holy Land. The most important locality in Palestine is *Jerusalem*, the scene of our Saviour's sufferings, which stands on a rocky platform—enclosed on three sides by deep ravines—about midway between the Mediterranean and Dead Seas. *Bethlehem*, the birthplace of our Lord, is a village lying a few miles south of Jerusalem. *Hebron* is further south. *Jaffa*, on the coast, is the port of Jerusalem, and a place of some trade. It represents the ancient Joppa.

Nablous, the Shechem of Scripture, is to the north of Jerusalem. *Nazareth* is further north, and not far from the base of Mount Tabor.

Tiberias is a small city lying on the western shore of the beautiful lake of Tiberias, or Sea of Galilee.

. Among the numerous remains of former greatness which belong to Syria, two sites command especial notice on account of their architectural beauty. These are *Baalbek* and *Palmyra*. The former lies to the north-west of Damascus, in the valley which is enclosed between the parallel chains of Libanus and Anti-Libanus; it represents the ancient city of Heliopolis, and still exhibits the remains of its magnificent temples. *Palmyra*, the Tadmor of Scripture, is to the north-eastward of Damascus, within a small oasis in the heart of the Syrian desert. It has the beautiful remains of an ancient temple of the sun.

The desert which borders the highlands of Syria to the eastward, and which stretches thence to the banks of the Euphrates, exhibits features which differ in some essential particulars from those that are commonly associated with the idea of the wilderness. It has no perennial streams, and hence, during the summer and autumn months, when it is parched by the sun's burning rays, exhibits an arid and comparatively lifeless surface, excepting only where an occasional spring of water creates a surrounding oasis. But at other seasons, when the rains of winter and early spring refresh the thirsty ground, the desert becomes a carpet of verdure, strewn with wild flowers of the most brilliant hue. This is the "glory of the wilderness," destined to pass away with the returning heats of summer.

Bagdad, on the Tigris, is superior in size and importance to any other place in the eastern division of Asiatic Turkey. *Erzeroom* is an important city, situated near the source of the Euphrates, on a high plain, 6000 feet above the sea. *Mosul* is on the western or right bank of the Tigris.

. The plain of Irak-Arabi (as the lower portion of the region watered by the Euphrates and Tigris is called) is the Babylonia of ancient geography. It is now a marshy tract, even more thinly peopled than other parts of Asiatic Turkey, and the sands of the adjoining desert press closely upon the river's western bank. But every portion of the plain exhibits remains of former population and culture.

Among the many ancient sites which belong to the lands watered by the Euphrates and Tigris, two attract especial notice. These are *Nineveh* and *Babylon*, the former capitals of the Assyrian empire. The remains of Nineveh are found upon the east bank of the Tigris, opposite Mosul. The ruins of Babylon lie upon either bank of the Euphrates, in the neighbourhood of the small modern town of Hillah.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Turkey in Asia bounded?
- What three great divisions does Turkey in Asia embrace? Point to each upon the map.
- What straits and intervening sea divide the coasts of Asia Minor from those of the European continent?
- What islands adjoin the western shores of Asia Minor?
- What kind of country (as to physical features) is the interior of Asia Minor? What mountain-chain forms the southward border of this region?
- In what part of Asia Minor are Mounts Argeus and Olympus?
- Name the principal river of Asia Minor, and the sea into which it flows.
- Point out upon the map the limits of Syria.
- What mountain-chains adjoin the coast of Syria?
- Name, and point out upon the map, the two principal lakes that belong to the valley of the Jordan.
- What kind of region do the rivers Euphrates and Tigris water? Point on the map to the courses of those rivers.
- What lake is within the Turkish portion of Armenia? Point to it upon the map.
- State what you know concerning the climate of Turkey in Asia.
- Mention some of the fruits and other plants that are among the productions of Asiatic Turkey.
- In what parts of Turkey in Asia is coal found? What other metals occur?
- What other races, besides Turks, form part of the population?
- What three cities are the chief seats of the maritime commerce of Turkey in Asia? What three of its inland trade?
- How is Turkey in Asia divided?
- In what part of Asia Minor are the following places—Smyrna, Brusa, Koniye, Trebizond, and Adana? Find out their places on the map.
- Point out Tarsus on the map. By what is Tarsus distinguished, and on what river does it stand?
- Mention some of the great cities of antiquity that were situated within Asia Minor?
- What portion of Syria corresponds to Palestine, or the Holy Land? Point to this part on the map.
- Name some of the chief inland cities of Syria, pointing out their places on the map. Which amongst them are within Palestine?
- Name the chief maritime cities of Syria.
- On what river does Damascus stand? By what name is this river referred to in Scripture?
- What kind of site does Jerusalem occupy?
- Where are Bethlehem, Hebron, Nazareth, and Tiberias? Point them out upon the map.
- Where is the town of Nablous? What ancient city does it represent?
- Where are Erzeroom, Kars, Bayazid, Van, and Diarbekir? Point them out on the map.
- Where are the plains of Al-Jezireh and Irak-Arabi?
- Where is Bagdad? For what is it noteworthy?
- What two great cities of antiquity, now in ruins, belong to the region of the Euphrates and Tigris? Point out the locality of each on the map.
- Under what form of government is Asiatic Turkey?

ARABIA.

Boundaries.—Arabia is bounded on the north by Turkey in Asia, on the west by the Red Sea, on the south by the Gulf of Aden and the Arabian Sea, and on the east by the Gulf of Oman and the Persian Gulf.

Extent.—Its area is estimated at 1,200,000 square miles, or about twenty times greater than that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—(1) The Red Sea divides at its northern extremity into two gulfs—the Gulf of Suez and the Gulf of Abaka. The tract enclosed between them is the Sinai peninsula. The Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb connects the Red Sea with the Gulf of Aden and the Indian Ocean. (2) The Persian Gulf is connected by the Strait of Ormuz with the Gulf of Oman, which opens into the Indian Ocean.

Natural Features.—Arabia consists of high plateaux in the interior, bordered on three sides by mountain chains. Between the base of the mountains and the sea there is a low and narrow plain called the Tehama, which is hot and arid. The group of the Sinai mountains, in the north-west of Arabia, fills the small peninsula of that name, and reaches upwards of 9000 feet in height.

The interior plains of Arabia are mostly desert, and derive their partial verdure entirely from the rains. Arabia has no rivers. Springs occur in abundance within the mountain region, and also, at distant intervals, within the desert. The presence of a perennial supply of water within the wilderness diffuses verdure around, and creates an oasis.

Climate.—The climate is hot and dry, excepting in the higher parts of the mountain region. The low belt of the Tehama is intensely hot and arid: rain seldom falls there, and only occurs at distant intervals over large portions of the interior plateau.

Productions.—The most fertile portion of Arabia is in the south-west, which was distinguished by the ancients as *Arabia Felix*, or the Happy Arabia. The vine, fig, peach, almond, and many other fruits flourish in this region, and the coffee shrub is abundantly cultivated. The date-palm is found in every oasis of the Arabian wilderness.

Inhabitants.—Arabia is supposed to have 12,000,000 inhabitants, but nothing certain is known on this head.

The people of Arabia are divided between dwellers in towns and dwellers in the wilderness. The latter live in tents, and move their encampments from place to place. These wandering inhabitants of the desert are called *Bedouins*, of whom there are numerous tribes. Their wealth consists in their flocks and herds—sheep, camels, goats, and horses. They look with contempt upon the dwellers in towns, and rejoice in the freedom of the desert.

Religion.—Most of the people of Arabia profess *Mohammedanism*. Vast numbers of Mohammedans annually resort to the sacred cities of Mecca and Medina—the former the birthplace, and the latter the burial place of Mohammed.

Industry.—The industry of the Arabs is pastoral and commercial.

The traffic which passes through the country is considerable, and is carried on by means of *caravans*—that is, companies of persons who associate together for mutual protection in crossing the wilderness, consisting of merchants, guides, soldiers, and pilgrims. The camel is uniformly employed as a beast of burden, and is suited in a higher degree than any other animal for making the passage of the wilderness. The caravan traversing the desert with its train of camels is one of the most striking pictures of Oriental life.

Government.—The government common in Arabia is patriarchal in form. The Arabs are divided into different tribes, each one of which has its own head, or *sheikh*, who fills, in relation to the persons of whom the tribe consists, the place of the father of a family.

Arabia, as a whole, has never been subject to any single power, and at the present time (1881) is politically divided into eight territories, of which *El-Hejaz*, *Yemen*, and *El-Hassa* are subject to the Sultan of Turkey; the *Sinai* peninsula, included within the Egyptian dominions; *Hadramaut*, occupied by independent Bedouin tribes; *Oman*, subdivided into eight provinces, nominally subject to the Sultan of Muscat; *Nejd*, comprising the districts still under the ruler of Riad, and the recently established sultanate of *Jebel Shomer*, the most powerful of the native states of Arabia.

Divisions.	Chief Towns.	Divisions.	Chief Towns.
SINAI REGION .	Tor, Akaba.	HADRAMAUT .	Makalla, Shehr.
EL-HEJAZ . .	Mecca, Medina.	OMAN . . .	Muscat.
YEMEN . . .	Sana, Mocha, Aden.	NEJD . . .	Riad.
EL-HASSA . .	Koweit.	JEBEL SHOMER	Hail.

1. The Sinai peninsula has few inhabitants; it is a wilderness of rocks and mountains, alternating with arid plains and gravelly beds of torrents, destitute of water during three-fourths of the year. This region was the scene of the forty years' wandering of the Israelites. Mount Sinai, whence the law was delivered, is within the central and highest cluster of mountains, in the very heart of the peninsula.

2. The region of El-Hejaz is the Holy Land of the Mohammedans. Mecca was the birthplace, and Medina the burialplace, of the Arabian prophet, Mohammed. Sana, the chief city of Yemen, is in the heart of the coffee district. Aden, on the south coast of Arabia—not far from the entrance of the Red Sea—belongs to England. Aden is an important station on the line of communication between England and India, by way of the Mediterranean and the Red Sea.

3. Muscat, on the opposite coast of the peninsula, is a flourishing seaport, the chief emporium of Arabian commerce. Hadramaut (on the south coast) and El-Hassa (along the shore of the Persian Gulf) contain no towns of any importance. Of the interior towns, the principal are:—Riad, the capital of the Wahabee empire, and Hail, the chief town of the sultanate of Jebel Shomer.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Arabia bounded?
- Into what gulfs does the northern extremity of the Red Sea divide?
- What straits connect the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf with the ocean?
- What are the general features of Arabia, as to mountains and plains?
- Where is the region called the Tehama? What kind of tract is it?
- What kind of climate has Arabia?
- Which portion of the country was called Arabia Felix by the ancients? What are its productions?
- Into what two classes are the people of Arabia divided?
- What kind of commerce does Arabia possess? Through what agency is it carried on?
- Under what kind of government are the people of Arabia?
- Name the divisions of Arabia, pointing them out upon the map.
- In which divisions of Arabia are the towns of Mecca and Medina?
- In which are Muscat, Sana, and Mocha?
- By what great event is the Sinai region distinguished?
- Which division of Arabia is distinguished as the Holy Land of the Mohammedans? And why?
- Where is Aden? For what is it noteworthy?

PERSIA.

Boundaries.—Persia is bounded on the north by the Caspian Sea and the deserts of Turkestan; on the east by Afghanistan and Beluchistan; on the south by the Persian Gulf; and on the west by Turkey in Asia.

Extent.—Its area is nearly 650,000 square miles—above ten times greater than England and Wales.

Coasts.—The Caspian Sea on the north, the Persian Gulf and Gulf of Oman on the south, wash the shores of Persia.

Islands.—The principal are *Ormuz*, *Kishm*, and *Karak*, in the Persian Gulf.

Natural Features.—The interior of Persia is a high plateau, bordered on three sides—the north, west, and south—by mountain-chains. These mountains divide the elevated interior from the low country which lies along the Caspian Sea, the Persian Gulf, and the banks of the Tigris.

1. **Mountains.**—The *Zagros Mountains*, along the western border, reach upwards of 11,000 feet in height; *Mount Demavend*, towards the Caspian, is still more elevated, being upwards of 18,000 feet high.

2. **Deserts.**—In the interior of Persia there is an extensive and arid region called the *Great Salt Desert*. South-east of the Great Desert is a smaller arid and marshy tract called the *Desert of Kerman*.

3. **Rivers.**—The *Kerkhah* and the *Kerun*, both of which join the Euphrates; and the *Lej. J. rud*, which flows into the Caspian. The Euphrates forms part of the south-west border of Persia, and the Aras is on its north-west frontier.

4. **Lakes.**—The largest lake is *Urumiyah*, in the north-west, the water of which is intensely salt. *Lake Bakhtegan* or *Niris*, in the south, is also salt. *Lake Seistan* is on the eastern border.

Climate.—The interior plateau is distinguished by intensely hot summers, and correspondingly severe winters. The low plains along the coast are intensely hot.

Productions.—The mountain-valleys of Persia, situated within the successive terraces through which its interior is reached, are its most favoured regions, both in climate and produce. The *vine*, the *fig*, the *water-melon*, and the *peach* abound there, and a carpet of wild flowers covers the ground. The interior plateau is generally arid and unproductive.

Inhabitants.—Persia has about 4,500,000 inhabitants.

About a fourth of the population of Persia are a people called *Illyats*, whose habits are pastoral. Camels, horses, and sheep form their wealth.

Education and Religion.—In no other country in Asia, except China, is education so generally diffused. The people are mostly *Mohamedans* in religion.

Industry.—Most of the people are engaged in *agricultural* and *pastoral* pursuits.

Rice, *barley*, *wheat*, and various fruits are largely grown, and the *mulberry*, *vine*, and *cotton plant* are extensively cultivated. There are few manufactures. Those of *carpets*, *shawls*, *embroidered silks*, *sabres*, and *firearms* are the most important.

Commerce.—The commerce, carried on by caravans, is considerable, native produce and manufactures being exchanged for Indian and European goods. The internal trade centres at *Tabreez*.

Government.—The sovereign of Persia is styled the *Shah*, and, as in all Oriental countries, exercises despotic power.

Divisions and Towns.—Persia is divided into twenty provinces. The following are the most important :—

Provinces.	Towns.	Provinces.	Towns.
IRAK-AJEMI .	Teheran, Ispahan, Hamadan.	FARS . . .	Shiraz, Bushire.
AZERBIJAN .	Tabreez.	LARISTAN .	Lar.
GILAN . . .	Resht.	KERMAN . .	Kerman, Gombrun.
MAZANDERAN .	Sarce, Balfrush.	LURISTAN .	Khorramabad.
KHORASAN .	Mashed.	KHUZISTAN .	Shuster, Dizful.
		SEISTAN . .	Sekuhia.

TEHERAN is the modern capital of Persia, but *Ispahan* is of larger size, and of greater commercial importance. *Ispahan*, however, has declined from the splendour which it once possessed. *Bushire*, on the Persian Gulf, is the chief seat of the foreign commerce of Persia. *Gombrun* lies at the entrance of the gulf, on its northern shore. Near *Gombrun* is the island of *Ormuz*, which gives its name to the strait that connects the Persian Gulf with the Indian Ocean. *Mohammerah*, at the junction of the river *Kerun* with the Euphrates, is a place of growing commercial importance. A few miles south-west of *Dizful* is the mound of *Sus*, which marks the site of the ancient city of *Susa*, the Shushan of Scripture (Dan. viii. 2).

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is Persia bounded? What seas wash its shores?
- Where is the island of Ormuz?
- What kind of formation does Persia exhibit, as to its physical geography?
- Name some of the mountains that are within Persia.
- Where is the Great Salt Desert? Point it out upon the map.
- What rivers belong to Persia? Into what do they flow?
- What two lakes does Persia include? Are their waters fresh or salt?
- What kind of climate has Persia? Which parts of the country are most advantageously situated in this regard?
- What fruits and flowers belong to the watered districts of Persia?
- Among the inhabitants of Persia are a people called *Illyats*: What are their habits?
- Under what form of government is Persia? How is the sovereign entitled?
- Into how many provinces is Persia divided? Name as many as you can of the number.
- What city forms the capital of Persia? Point to its place on the map.
- In what provinces are the cities of *Ispahan*, *Hamadan*, *Tabreez*, *Balfrush*, and *Mashed*?
- In what province are *Shiraz* and *Bushire*? For what is *Bushire* noteworthy?
- What two towns are within the province of *Khuzistan*?
- Of what ancient city are the remains found near *Dizful*?

BELUCHISTAN.

Boundaries.—Beluchistan is bounded by Afghanistan on the north, Persia on the west, and British India on the east.

Extent.—The area of Beluchistan is estimated at 106,800 square miles, of which 60,000 belong to Persia.

Natural Features.—The chief physical features are :—

1. **Mountains.**—An irregular chain of mountains extends from east to west. To the east the central plateau is bounded by the *Hala Mountains*, which extends north to the Bolan Pass.

2. **Rivers.**—The only permanent river is the *Bampur*, in western Beluchistan. The *Dasht* and the *Amini* enter the Arabian sea.

Climate.—The climate exhibits extremes of heat and cold, being intensely hot in summer, while in winter the cold is severe, snow lying on the ground for several months.

Productions.—Several of the most useful minerals and metals are known to exist, but are not much worked. The vegetation resembles that of Persia.

Inhabitants.—The people of Beluchistan number probably 2,000,000, and belong to two entirely different races—the *Beluchis* and the *Brahuis*.

Religion.—Both the Beluchis and Brahuis are followers of the Mohammedan religion; the former belong to the orthodox Sunnite sect, the latter to the sect of Omar.

Industry.—The bulk of the people are nomads, depending entirely on their flocks and herds. There are no manufactures of any importance. The trade is carried on by caravans, there being no roads or navigable rivers.

Government.—The western tribes are entirely independent, but those in the eastern provinces are nominally subject to the Khan of Khelat.

Divisions and Towns.—The country is loosely divided into seven provinces, viz., *Khelat*, *Sarawan*, *Kach-Gundava*, in the north-east; *Kohistan*, in the north-west; and *Jalawan*, *Luz*, and *Mekran*, in the south.

Khelat, the nominal capital of Beluchistan, is the summer residence of the Khan, who removes to *Gundava*, in the Indus valley, in the winter. *Bampur* is the capital, and *Chabar* the port of Persian Beluchistan. The town and district of *Quetta*, near the northern entrance of the Bolan Pass, are occupied by the British.

AFGHANISTAN.

Boundaries.—Afghanistan is bounded on the north by Turkestan, on the east by British India, on the south by Beluchistan, and on the west by Persia.

Extent.—Its area is estimated at about 250,000 square miles, or about four times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Lord Lawrence pithily describes Afghanistan as a "country of mountain-ranges, narrow defiles, and valleys limited in extent."

1. **Mountains.**—A vast range extends along the northern border, and is called the *Hindu-Kush*, or Hindu-Koh. The *Suliman Mountains*, on the east, divide Afghanistan from the low plains that border the Indus; their highest summit, called *Takht-i-Suliman*, is 12,000 feet high.

2. **Passes.**—The principal passes are :—The *Khyber Pass*, the *Kurum Pass*, the *Gomul Pass*, and the *Bolan Pass*.

3. **Rivers.**—The chief rivers are :—The *Cabul*, which drains the north-east valleys, flows into the Indus at Attock. The *Helmund* and its tributaries, of which the principal is the *Argandab*, drains central Afghanistan, and flows into the lake of *Seistan*.

4. **Lakes.**—The only considerable lakes are the *Lake of Seistan* or *Hamun*, in the south-west; and the intensely salt *Lake Abistada*.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of both these countries is distinguished by intense extremes of heat and

cold. The natural productions are like those of Persia, and the ground yields abundance of fruits and grain wherever water is sufficiently plentiful.

Inhabitants.—The population is estimated at about 5,000,000, consisting of over 400 different tribes, of whom the *Ghilzais* and *Duranis* are the most powerful.

The Afghans generally are a bold and hardy race of mountaineers, warlike and hospitable, but treacherous and faithless.

Religion.—Mohammedanism: the Afghans proper belonging to the *Sunnite* sect, but the *Hazaras* and other tribes to the *Shiite* sect.

Industry.—The Afghans are mostly devoted to pastoral pursuits. A considerable amount of transit trade passes through the country.

Government.—Afghanistan has for a long time been in a most unsettled state. The Ameer of Cabul is nominally acknowledged as sovereign, and is recognised by the British Government as ruler of Afghanistan.

Divisions and Towns.—The principal divisions are Herat in the west, Cabul in the centre, and Candahar in the south.

The chief towns are *Cabul*, in the north-east, the capital and residence of the Ameer; *Candahar*, the largest town in south Afghanistan; and *Herat*, in the north-west.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. How is Beluchistan bounded, and what is its area?
2. Name the chief natural features of Beluchistan.
3. Describe briefly the climate and productions of Beluchistan.
4. To what races do the people of Beluchistan belong?
5. What form of religion do they profess?
6. Name the chief divisions of Beluchistan.
7. What town is the nominal capital? Where are the following towns :—*Gundava*, *Bampur*, *Chabar*?
8. Where is the *Bolan Pass*? What town is held by the British near its northern entrance?
9. Where is Afghanistan, and what are its boundaries?

10. Name the principal mountain ranges and passes.
11. What rivers belong to Afghanistan? Point them out on the map, and trace their courses.
12. Name the two chief lakes.
13. Describe the climate and productions of Afghanistan?
14. The inhabitants of Afghanistan belong to many different tribes—which are the most powerful?
15. What form of religion do the Afghans profess?
16. How are they generally employed?
17. What chief is nominally acknowledged as ruler of Afghanistan?
18. Name the three chief towns.

INDIA.

Boundaries.—The Himalaya Mountains bound India on the north; Burmah and the Bay of Bengal on the east; Afghanistan, Beluchistan, and the Indian Ocean on the west. To the south it terminates in Cape Comorin, a conspicuous headland which fronts the waters of the Indian Ocean.

Extent.—India embraces an area of nearly 1,500,000 square miles, a magnitude twelve times greater than that of the British Isles, and which exceeds by upwards of twenty-five times the area of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Regular and unbroken, and in many parts extremely dangerous to approach.

1. **Capes.**—Cape Monze and Din Head on the west, Cape Comorin on the south, and Calimere Point on the east.

2. **Inlets.**—The Gulf of Cutch or Kach, leading into the *Runn of Cutch*, and the Gulf of Cambay, on the west; and, on the south, the Gulf of Manaar.

Islands.—The principal islands are *Ceylon*, and the *Laccadive, Maldivé, and Nicobar Islands*.

1. The large island of *Ceylon*, lying to the south of India, belongs to Britain, and forms a distinct colony. Ceylon is 25,700 square miles in area, or about three-fourths the size of Ireland. The interior of the island is a high mountain region, the loftiest summits of which exceed 8000 feet; a broad and fertile belt of lowland extends around the coast. The most characteristic products of the island are the *cinnamon-plant* and the *cocoa-nut palm*. *Coffee* is also largely grown. Ceylon has nearly two and a half millions of inhabitants. These are called the *Singalese*; they differ in some respects from the people of the Indian mainland, and are worshippers of *Buddha*. The chief town is *Colombo*, on the western coast. *Trincomalee*, a flourishing seaport, is on the north-east side of the island. *Kandy*, formerly the native capital, is in the interior.

2. The groups of the *Laccadive* and *Maldivé Islands* lie in the Indian Ocean, to the south-west of India. The *cocoa-nut* is the chief article of produce in either group. The *Andaman Islands* are in the eastern part of the Bay of Bengal. The *Nicobar Islands* lie to the south-east of the Andaman Islands.

Natural Features.—The chief natural features of India are the vast range of the Himalayas, which rise abruptly from the great plain of Hindustan, watered by the Indus and Ganges. South of this plain are a series of tablelands, crossed by several considerable chains, and bounded on the east and west by the Ghauts, between which and the sea is a narrow plain.

India thus embraces two great divisions—the north, which is the extensive lowland plain of *Hindustan*; and the centre and south, forming the plateau of the *Deccan*.

1. **Mountains.**—The chief mountain-chains of India are the *Himalaya*, the *Western and Eastern Ghauts*, and the *Vindhya Mountains*.

(1.) The *Himalaya Mountains* stretch in a well-defined line along the northern border of India, dividing that country from the tableland of Tibet. Their highest summit is Mount Everest, 29,000 feet, the highest elevation on the globe.

(2.) The *Western Ghauts* extend along the Malabar coast of India, close to the shores of the Indian Ocean. Their highest summits do not exceed 8000 feet. The detached portions of high ground which extend along the eastern side of the peninsula are called the *Eastern Ghauts*.

(3.) The *Vindhya Mountains* lie in the direction of east and west, along the north side of the peninsular portion of India. Their height is moderate, seldom exceeding 3000 feet.

2. **Tablelands.**—The principal tablelands are:—

(1.) The *Northern Tableland*, or plateau of *Malwa* and *Bundelkhand*.

(2.) The *Southern Tableland*, or the *Deccan*.

3. **Plains.**—The principal plains are:—

(1.) The *Great Plain of Northern India* is naturally divided into the "Plain of the Ganges" and the "Plain of the Indus."

(2.) The *Eastern and Western Coast Plains* lie between the Ghauts and the sea.

4. **Rivers.**—The principal rivers are:—(a) The *Brahmaputra*, *Ganges*, *Mahanuddy*, *Godavery*, *Krishna*, and *Cauvery*, flowing into the *Bay of Bengal*. (b) The *Indus*, *Nerbudda*, and *Tapti*, flowing into the *Arabian Sea*.

(1.) The *Ganges* rises on the south slope of the Himalayas, and flows through the great plain into the Bay of Bengal, after a course of 1500 miles.

(2.) The *Indus* rises in the tableland of Tibet, and flows through *Cashmere*, the *Punjab*, and *Scinde*, entering the *Arabian Sea* by numerous mouths after a total course of 1700 miles.

Climate.—The climate of India is hot, excepting in the hill regions, where a cool temperature results from altitude above the sea. These elevated tracts are accordingly resorted to for sanitary purposes.

The changes of the Indian seasons are from rain to drought, and the reverse. These changes are connected with the *monsoons*, or periodical winds of the Indian Ocean and neighbouring lands. The eastern side of India is generally hotter and more arid than the western coasts.

Productions.—The natural productions are rich and varied.

1. The *gold* and *gems* for which India is traditionally celebrated are of less real value than the *coal* and *iron* which are extensively diffused through large portions of the country. *Tin*, *copper*, and other metals also occur.

2. India supplies all, or nearly all, the *fruits* that belong to southern Asia in general. Vast forests of *teak* and other trees clothe the seaward face of the Ghauts, and forests extend from the plains of northern India far up the declivities of the Himalayas. The least productive part of India is the region known as the great Indian Desert, and the neighbouring tract entitled the *Runn of Cutch*.

Inhabitants.—In 1881 India had upwards of 250,000,000 inhabitants: the great bulk of whom are subjects of Britain, and the remainder, though under various native sovereignties, are virtually under the controlling power of Britain.

1. **Race.**—The great mass of the people of India belong to the *Hindu race*—the various families of which, however, exhibit many points of difference. The inhabitants of the provinces that border on the lower Ganges are of small stature and slender frame: those of the more inland provinces are a people of larger proportions and greater strength. There are, besides, settled in various parts of India, and intermingled with the *Hindoo* population, descendants of *Arabs*, *Armenians*, *Afghans*, *Turks*, and *Abyssinians*; together with *Parsees*, *Jews*, and people of various European nations (principally British).

2. **Religion.**—The *Hindoo*s are uniformly followers of the *Brahminical* religion. Among their most characteristic social usages is the division into *castes*. Those of the native population not of *Hindu* race are principally *Mohammedans*.



Industry.—The industry of India is chiefly agricultural, but there are also some important native manufactures.

1. *Rice* is the article of food most extensively consumed by the great mass of the population. The culture of the *poppy*—for the purpose of extracting *opium*—is extensively pursued within the valley of the Ganges, and also on the plateau of Malwa. *Indigo*, *cotton*, *sugar*, *coffee*, *tea*, and the *mulberry*, are the objects of culture in various parts of India. The tea-plant is mainly cultivated in Assam.

2. Fine *silk* and *cotton* fabrics, with shawls and various articles of ornamental attire, constitute the chief produce of Indian manufacturing skill. But the import of manufactured goods (principally from Britain), and the export of raw produce—chiefly *opium*, *indigo*, *cotton*, *rice*, and *tea*—are the distinguishing features of Indian commerce.

Government.—Three-fifths of the whole vast region lying between the Himalaya Mountains and Cape Comorin, come under the appellation of British India, and are subject to the

direct rule of authorities appointed by the British Crown. The remainder is divided between various native states, of which there are a vast number (many hundreds in all), attached to Britain by various ties, but all more or less dependent upon British power.

Prior to the year 1858 all the provinces of British India that are situate on the mainland were under the rule of the *East India Company*—subject only to a limited control on the part of the Crown. But in that year the political functions of the company were terminated by parliament, and the whole of their vast dominions brought under the direct authority of the British Crown. The Queen of England assumed the title of *Empress of India* by an Act proclaimed at Delhi before the princes of India on January 1, 1877.

Divisions.—India is politically divided into (1) British Possessions, (2) Native States, (3) Foreign Possessions.

I. BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

The territories under direct British rule were formerly divided into the three presidencies of Bengal, Madras, and Bombay. The *present* divisions under direct British rule are:—

Province.	Capital.	Province.	Capital.	Province.	Capital.	Province.	Capital.
1. BENGAL	Calcutta.	3. PUNJAB	Lahore.	5. BRITISH BURMAH	Rangoon.	7. BOMBAY	Bombay.
2. N.-WEST PROVINCES	Allahabad.	4. CENTRAL PROVINCES	Nagpore.	6. ASSAM	Gowhatty.	8. MADRAS	Madras.
3. OUDE	Lucknow.						

1. **Bengal** includes the lower portion of the Ganges and Brahmaputra valleys, and the former province of Cuttack, at the mouth of the Mahanuddy. The principal towns in Bengal are:—*Calcutta* (population 895,000), the capital of British India, on the east bank of the river Hooghly (the principal arm of the Ganges), at a distance of a hundred miles from the sea; *Moorshedabad*, also on the Hooghly; *Patna*, on the Ganges; and *Cuttack*, on an arm of the Mahanuddy.

2. **North-West Provinces and Oude** now (1881) form one province. The North-West Provinces embrace the upper portion of the Ganges valley, and enclose Oude on all sides but the north. The principal towns are:—*Allahabad*, at the junction of the Jumna and Ganges; *Benares*, on the north bank of the Ganges (two of the largest among the inland cities of India); *Cawnpore*, on the Ganges; *Agra*, on the Jumna; *Hurdwar*, on the Ganges; *Lucknow* (the capital of Oude), on the Goomtee, one of the affluents of the Ganges.

3. The **Punjab** embraces the north-western part of the great plain of India, and is so called from the “five rivers” which water it. The principal towns are:—*Lahore*, the capital, on the river Ravee—one of the five tributaries of the Indus; *Delhi*, on the Jumna; *Mooltan*, on the river Chenab; *Peshawar*, near the entrance to the Khyber Pass; and *Simla*, which is much resorted to for sanitary purposes.

4. The **Central Provinces** include the districts between the upper courses of the Nerbudda and the Mahanuddy. The principal towns are *Jubbulpore*, the capital, and *Nagpore*.

5. **British Burmah** is described under “Further India.”

6. **Assam** was included in the province of Bengal until 1874. It is chiefly famous for its tea plantations. The only considerable town is *Gowhatty*, the capital, on the left bank of the Brahmaputra.

7. The **Bombay Presidency** lies wholly on the western side of India. The large province of *Scinde*, which extends over both banks of the lower Indus, forms part of this presidency. The principal towns are *Bombay* (645,000 inhabitants), the capital of the presidency, situated on the island of Bombay, which closely adjoins the coast. *Surat*, at the mouth of the Tapti river. *Baroche*, on the Nerbudda. In *Scinde* is the rising port of *Kurachee*, and *Hyderabad*, on the Indus.

8. **Madras Presidency** embraces a large part of central and southern India. Its principal towns are *Madras* (397,000 inhabitants), the capital of the presidency, on the Coromandel coast. *Masulipatam*, near the mouth of the Krishna. *Tranquebar*, a seaport near the mouth of the river Cauvery; *Arcoot*, *Tanjore*, *Trichinopoly*, and *Madura* are inland cities; *Calicut*, *Cananore*, and *Mangalore* are flourishing seaports. *Ootacamund* is a sanitary station in the Nilgherrie Hills.

II. NATIVE STATES.

The Native States of India (which number upwards of 460) have a total area of nearly 600,000 square miles, and a population of about 55,000,000.

1. Of the *Dependent Native States*, the most important are:—Cashmere, Sikhim, Travancore, Cochin, Cutch, and Guzerat.

(1) **Cashmere** includes the celebrated valley of that name, which is watered by the river Jelum. The capital is *Srinagar*. Its breed of goats affords the fine hair which is woven into the celebrated Cashmere shawls.

(2) **Sikhim**.—This small state is traversed by the lofty ranges of the Himalaya. The native rajah resides at *Tumlong*.

(3) **Travancore** extends along the south-western coast of India. The capital is *Trivandrum*. The greater portion of this state is covered with forests, but the coast districts are well cultivated and productive.

(4) **Cochin** is a small province north of Travancore, and is bounded on the east by the Cardamum Mountains. The capital is *Cochin*.

(5) **Cutch** is a small peninsula on the west coast. The *Rao*, as the sovereign is termed, resides at *Bhoj*, an inland town.

(6) **Guzerat** is the general name for the territories east and west of the Gulf of Cambay. The sovereign (styled Guicowar) resides at *Baroda*.

2. Of the *Tributary Native States*, the principal are those of *Rajpootana*, *Central India*, *Hyderabad*, and *Mysore*.

(1) **Rajpootana**, in the north-west of India, embraces numerous small states, of which the most important are *Oodeypore* (Oudipur), *Jeypore* (Jaipur), and *Jhodpore*. Between *Rajpootana* and the *Sutlej* lies the native state of *Bhawulpore*.

(2) The states of **Central India** lie between *Rajpootana* and the *Central Provinces*. The largest state is that of *Gwalior*, governed by the *Maharajah Sindia*; but the British agent resides at *Indore*, the

capital of the dominions of the *Maharajah Holkar*. *Bhopal* is a small Mohammedan state in the *Vindhya Mountains*.

(3) **Hyderabad**, the most extensive of the native states, is under a ruler who bears the title of *Nizam*, and is wholly inland. The capital, *Hyderabad* (Haiderabad), on a tributary of the *Krishna*, is strongly fortified. Not far from *Aurungabad*, in the north-west, is the little town of *Assaye*, where the Duke of Wellington (then Sir Arthur Wellesley) gained one of his splendid victories.

(4) The state of **Mysore** is also inland. The present capital, *Mysore*, lies about 20 miles south-east of the former capital, *Seringapatam*.

3. The most important *Independent States* are *Nepaul* and *Bhotan*, on the southern slopes of the *Himalaya*.

(1) **Nepaul** is separated from the British provinces by the pestilential *Terai* (Tarai). *Khatamandu* is the capital.

(2) **Bhotan** (Bhutan or Bhootan) lies between the main ridge of the *Himalayas* and the British provinces. The chief town is *Tassindom*.

III. FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.

Two other European nations possess a few and comparatively unimportant stations in India. These are *France* and *Portugal*.

1. To the **FRENCH** belong:—*Pondicherry*, a seaport town lying to the south of *Madras*; *Mahé*, on the *Malabar* coast (a few miles north of *Calicut*); and *Chandernagore*, a small town on the *Hooghly River*, north of *Calcutta*. These are the remains of a power which long contested with *Britain* the sovereignty of *India*.

2. The **PORTUGUESE** possessions consist of *Goa*, a small territory on the west coast of *India*; the port of *Damaon*, to the north of *Bombay*; and the town and port of *Diu*, further north. The city of *Goa* was once a splendid emporium of commerce—the chief mart of the *Eastern world*, but its importance has wholly passed away.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is *India* bounded, and what is its area?
- Describe briefly the coasts of *India*.
- By what names are the opposite coasts of *India* distinguished?
- Give a brief account of the natural features of *Ceylon*. What two articles constitute its most characteristic products?
- Point on the map to the places of the following:—*Colombo*, *Trincomalee*, the *Laccadive Islands*, the *Maldiv Islands*, and the *Andaman Islands*.
- What mountain-chains and table-lands belong to *India*?
- What portion of *India* is the *Deccan*, and what are its natural features?
- Where is the *Great Indian Desert*?
- Describe the two principal rivers of *India*.
- What kind of climate has *India*?
- Mention some among the natural productions of *India*, mineral and vegetable.
- Where is the tract known as the *Runn of Cutch*?
- What is the total population of *India*?
- Besides *Hindus*, what other races are included amongst the population of *India*?
- What form of religion is professed by the great majority of the *Hindu* people?
- Give some particulars concerning the industrial productions of *India*.
- How is *India* divided? What portion of the whole comes under the designation of *British India*?
- What are the limits of the province of *Bengal*?
- Where are the *North-West Provinces* and *Oude*?
- What is *Assam* chiefly noted for?
- Where is the *Punjab*, and why is it so called?
- What do you know of the *Central Provinces*? Name the chief towns.
- Upon what rivers are *Calcutta*, *Benares*, *Allahabad*, *Lucknow*, *Cawnpore*, and *Agra* situated?
- Where is *Simla*, and for what is it noteworthy?
- In what part of *India* are *Delhi*, *Lahore*, *Mooltan*, and *Peshawar*? Point out their places on the map.
- What part of *India* is included within the *Bombay Presidency*?
- Where is the city of *Bombay*?
- Where is *Scinde*? Which is its port?
- What part of *India* is within the *Madras Presidency*?
- Where is the city of *Madras*?
- Where are *Masulipatam*, *Tranquebar*, *Trichinopoly*, and *Tanjore*?
- Where is *Ootacamund*? For what is it noteworthy?
- Where are *Calicut*, *Cananore*, and *Mangalore*?
- Enumerate as many as you can of the "dependent" native states of *India*.
- In which of the above states are the towns of *Srinagar*, *Trivandrum*, *Cochin*, *Bhoj*, *Mandree*, and *Baroda*, respectively?
- Point on the map to the locality of *Cashmere*. For what branch of industry is it noted?
- Name the principal "tributary" native states.
- State what you know of *Rajpootana* and the states of *Central India*.
- Describe briefly the states of *Hyderabad* and *Mysore*.
- What states south of the range of the *Himalaya* are still independent?
- What two other nations, besides *Britain*, possess territories in *India*? Name some of the possessions of each.

INDO-CHINESE COUNTRIES.

Boundaries.—Further India is bounded on the north by China, on the east and south by the China Sea, and on the west by the Strait of Malacca and the Bay of Bengal.

Extent.—The total area of Further India is about 870,000 square miles, or nearly 15 times that of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Very extensive, and possessing several fine harbours.

The most noticeable features are the two great *Gulfs of Tonquin and Siam*, on the east, and the *Gulf of Martaban*, on the west. The two headlands are *Cape Negrais*, on the west, and *Cape Romania*, principal on the south. The *Strait of Malacca* divides Malaya from the island of Sumatra, and forms the chief entrance to the China Sea.

Natural Features.—Ranges of high ground, running north and south, with long river-valleys between, form the characteristic features of these countries.

Plains.—There are three extensive plains—the *Plain of Pegu*, the *Plain of Siam*, and the *Plain of Tonquin*.

Rivers.—The Indo-Chinese peninsula has four great rivers:—The *Irawady* and *Saluen*, flowing into the Gulf of Martaban; the *Menam*, into the Gulf of Siam; and the *Mekon*, into the China Sea.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is hot, and often unhealthy in the low grounds. The rains are abundant, and the change from the dry to the rainy season depends (as in India proper) upon the monsoons. The vegetable productions are of the highest value. There are various native woods, with drugs, spices, and guma. Gold is worked.

Inhabitants.—The entire region, perhaps, comprehends about 36,000,000 of inhabitants.

Race and Language.—The Indo-Chinese people bear more resemblance to the Chinese than to the Hindus. They are more robust in frame than the Hindus, but short in stature. The various languages spoken are monosyllabic.

Religion.—The Buddhist worship uniformly prevails, and its rites are celebrated with great pomp and display.

Industry.—The industry is chiefly agricultural.

Rice, sugar, the mulberry, cotton, indigo, and tobacco are largely grown: rice is the principal article of food. Extensive commercial intercourse is maintained with China.

Government.—The native governments of all these countries are despotic. British Burmah is under a Chief Commissioner.

Divisions.—The political divisions of the peninsula, with their chief towns, are shown in the following table:—

Divisions.	Chief Towns.
BRITISH BURMAH	Rangoon, Akyab, Moulmein, Promé.
THE EMPIRE OF BURMAH	Mandalay, Amarapura, Ava, Bamo.
THE KINGDOM OF SIAM	Bangkok, Ayuthia, Paknam.
THE EMPIRE OF ANAM	Hue, Kesho or Ha-noi.
THE KINGDOM OF CAMBODIA	Udong, Pnomping, Kampot.
FRENCH COCHIN-CHINA	Saigon, Mitho.
INDEPENDENT MALAY STATES	Perak, Pahang, Johore.
THE STRAITS SETTLEMENTS	Singapore, George Town, Malacca.

1. **British Burmah** consists of three provinces acquired from Burmah. The total population in 1881 was 3,700,000.

(1.) **ARACAN**, a narrow strip of country lying along the east side of the Bay of Bengal; capital, *Akyab*.

(2.) **PEGU** includes the delta of the Irawady. Chief towns *Rangoon*, on one of the branches of the Irawady, the capital of the whole province, and *Prome*, on the left bank of the river.

(3.) The provinces known by the general name of **TENASSERIM** range along the eastern side of the Gulf of Martaban. The town of *Moulmein*, near the mouth of the river Saluen, is an important seat of trade.

2. **Burmah** occupies the north-western portion of the peninsula, and contains about 4,000,000 inhabitants. The chief towns are *Mandalay*, the capital, on the left bank of the Irawady, *Amarapura* and *Ava*, also on the banks of the same river.

3. **Siam** occupies the central part of the peninsula. Its population is estimated at 5,000,000. The capital of Siam is the busy port of *Bangkok*, on the left bank of the Menam, about twenty miles from the sea. The former capital was *Ayuthia*.

4. **Anam**, or *Cochin-China* proper, lies on the eastern side of the Indo-Chinese peninsula. Its population is estimated at upwards of 20,000,000. The chief towns are *Kesho*, the capital of the province of Tonquin, and *Hue*, the capital of the empire.

5. **Cambodia** was formerly an extensive and powerful kingdom, but its total population is now only about 900,000. The chief towns are *Udong*, the present capital, *Pnomping*, and *Kampot*.

6. **French Cochinchina** lies south of Cambodia and Anam. Its population is estimated at 1,600,000. *Saigon* is the capital. The other chief towns are *Bathak* and *Vintlong*.

7. **Independent Malacca** comprises the southern portion of the Malay peninsula. Of the independent Malay States the principal are those of *Perak* and *Salangore* on the west coast, and *Pahang* and *Johore* on the east.

8. **The Straits Settlements** form a distinct dependency of the British Crown. They comprise Penang, Wellesley Province, Malacca, and Singapore, and have a total population of about 350,000.

(1.) **PENANG**, or Prince of Wales Island, lies off the west coast of the Malay peninsula.

(2.) **WELLESLEY PROVINCE** is on the mainland, opposite Penang.

(3.) **MALACCA**, the largest as well as the oldest of the Straits Settlements, comprises a strip of territory on the west coast of the peninsula.

(4.) **SINGAPORE**, at the extremity of the Malay peninsula, contains the town of *Singapore*, which is one of the great marts of British commerce in the East.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Name the boundaries of Further India.
2. Name the mountains, plains, and rivers that belong to this region.
3. Describe briefly the climate and natural productions.
4. What is the distinguishing feature of the industry of this region.
5. Under what kind of government are these countries?
6. What portions of the Indo-Chinese peninsula belong to Britain? Describe briefly the provinces of British Burmah.
7. In what provinces are the towns of Akyab, Rangoon, and Moulmein?
8. What is the form of government of Burmah proper? Name the chief towns.

9. What part of the peninsula does Siam occupy? On what river is the capital?
10. What are the boundaries of the Empire of Anam?
11. Where is Cambodia?
12. Name the chief towns of Anam and Cambodia.
13. What portion of Further India belongs to France?
14. Name the principal independent states of Malacca.
15. Where are the "Straits Settlements?" Which is commercially the most important?

THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

The CHINESE EMPIRE extends over more than a fourth part of Asia, and comprises an area which is considerably greater than that of all Europe. But China itself constitutes a portion only of this widely-extended dominion. Tibet, Mongolia, parts of Manchuria and Turkestan, with Corea, besides China proper, are included within the Chinese Empire.

I. CHINA.

China is a large country of Eastern Asia, and is by far the most important portion of the Chinese Empire.

Boundaries.—China proper is bounded on the north by Mongolia; on the east by the Pacific Ocean; on the south by the China Sea, Anam, and Siam; on the west by Burmah and Tibet.¹

Extent.—The area of China is estimated at 1,500,000 square miles, which exceeds by 26 times the area of England and Wales, or nearly 12 times that of the British Islands.

Coasts.—Extensive, and skirted by a vast number of islands and islets. The principal features are:—

1. **Inlets.**—The *Gulfs of Pe-che-lee* and *Tonquin*; the *Bay of Corea*.
2. **Straits.**—The *Straits of Pe-che-lee*, *Formosa*, and *Hainan*.

Islands.—The principal islands are *Formosa*, *Hainan*, *Hong-Kong*, and *Chusan*.

The island of HONG-KONG near the south coast of China, was ceded to Britain in 1842. It is hilly, watered, and tolerably healthy, and its situation off the entrance of the Canton river gives it importance. Its area is thirty-six square miles. Its population numbers above 140,000. The chief town is *Victoria*.

Mountains.—The greater part of China is mountainous. Its western and south-western provinces, especially, are covered with high mountain-chains, the peaks of which rise above the snow-line.

Plains.—The north-eastern part of China is a fertile lowland, known as the *Plain of China*. This plain constitutes the most populous portion of the Chinese empire.

Rivers.—The four most important rivers of China are the Yang-tze-kiang, Hwang-ho, Si-kiang, and Pei-ho. The *Yang-tze-kiang*² flows into the East Sea of China; the *Hwang-ho* and *Pei-ho*, into the Gulf of Pe-che-lee; and the *Si-kiang*, into the China Sea.

Lakes.—Several large lakes adjoin the course of the Yang-tze-kiang.

Climate.—The climate of China is on the whole temperate, but has great extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons. This is the case throughout central and western Asia.

Productions.—Of natural productions, the *tea-plant* is the most remarkable. It grows principally in the south-eastern provinces, and is cultivated with great diligence. The *orange*, *mullberry*, *jujube*, *sugarcane*, and *cotton-plant*, are native to China. The mineral produce includes *coal*, *iron*, *copper*, *lead*, *tin*, and *mercury*, together with the *precious metals*, in the south-western provinces.

¹ China is divided from Mongolia by the *Great Wall of China*, a vast rampart of earth, 10 to 30 feet high, which runs over hill and valley for 1250 miles.

² The Yang-tze is the longest river in the Old World, and is navigable for many hundred miles inland.

Population and Industry.—The population is said to number upwards of 360,000,000—about a fourth part of the human race.

China abounds in large cities, and the banks of its rivers and canals literally swarm with human life.

Education and Religion.—Education is general, and well advanced. The prevailing religion is Buddhism.

Industry.—The industry of China embraces alike agriculture, manufactures, and commerce.

1. Tillage is pursued with the utmost diligence, and *rice* constitutes the staff of life to the vast majority of the population.

2. *Silk* and *cotton* goods are largely made. The *earthenware* (or porcelain) manufacture is a characteristic branch of Chinese industry.

3. The trade of China is of immense amount. China supplies the rest of the world with *tea*, which is exported in vast quantities to Britain, France, the United States, and other countries. *Silk* and *nankeen* stuffs, *porcelain*, with lacquered and other ornamental wares, are also exported. *Opium*, which is consumed by nearly all classes of the Chinese, is imported from British India. *Pepper*, *betel-nut*, *sandalwood*, *ebony*, *ivory*, *mother-of-pearl*, and various articles of food, are obtained from the islands of the Indian Archipelago.

Government.—The government is a strict despotism, based throughout upon the assumption of parental authority.

The emperor is the recognised vicegerent of heaven, and the father of his subjects; through all the gradations of society the same notion of parental authority is carefully preserved. The *mandarins* (as the various civil and military officers are styled by Europeans) constitute nine different ranks, each subordinate to the one above it.

Divisions and Towns.—China is divided into eighteen provinces. It contains a great number of large cities, among the most important of which are:—

Pekin, on the Pei-ho, in the north-east.

Nankin, on the Yang-tze, 200 miles above its mouth.

Shang-hai, on the coast, at the entrance of the Yang-tze.

Han-kow, on the Yang-tze, 600 miles above its mouth.

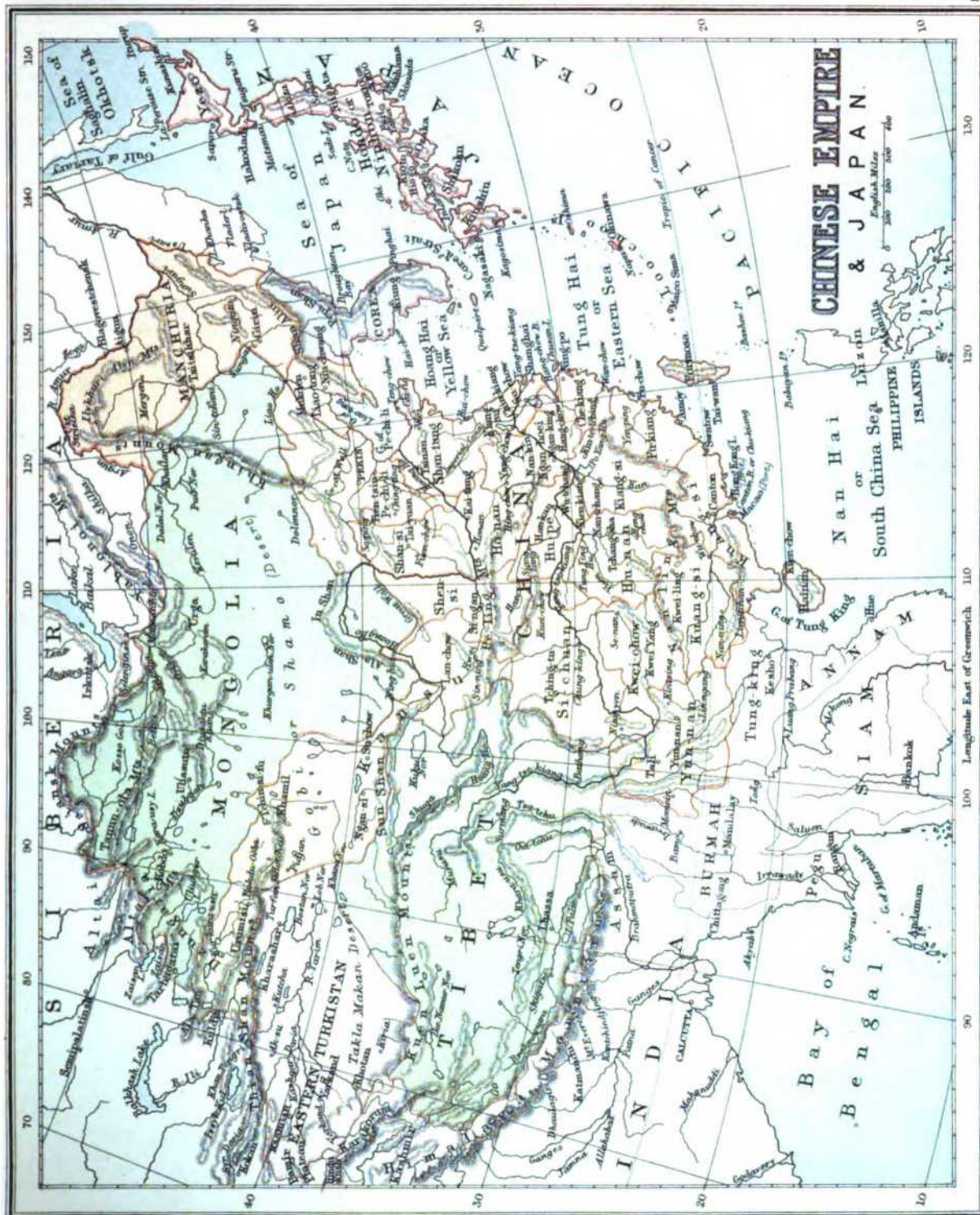
Hangchow, on the coast, at the S. termination of the Grand Canal.

Amoy, on an island adjoining the east coast.

Canton, at the head of an estuary of the Choo-kiang.

Fu-chow, near the east coast, on the river Min.

PEKIN is the capital of the Chinese empire, and is said to have 1,500,000 inhabitants. NANKIN ranks as the second city of China. SHANG-HAI and CANTON are the chief emporiums of the tea-trade. MACAO, at the entrance of the Canton river, belongs to Portugal.



GEORGE PHILIP & SON, LONDON & LIVERPOOL..

II. TIBET.

TIBET is an inland country, situated west of China. It is a vast plateau, 15,000 feet above the sea, bordered on the south by the stupendous range of the Himalayas, and crossed by other mountain-chains. Numerous rivers originate in this elevated region, and descend thence to the surrounding plains.

1. The climate of Tibet is cold; the habits of its people chiefly pastoral. Vast herds of sheep, mountain-goats, and buffaloes are reared. The fine hair of the Tibetan goat is woven into the shawls of Cashmere, which are extensively exported.

2. Though under the recognised sovereignty of China, the real ruler of Tibet is the Grand Lama, the high priest of the Buddhist religion—of which the town of *L'assa*, the capital of the country, is the head seat. *L'assa* contains the vast temple of the Grand Lama, which is annually visited by thousands of pilgrims from all parts of central Asia. A second Grand Lama (the Tesho Lama) resides at *Shigatze* (about 200 miles west of *L'assa*).

3. Ladakh and Little Tibet are mountainous regions lying to the westward of Tibet proper. They embrace the elevated tract of country which adjoins the north-western declivities of the Himalaya, and are thinly inhabited by a people of pastoral habits. Ladakh is now held by the British.

III. MONGOLIA.

MONGOLIA embraces a vast portion of Central Asia, stretching from Tibet and China to the border of Siberia, and including the desert tract of the Gobi, or Shamo. It consists for the most part of a succession of moderately-elevated plains, which have a gradual descent towards the region surrounding the lake of Lop and the course of the river Ergheu. The great chain of the *Thianshan*, or Celestial Mountains, stretches through central Asia in the direction of east and west, and forms a leading division in Chinese geography. The *Altai Mountains* divide Mongolia from Siberia on the north; and the *Kuen-lun*, or Tsung-Ling, from Tibet on the south. It is chiefly a pastoral region, inhabited by nomad tribes, whose wealth consists of their flocks and herds, who pass a large portion of their time on horseback, and are of warlike habits.

The entire belt of central Asia, from the banks of the Amour to those of the Volga, is termed by its wandering inhabitants the "Land of

Grass;" and vast tracts of pasture-ground, alternating at intervals with mountains, rivers, and lakes, constitute its characteristic feature. In such a region the aspect of social life remains almost unchanged from generation to generation. The Mongol of the present day is a shepherd and (when occasion requires) a warrior, as his ancestors were in the days of Timour and Genghiz Khan.

There are few towns of any importance within this territory. *Ula-sutai* and *Koblo*—the latter within the valley of a considerable river called the *Jabkan*—are among the most considerable.

IV. MANCHOORIA.

MANCHOORIA is an extensive country lying east of Mongolia, limited on the east by the Pacific Ocean, and on the north by the river Amour; a large portion of it, however, is now under Russian dominion.

Both Manchoooria and Mongolia were formerly included under the general appellation of Chinese Tartary. The chief town of the northern province is *Tsitsikar*, which lies on the bank of the Nonni, an affluent of the Sungari. The capital of the south-eastern province is *Kirin*, on the upper Sungari. Leaotong, the southernmost province of Manchoooria, is inhabited principally by Chinese, and is therefore regarded as an integral part of China proper. Its capital is *Moukden* (or Shinyang), a place of considerable size, lying one hundred miles inland from the Gulf of Leaotong.

V. COREA.

COREA is a peninsula which stretches southward from Manchoooria between the Yellow Sea and the Japan Sea. Its inhabitants are exceedingly jealous of intercourse with strangers, and the interior is unknown to Europeans.

The physical features of Corea are similar to those of Italy. The east coast of Corea is high and rugged: the level tracts along the Yellow Sea are skirted with numerous islands, of which the largest is *Quelpart*. Since the formation of the kingdom in 1392, the power of the Chinese government over the country has declined, and at present it is virtually independent. The form of government is an absolute monarchy, and the administration is based on that of China.

The capital is *King-ki-tao*, in the interior of the country. All external trade is confined to China and Japan; but it is probable that before long the government will be forced to open the country to foreign trade.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Name the countries that are included within the Chinese Empire.
2. How is China bounded? What is its extent?
3. Name the principal inlets and straits.
4. What two large islands lie off the coast of China?
5. Where is Hong-kong? What kind of island is it as to natural features? To what nation does it belong?
6. What is the general aspect of China as to natural features?
7. Name the four chief rivers of China.
8. By what characteristics is the climate of China distinguished?
9. Among the natural productions of China, which ranks first in importance? State what you know concerning it.
10. Mention some other of the natural productions of China, vegetable and mineral?
11. To what number is the population of China supposed to amount? What is the prevailing religion?
12. Give some particulars respecting the industrial pursuits of the Chinese people.
13. What constitutes the chief item in the foreign trade of China? What other articles do the Chinese export?
14. What articles do the Chinese derive from the East Indian Archipelago?
15. What form of government prevails in China?
16. Name the principal cities of China. Point out their places upon the map.
17. Upon what river is Nankin?
18. Where is Shanghai?
19. What kind of country is Tibet as to its physical features?
20. Of what religion is Tibet the seat? How is the head (or high priest) of this religion styled?
21. Name the chief city of Tibet, and find out its place upon the map.
22. What are the features of Mongolia? What desert does it include?
23. By what habits of life are the Mongols distinguished?
24. Where is Manchoooria? What river forms its northerly limit?
25. Where is Corea? By what are its inhabitants distinguished?

ASIATIC RUSSIA.

ASIATIC RUSSIA comprises three great divisions—the Caucasus, Siberia, and Central Asia.

I. THE CAUCASUS.

The Caucasus lies between the Black and Caspian Seas, and is divided into *Cis-Caucasia*, north, and *Trans-Caucasia*, south, of the great chain of Mount Caucasus.

The *Caucasus* has an area of 170,000 square miles, or nearly three times that of England and Wales.

Surface.—The greater part of the Caucasus is mountainous.

1. **Mountains.**—The chain of the *Caucasus* rises above the snow-line, and its highest summit reaches upwards of 18,000 feet. In the southern part of the country, near the borders of Persia and Turkey, is *Mount Ararat*, 17,000 feet high.

2. **Rivers.**—The chief rivers are the *Kouban*, which flows into the Black Sea; and the *Terek* and *Kour* (chief tributary the *Aras*), which flow into the Caspian Sea.

3. **Lakes.**—The largest lake is that of *Goukcha* or *Sevan*.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is liable to great extremes of heat and cold, but is temperate on the average of

the year. The productions of the soil include the vine, the mulberry, and the cotton-plant.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants number about 4,000,000, who comprise people of various races—Georgians, Circassians, Armenians, and others.

Industry.—There is scarcely any regular industry. *Agriculture* is pursued to a limited extent.

Divisions and Towns.—*Cis-Caucasia* is divided into three, and *Trans-Caucasia* into nine, governments.

The chief town north of the Caucasus is *Stavropol*. *Tiflis*, the capital of the whole territory, is on the river *Kour*. *Poti*, the chief port on the Black Sea. *Kars*, *Ardahan*, *Batoum*, and the surrounding territory, were ceded to Russia after the war with Turkey in 1877-78. *Erivan* is near the foot of Mount *Ararat*, on a tributary of the *Aras*.

II. SIBERIA.

Boundaries.—Siberia is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the east by the Pacific, on the south by the Chinese Empire and Central Asia, and on the west by Russia in Europe.

The area of Siberia is about 4,800,000 square miles, i.e., about eighty-four times the size of England and Wales.

Coasts.—The northern coasts of Siberia are washed by the Arctic Ocean. The eastern coasts are washed by Behring Sea, Sea of Okhotsk, and Japan, all opening into the Pacific.

1. **Capes.**—North-East Cape, the northernmost point of the Old World; East Cape, the most easterly point of Asia; Cape Lopatka, the extreme south point of Kamchatka.

2. **Inlets.**—Gulfs of Obi and Yenesei; Gulf of Anadir; Sea of Okhotsk; Sea of Japan, with the Gulf of Tartary.

3. **Islands.**—The principal are the *Liakhov Islands*, the *Aleutian Islands*, the *Kurile Islands*, and *Saghalien*.

Natural Features.—Siberia is a vast lowland plain. On its southern borders are the Altai Mountains, adjoining which the country is hilly, and in some parts fertile. Further to the north are immense level plains, or steppes, which become more barren and desolate as they approach the polar sea. In the extreme east is the peninsula of Kamchatka, through which runs a chain of lofty volcanic mountains.

Rivers.—Siberia has three great rivers, among the longest in the Old World. These are the *Obi*, *Yenesei*, and *Lena*, all flowing into the

Arctic Ocean. *Lake Baikal*, in the south of Siberia, is the largest fresh water lake in the Old World.

Climate.—The climate is cold. It is only in the south that a moderate temperature is experienced.

The extreme north of Siberia surpasses any other region on the globe in the intense severity of its winter, which lasts nearly ten months.

Productions.—The natural productions are of two kinds—metals and furs—both of great value.

Gold, *silver*, *lead*, *iron*, and *copper* are worked, principally among the mountain-regions of the Ural and Altai. The fur-bearing animals (*sable*, *otter*, &c.) are most abundant towards the east.

Inhabitants.—Siberia has about 3,500,000 inhabitants. Many of them are exiles, condemned to work in the mines.

Industry.—The native tribes are chiefly hunters and fishers, and those dwelling in the eastern parts of the country are in a semi-barbarous condition. The people of Kamchatka are of short stature, and use the dog for purposes of draught. The commerce of this region is principally with China. The Russian and Chinese traders meet at *Kiakhta*, to the south of Lake Baikal, on the border-line between the empires.

Divisions and Towns.—These are—

Divisions.	Towns.
WESTERN SIBERIA	Tobolsk, Ekaterinberg, Omak.
EASTERN SIBERIA	Irkutsk, Kiakhta, Yakutsk, Petropaulovsk.

IRKUTSK is the largest city of Siberia. It stands on the river *Angara*, a short distance below its issue from Lake Baikal. The town of *Petropaulovsk* is on the east coast of Kamchatka. *Tobolsk* is at the junction of the river *Tobol* with the *Irtysh*, the chief tributary of the *Obi*.

¹ Kars has been besieged and taken by the Russians three times, in 1825, 1855, and 1877.

III. RUSSIAN CENTRAL ASIA.

This division of Asiatic Russia extends from the river Ural and the shores of the Caspian Sea to the Altai and the Thian Shan Mountains.

The area of this region is upwards of 1,000,000 square miles, or nearly twenty times that of England and Wales.

Surface.—The principal features are (1) the *Kirghiz Steppe* in the north; (2) the mountainous districts on the west; (3) the desert north and east of the Sea of Aral; and (4) a sterile plateau between the Sea of Aral and the Caspian.

Rivers.—The *Irtish*, *Ishim*, and other tributaries of the Obi, on the north; the *Ili* on the east; and the *Amu* and *Syr* on the south.

Lakes.—The *Sea of Aral* and *Lake Balkash*, both of which are salt.

Climate and Productions.—Extremely hot in summer, and intensely cold in winter. Immense herds of cattle are reared on the steppes. Some tillage in the well-watered and fertile valleys in the south-east.

Inhabitants.—Central Asia has 3,500,000 inhabitants, an average of only three persons per square mile.

Divisions and Towns.—The Russian dominions in Central Asia are divided into nine governments and one district.

The chief towns are:—**Kokan**, **Tashkend** (the principal town in Russian Turkestan), **Khojend**, and **Samarkand**.

TURKESTAN.

TURKESTAN is an extensive region of Central Asia, reaching from the western limits of Mongolia nearly to the shores of the Caspian Sea.

Extent.—The total area of this vast region is probably not far short of a million and a half square miles, or about twenty-five times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—This region includes two great slopes—one of them, Eastern Turkestan, watered by the river *Tarim* (or *Ergheü*), which loses its waters in the lake of *Lop*; the other, Western Turkestan, inclining towards the Caspian and the Sea of Aral, and including the river valleys of the *Amu* and *Syr* (*Oxus* and *Jaxartes*), both of which flow into the Aral. Between the two slopes is the high mountain region of the *Pamir steppe*, with the *Belooortagh* and other lofty chains, containing many snowy peaks and vast glaciers.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of Turkestan is one of great extremes, and in the open plains the winters are excessively severe. But the watered valleys that occur within the mountain region yield fruits and grain in abundance.

Inhabitants.—The population is from 8,000,000 to 8,000,000—the greater number of the Mongol or Tartar race.

Industry.—The people of Turkestan are mostly cultivators of the soil, though some preserve the wandering habits of their forefathers, and occupy themselves chiefly with their flocks and herds. Silk is produced within the valley of the *Oxus*.

Divisions.—This vast region is broadly divided into Eastern Turkestan and Western Turkestan.

I.—EASTERN TURKESTAN now forms a province of the Chinese Empire. From 1864 to 1877 it formed an independent state under the Emir of Kashgar.

Eastern Turkestan is frequently called *Jetyshahr*, from its seven cities, of which the principal are *Kashgar*, *Yarkand*, and *Khotan*; all situated on the banks of affluents of the *Ergheü* river. *Kashgar*, the capital, is the most populous, but *Yarkand* is, commercially, the most important.

II.—WESTERN TURKESTAN includes Russian Turkestan, the independent Khanates of *Khiva* and *Bokhara*, and the Turkoman territory between the *Amu* and *Persia*.

1. **Russian Turkestan** forms a part of, and is therefore described under, Russian Central Asia.

2. **Khiva** has been greatly curtailed in the course of the wars with Russia. Its total area is about 20,000 square miles, and its population 700,000. The capital, *Khiva*, lies in the valley of *Amu*.

3. **Bokhara** includes a long strip of territory along the right bank of the *Amu*, and has an area of about 80,000 square miles, with a population of about 2,000,000. The capital is *Bokhara*.

4. The remaining portion of Turkestan, extending from the *Amu* to the borders of *Persia*, has an area of about 80,000 square miles, and consists for the most part of a sandy desert, on the borders of which dwell several warlike Turkoman tribes, some of which have been recently reduced to subjection by the Russians.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Asiatic Russia embraces three distinct territories—give their names, and point to each upon the map.
2. What kind of country is the Caucasus as to natural features?
3. Name the principal rivers of this region.
4. What lake lies within Trans-Caucasia?
5. Describe the climate and productions of the Caucasus.
6. What is the chief city of the Caucasus, and on what river does this stand?
7. Where is *Kars*, *Batoum*, *Stavropol*, and *Erivan*?
8. How is *Siberia* bounded?
9. What gulfs are on the north coasts of *Siberia*? What seas and inlets on its eastern side?
10. Name the principal islands.
11. Briefly describe the natural features of *Siberia*.
12. Name the three great rivers of *Siberia*.
13. What kind of climate has *Siberia*?
14. What natural productions of value belong to *Siberia*?
15. What are the chief pursuits of the native tribes?
16. At what place, on the Siberian and Chinese frontier-line, is commercial intercourse maintained between the Russians and the Chinese? What article do the Russian traders obtain from China?
17. Where are *Tobolsk*, *Omsk*, *Irkutsk*, and *Petrozavodsk*?
18. What are the boundaries of Russian Central Asia?
19. Briefly describe the chief natural features, climate, and productions of this region. Name the chief towns.
20. To what part of Asia is the name of Turkestan given?
21. Describe the natural features of Turkestan.
22. Name the principal rivers of this region, and trace their courses on the map.
23. By what is the climate of Turkestan distinguished? Which parts of the country are most productive?
24. State what you know of the people of Turkestan.
25. How is Turkestan divided?
26. State briefly what you know of Eastern and Western Turkestan.

MALAY ARCHIPELAGO.

The MALAY or EAST INDIAN ARCHIPELAGO lies south-east of the Asiatic continent.

Of the islands included within this region the largest are :—*Borneo, Sumatra, Celebes, Java, Philippine Islands, Molucca Islands, &c.*

Boundaries.—The Pacific Ocean, the China Sea, and the Indian Ocean enclose the East Indian Archipelago.

The various islands which it embraces are divided by numberless lesser seas and channels, among which are the following :—*Java Sea, Celebes Sea, Banda Sea, Flores Sea, and Mindoro (or Sulu) Sea.*

Straits.—The *Strait of Malacca*, between the Malay peninsula and the island of Sumatra; the *Strait of Sunda*, between the islands of Sumatra and Java; and the *Strait of Macassar*.

Climate.—The East Indian Archipelago is crossed by the equator, and is principally within the torrid zone. The climate is therefore hot, but less so than that of the adjacent continent. The whole region is within the range of the monsoons, and experiences a copious fall of rain at particular seasons.

Productions.—The natural productions are rich in the extreme. They include *gold and precious stones* in the mineral kingdom, and numerous valuable *fruits and spices* in the vegetable world.

The *nutmeg* and the *clove* belong to the smaller islands of the Molucca group—formerly called, from this circumstance, the Spice Islands. The tree which yields *gutta-percha* is a native of Borneo and some other of the islands. *Sago* is the produce of the most easterly islands.

Inhabitants.—The entire population is upwards of 30,000,000. Java alone has above 16,000,000 inhabitants, and the Philippine Islands above 7,000,000.

The native races are in a condition of semi-barbarism. The ruling people, in most of the islands, are Malays, who are skilful navigators and active traders.

Industry.—A large amount of trade is carried on. The English, Dutch, American, Chinese, and Malays, are the chief agents in it. *Spices, gutta-percha, coffee, indigo, sugar, cigars, and tortoise-shell,* are among the productions exported to Europe and America; *edible birds' nests* and the substance called the *tripang* are articles principally in demand among the Chinese.

Portions of the East Indian Archipelago belong to the Dutch, the Spanish, and the English.

1. The Dutch are masters of *Java, Celebes, of portions of Sumatra, Borneo, and the Molucca group.*

2. The Spaniards possess the *Philippine Islands.*

3. The English possess only the little island of *Labuan*, off the coast of Borneo; but a great part of the commerce of this region centres in Singapore.

Borneo is 270,000 square miles in area, or more than five times the size of England. It contains high mountains, navigable rivers, and dense forests; but its interior has not yet been explored by Europeans. The western and southern shores, with part of the east coast, belong to the Dutch. The province of *Sarawak*, on the north coast, has been ruled of late years by a British subject; but the larger portion of the island is divided amongst various native states, one of which includes the town and territory of *Borneo, or Bruni.* *Labuan Island* is off the mouth of a navigable river which leads to this town.

Sumatra is nearly three times the size of England. A chain of high mountains runs along its western coast. The chief stations of the Dutch are *Padang and Bencoolen*, on the western side of the island. There are numerous native states, one of the principal of which is *Acheen*, near its northern extremity.

Java is about 45,000 square miles in area—that is, not much less than the size of England. A chain of lofty volcanoes runs through the whole length of the island. Its chief city, *Batavia*, is the capital of the Dutch possessions in the East Indies. The smaller islands that stretch to the eastward of Java are chiefly Dutch. The Portuguese have a small settlement upon the north coast of Timor, the most eastwardly of the number.

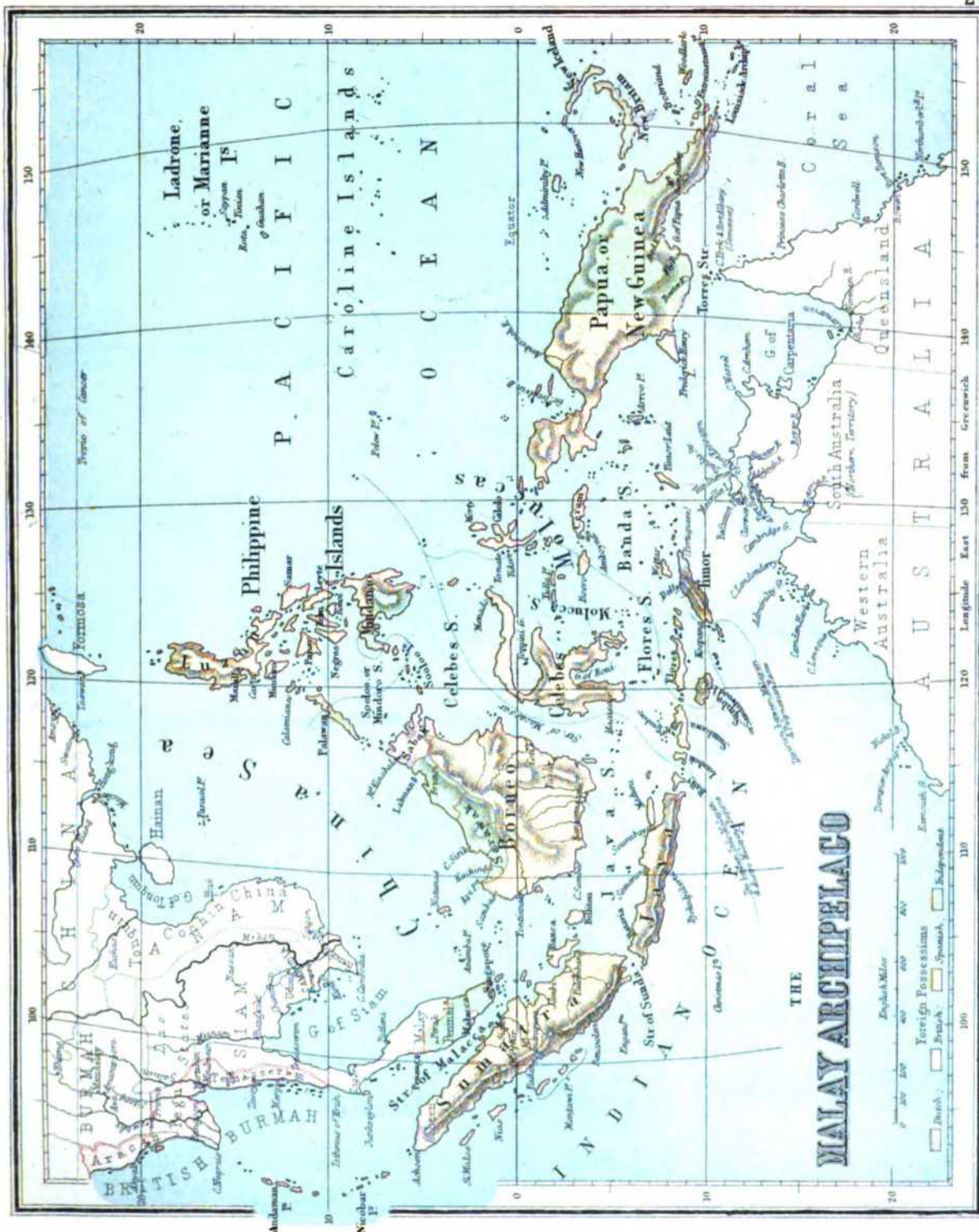
Celebes has an area of about 72,000 square miles, and forms one of the Dutch possessions. The chief town is *Macassar.*

The **Molucca Islands**, to the eastward of Celebes, are principally Dutch. The most important among them is the small island of *Amboyna.*

The **Philippine Islands** constitute one of the most important possessions of the Spanish crown. The largest of them is called *Luzon*, which is nearly equal to England and Wales in point of size. *Mindanao* is next in size. All the Philippine Islands are mountainous, watered, and fertile. They produce tobacco, sugar, and rice in abundance. The chief city is *Manilla*, situated on the island of *Luzon.* There are many English and American merchants settled at *Manilla*, which is the seat of an extensive trade.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- Where is the Malay Archipelago situated? Which of the islands are the largest?
- Name some of the seas and channels that divide the various islands of this region.
- What two straits form the principal channels of entrance to the archipelago from the side of the Indian Ocean?
- What kind of climate has the Malay Archipelago?
- Mention some of the natural productions of this part of the globe.
- In what articles does the trade of the archipelago chiefly consist? What nations are the most active agents in this trade?
- What portions of the East Indian Archipelago belong respectively to the Dutch, the Spaniards, and the English?
- Point to the island of Borneo on the map. How large is this island as compared with England? In what part of Borneo is the principality of Sarawak? Off what part of the coast is Labuan Island?
- Point to Sumatra. In which part of this island are the principal Dutch settlements? Mention their names.
- Point to Java, and say what you know concerning its natural features. Name the chief city of this island.
- Where is (a) the island of Celebes and (b) the group of the Moluccas? Which, among the smaller-islands of the Molucca group, is most important?
- Where are the Philippine Islands? Name the largest island of the group, and point out its place upon the map. What is its chief town called?



GEORGE PHILIP & SONS, LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

J A P A N.

JAPAN is an insular empire, situated to the eastward of the Asiatic continent, and within the Pacific Ocean. The largest island which it embraces is called *Nippon*; the next in size is *Jesso*.¹

Extent.—The whole area of Japan is 160,000 square miles, nearly three times the size of England and Wales.

Coasts.—Of great extent, and indented with magnificent natural harbours, such as the *Bays of Yedo* and *Osaka*.

Natural Features.—All the islands are mountainous. Several of the higher mountains are volcanoes. Fertile plains and valleys, watered by numerous rivers, extend between the mountains and the sea.

Climate and Productions.—The climate of Japan is temperate and healthy. Among its productions are included *gold, silver, iron, copper, and tin*; besides the *tea-plant* and the *mulberry*, with many trees that yield valuable *gums and resins*.

Inhabitants.—The population of Japan is estimated to be upwards of 34,000,000. The country bears uniformly the appearance of populousness, and the cities are of large size.

Religion.—The Japanese are mostly *Buddhists*; but the higher classes generally profess *Confucianism*.

¹ Besides Japan proper, the Kurile Islands to the north, and the Loo Choo Islands to the south, are included in the empire.

Industry.—The Japanese are an ingenious and a civilised people, though their civilisation, like that of all Oriental races, differs in many respects from European civilisation.

Their industry is displayed in the careful culture of the land, the good roads which connect the various towns and villages, their skillful manufacture of *silk, cotton, and japanned wares*. *Rice, cotton, tobacco, the tea-plant, and the mulberry*, are articles of extensive culture. The art of covering metals with varnish (*japanning*) derives its proper appellation from this country. Their *porcelain* displays much skill.

Government.—The government of Japan is an absolute monarchy, under a ruler known as the *Mikado*. The laws are severe, and the punishments sanguinary.

Divisions and Towns.—Japan is at present (1881) divided into thirty-five provinces. The principal towns are:—

Tokio,¹ the capital, on the south-east coast of Nippon. **Yokohama** forms its port, and is the chief seat of the foreign trade. **Saikio**, **Hakodadi**, and **Matmai**, are considerable commercial towns.

¹ Formerly called Jedo or Yedo. Population (1878) 1,030,000.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. In what part of Asia are the islands of Japan? What is the name of the largest island of the group?
2. What proportion does their magnitude bear, as a whole, to that of England and Wales?
3. What is known respecting the natural features of Japan?
4. Say what you know concerning the climate and productions of Japan.
5. Mention some particulars respecting the industry of the Japanese people. For what branches of manufacture are they distinguished?
6. Under what kind of Government is Japan? What is the prevailing religion?
7. How is Japan at present divided? What city is the capital?
8. Upon what islands are the towns of Yokohama, Saikio, Hakodadi, and Matmai? Point them out on the map.

AFRICA.

AFRICA lies to the south-westward of Asia, and to the south of Europe. Regarding it as a whole, this continent forms a vast peninsula, connected with the Asiatic continent by the Isthmus of Suez.

Boundaries.—Africa is bounded on the *north* by the Mediterranean Sea; on the *west* by the Atlantic Ocean; on the *east* by the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean; on the *south* by the Southern Ocean, a name which is given to the southwardly belt of water in which the Atlantic and Indian Oceans mingle.

Extent.—In point of size, Africa is more than three times larger than Europe, but nearly one-third smaller than Asia. Its area is about 12,000,000 square miles.

The greatest length from north to south is about 5,100 miles.

The greatest breadth from east to west is about 4,600 miles.

Coasts.—Remarkably regular and unbroken. Africa has, therefore, few gulfs or inlets of any extent.

1. **Capes.**—The following are the most important :—

(1.) On the *north*:—Bon, Blanco, Ceuta, and Spartel.

(2.) On the *west*:—Bojador, Blanco, Verde, Palmas, Lopez, and Frio.

(3.) On the *south*:—Good Hope and Agulhas.

(4.) On the *east*:—Corrientes, Delgado, and Guardafui.

Cape Blanco is the most northerly point of Africa. Cape Verde, the most westerly; Cape Guardafui, the most easterly; and Cape Agulhas, the most southerly.

2. **Inlets.**—The principal are :—

(1.) On the *north*:—The Gulfs of Sidra and Kabes.

(2.) On the *west*:—The Gulf of Guinea.

(3.) On the *south*:—False Bay and Algoa Bay.

(4.) On the *east*:—The Red Sea, Gulf of Aden, and Delagoa Bay.

3. **Channels and Straits.**—The principal are :—

(1.) *Strait of Gibraltar*, between Morocco and Spain.

(2.) *Mozambique Channel*, between Madagascar and the mainland.

(3.) *Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb*, between the Red Sea and the Gulf of Aden.

Islands.—The principal islands are :—

1. *In the Atlantic Ocean*:—Madeira, Canary Islands, Cape Verde Islands, Fernando Po, Princes Island, St. Thomas, Annabon, Ascension, St. Helena, Tristan d'Acunha.

2. *In the Indian Ocean*:—Madagascar, Bourbon, Mauritius, Comoro Islands, Seychelle Islands, Amirante Islands, Socotra.

Mountains.—The mountains of Africa may be divided into four systems, *northern*, *western*, *southern*, and *eastern*.

1. The **Northern System** embraces the chains of *Mount Atlas*, which stretch along the northern coasts, through Morocco, Algeria, and Tunis.

2. The **Western System** belongs to the western coasts of Africa, and includes the *Kong Mountains* and *Cameroon Mountains*.

3. The **Southern System** belongs to the extreme south of Africa, and includes the *Nieuweld*, the *Sneeberg*, and other ranges.

4. The **Eastern System** includes the *Drakensberg* or *Quathlamba Mountains*, the *Lupata Mountains*, the *Livingstone Mountains*, and the *mountains of Abyssinia*.

Tablelands.—The principal are:—The *Great African Plateau*, the *Plateau of Abyssinia*, the *Barca Plateau*, the *Plateau of Barbary*, and the *Plateau of Ahir or Asben*.

Plains.—The interior of Africa exhibits, for the most part, vast plains. In its *northern* half is the immense expanse of the Sahara, or Desert; and, further in the interior, the fertile lowland of central Africa, watered by the Niger and the rivers that belong to the basin of Lake Chad. In the *southern* half of Africa, the interior consists of plains which are moderately elevated, and bordered on either side by ranges of high ground.

Deserts.—The great natural feature of Africa is its Desert, or Sahara, which is by much the largest desert in the world. The Sahara stretches through 3,000 miles in the direction of east and west, and 1,000 miles from north to south. The general sterility of the Sahara is due to the absence of water, and the intense heat of the air, occasioned by the reflection of the sun's rays from an arid soil. But even the Sahara is not exclusively desert throughout. At distant intervals there occur watered spots, or *oases*, where a perennial spring serves to supply the wants of men and animals who cross the wilderness, and to nourish a limited extent of surrounding verdure. The most thoroughly barren portion of the Sahara is its westerly division—between Fezzan and the shores of the Atlantic—within which vast space the oases are generally at longer intervals apart than elsewhere. Extensive tracts are there covered with dry and heated sand, raised into hillocks, which shift their place under the influence of the burning wind known as the *simoom*, or *samiel*.

Rivers.—The chief rivers of Africa are :—

1. *Flowing into the Mediterranean Sea*:—The Nile.

2. *Flowing into the Atlantic Ocean*:—Senegal, Gambia, Rio Grande, Niger or Quorra, Congo or Livingstone, Coanza, and Orange.

3. *Flowing into the Indian Ocean*:—Zambesi, Limpopo.

(1.) The **Nile** is formed by two streams—the *Blue Nile*, which rises in the mountains of Abyssinia; and the *White Nile*, which has its source in the Victoria Nyanza, under the equator. The river discharges its waters into the Mediterranean by a delta, after a course of at least 3,000 miles. Chief tributaries, *Sobat* and *Atbara*.

(2.) The **Congo**, or Livingstone River, under the name of *Chambesi*, rises to the south of Lake Tanganyika, and flows through lakes Bangweolo, Moero, and Kamolondo. Its total length is about 2,900 miles.

(3.) The **Zambesi** is the largest river of eastern Africa, and rises under the name of *Leeba* in Lake Dilolo. It has a total course of 2,400 miles. 900 miles from the sea are the *Victoria Falls*.

Lakes.—The northern half of Africa contains the following :—*Lake Chad*, situated in Soudan; *Lake Dembea*, in Abyssinia; *Lake Keroun*, in Egypt. Of the lakes that have been discovered during recent years in central and south Africa, the chief are:—The *Victoria Nyanza* and *Albert Nyanza*, *Lake Tanganyika*, *Lake Nyassa*, and *Lake Ngami*.

Climate.—Africa is the hottest division of the globe. More than three-fourths of its extent fall within the torrid zone, and these portions of the continent exhibit a broad and unbroken mass of land, upon which the rays of a vertical sun act with intense power.

1. The vast expanse of the Desert (or Sahara), in particular, reflects an excessive amount of heat from its arid and waterless surface. The whole region forms a great natural furnace, the heated atmosphere generated in which is carried by the winds over distant lands and seas.



2. The climate of tropical Africa is for the most part dry, but a vast quantity of rain falls at particular periods of the year. The dry and rainy seasons succeed one another with perfect regularity. In the Desert, rain seldom occurs. But the plains of Central Africa, south of the Desert, and also the low districts of the eastern and western coasts, have regular and abundant rains, of annual recurrence.

3. The climate of tropical Africa is unhealthy to Europeans, excepting at a sufficient elevation to counteract the influences of intense heat, combined with the rank vegetation of the coasts. The extreme portions of Africa, both north and south, fall within the temperate zones. The plains and valleys of the Atlas region have a climate which resembles, in all essential regards, that experienced on the opposite shores of the Mediterranean. The Cape Colony, at the other extremity of the continent, is somewhat cooler.

Productions.—The chief productions are:—

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—*Gold-dust*, derived from the beds of numerous rivers within tropical Africa, has in all ages been an article of export. A part of Guinea is still distinguished as “the Gold coast,” though the quantity derived thence is now very small. The region of Mount Atlas includes ores of *iron*, *copper*, *lead*, and other metals. *Iron* and other useful ores occur within the Cape Colony and the tracts watered by the Zambesi. *Coal* occurs within the valley of the Zambesi.

2. **Vegetation.**—A vast number of the native plants of the African continent differ from those of other regions. But it is not until the Desert is passed that the difference becomes considerable. The rich fruits of southern Europe—the *fig*, *almond*, *orange*, *lemon*, *vine*, *mulberry*, and *peach*—all grow to perfection in the watered valleys of the Atlas. The plains that adjoin the southern base of the Atlas are the region of the *date-palm*, which is also seen in every oasis of the wilderness. But the Desert itself exhibits only a scanty covering of thorny shrubs and grasses, and its vast expanse forms a natural barrier to the passage of the various forms of life—vegetable and animal alike—that belong to the regions by which it is bounded upon either side.

The vegetation of Central Africa displays trees of vast size, and of species unknown elsewhere. Among its native plants are the *shea* or *butter-nut*, the *baobab* or *monkey-bread*, the *yam*, *ground-nut*, the *sugar-cane*, *indigo*, and *cotton-plant*; and also the *oil-palm*. The highlands south of Abyssinia are the native region of the *coffee-tree*.

The extreme south of Africa is a third zone of vegetable life, in which such plants as the *heaths*, *geraniums*, and various *bulbs*, hold the most conspicuous place.

3. **Animals.**—The *lion*, *hyena*, the *giraffe* or *cameleopard*, *zebra*, *hippopotamus*, *rhinoceros*, *elephant*, *camel*, and a great variety of the *ox* and *antelope* tribes, are among native African quadrupeds; the *ostrich* and the *guinea-fowl* among its birds, and the *crocodile* among its reptiles. Among the *apes* and other members of the monkey tribe, the *chimpanzee* and the *gorilla* of Western Africa make the nearest approach to the human figure.

Inhabitants.—Most of the inhabitants of Africa are *negroes*, of which branch of mankind this continent is the proper home.

1. The people of Northern Africa are *Berbers*, *Moors*, and *Arabs*, of swarthy complexion, but perfectly distinct from the Negro type. The wandering inhabitants of the Desert belong also to the Arab stock. It is not until the southern limit of the Sahara is passed that Negro Africa begins. This is the region known in African geography as Soudan—i.e., the land of the blacks, or Negro-land.

2. The dark skin, thick lips, and woolly hair of the negro, are among the distinguishing features of that race. But there are numerous points of difference between the various Negro nations.

3. The extreme south of this continent is peopled by other varieties of the human family. The native races of Southern Africa are *Hottentots* and *Kaffirs*.

Religion.—The bulk of the people in central and south Africa are idolaters—making a “fetish” or god of any object. *Mohammedanism* prevails throughout Northern Africa. *Christianity* is professed not only by the European colonists in Africa, but also by the Copts of Egypt, and, in a corrupted form, by the Abyssinians.

Divisions.—The following are the main divisions:—

1. NORTHERN AFRICA.
2. EGYPT.
3. NUBIA.
4. ABYSSINIA.
5. CENTRAL AFRICA.

6. WESTERN AFRICA.
7. EASTERN AFRICA.
8. SOUTHERN AFRICA.
9. ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. How is Africa bounded, and what is its position with reference to the other divisions of the Old World?
2. What proportion does Africa bear, in point of size, to the European and Asiatic continents?
3. Name some of the principal capes of Africa.
4. What two gulfs occur on the Mediterranean coasts of Africa?
5. What gulf is on the west side of the African continent? What arms of the sea on its eastern side?
6. Name the principal islands of Africa.
7. Africa has four distinct mountain systems. Name the principal ranges in each system.
8. State what you know of the tablelands, plains, and deserts of Africa.
9. Name the principal rivers of the African continent. Describe briefly the following rivers:—The Nile, Congo.
10. What lakes belong to Africa, and which are the largest of the number?
11. By what is the climate of Africa distinguished?
12. What portions of Africa enjoy a temperate climate, and why?
13. Say what you know of the mineral productions of Africa?
14. Mention some of the fruits that flourish in Northern Africa.
15. What part of Africa is specially distinguished as the region of the date-palm?
16. Mention some of the distinguishing features of African vegetation south of the great desert.
17. What class of plants are found in the extreme south of Africa?
18. Mention some of the animals and birds that are found in Africa.
19. Of what branch of the human family is Africa the special home? By what peculiarities of appearance is this variety of mankind distinguished?
20. What races of people constitute the inhabitants of Northern Africa?
21. Point on the map to those parts of the African continent which are the native seat of the Negro race. By what name is this region known in African geography?
22. What native races belong to the extreme south of the African continent?
23. Name the main divisions of Africa.

THE ATLAS REGION, OR NORTHERN AFRICA.

NORTHERN AFRICA embraces four distinct countries, known as MOROCCO, ALGERIA, TUNIS, and TRIPOLI. Morocco is the most westerly of the four, Tripoli the most easterly. They form together a continuous region, which stretches along the shores of the Mediterranean and a portion of the Atlantic.

Natural Features.—*Mount Atlas* is the most conspicuous among the physical features of this region. The *plains* between the Atlas and the sea, and the valleys enclosed within the mountain region, are the most fertile portions of the territory. The hill-sides towards the Mediterranean and Atlantic are luxuriantly wooded.

Northern Africa has no large *rivers*, but there are numerous winter-torrents as well as some perennial streams of moderate size. The *climate* is warm, and generally healthy. The rains are copious, but confined to particular seasons.

Inhabitants.—The whole population of Northern Africa perhaps amounts to 14,000,000, and includes *Kabyles* or *Berbers*, who dwell among the mountains, and are supposed to be the descendants of the aborigines; *Moors*, who are a mixed race, dwelling in the cities; and *Arabs*, who occupy the open country, and dwell for the most part in tents. Algeria, which belongs to France, has also among its inhabitants a great many Europeans, chiefly French. The least populous portion of the entire region is Tripoli.

Productions.—The native productions of Northern Africa include *wool*, *gum*, *bees'-wax*, *dates*, *olive-oil*, *esparto-grass*, and *goatskins*. These are exported, and the manufactures of Europe introduced in their place. *Morocco leather* is prepared with peculiar skill from the skin of the native goat. The culture of *cotton*, *tobacco*, the *cochineal-plant*, and *indigo*, has been introduced into Algeria.

Divisions.—North Africa includes the following states:—(1) Morocco; (2) Algeria; (3) Tunis; (4) Tripoli.

1. **Morocco** is bounded on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, and has the Mediterranean Sea on a part of its northern frontier. On the south it is limited by the desert.

Morocco (or Marocco) has an area of about 260,000 square miles, and a population variously estimated at from three to eight millions. The

form of *government* is that of an absolute monarchy, under a sultan or emperor. The chief towns of Morocco are:—*Morocco*, *Fez*, and *Mequinez*, three inland cities, situated near the western foot of the Atlas. *Mogadore* and *Tangier* are the chief ports.

2. **Algeria** lies to the east of Morocco. The Mediterranean Sea bounds it to the northward, and the desert to the south.

Algeria has an area of nearly 200,000 square miles, and a population of about 3,000,000. Algeria has formed, since 1830, a province of France. The chief towns are:—*Algiers*, the capital, on the Mediterranean coast; the ports of *Oran* and *Bona*; and *Constantine*, an inland town.

3. **Tunis** is east of Algeria. On the north and east it has the Mediterranean, on the south the Desert.

Tunis has an area of about 45,000 square miles. Its inhabitants number about 1,500,000. Tunis is governed by a Bey; but the government is now virtually under the control of the French Minister residing at Tunis. The chief towns are:—*Tunis*, the capital; *Goletta*, *Kairouan* (the spiritual capital of Tunis), and *Biserta*, an important port on the north coast.

4. **Tripoli** is to the east of Tunis. It consists of a long and narrow strip of country, between the Mediterranean and the Desert, the sands of which approach closely to the sea throughout, and in some places advance into its waters.

Tripoli, with Fezzan and Barca, has a total area of 344,000 square miles, the greater part of which is absolutely barren desert. Tripoli forms a province of the Turkish empire, and is ruled by a Pasha, who resides at *Tripoli*, the capital, on the Mediterranean coast. The chief town of Fezzan is *Mourzuk*. *Barca* lies to the east of Tripoli. *Benghazi*, a small seaport, is the capital.

EGYPT.

EGYPT is the lower portion of the Nile valley, extending from the coast of the Mediterranean up to the First Cataract, a distance of between five and six hundred miles.

Boundaries.—Egypt proper is bounded by the Mediterranean Sea on the *north*; by Nubia on the *south*; on the *east* by the Red Sea; and on the *west* by the Desert.

Extent.—The area of Egypt proper is estimated at 175,130 square miles, or three times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Egypt has two great natural features—the river *Nile* and the *Desert*. Cultivation is limited to the lands that immediately adjoin the former, and over which its inundations reach.

Towards its mouth the Nile divides into two arms, distinguished as the Rosetta and Damietta branches: the space enclosed between is called the Delta. This forms a watered and fertile plain. The Nile overflows

its banks annually, and lays the whole valley of Middle and Upper Egypt under water. Before returning to its proper channel, the river deposits a fertilising mud upon the inundated land, and the seed thrown upon this moistened soil returns an abundant harvest. The climate of Egypt is warm and dry, rain being of rare occurrence.

Inhabitants.—Egypt has 5,600,000 inhabitants, the vast majority of them belonging to the Arab race.¹

Religion.—The inhabitants are principally *Mohammedans*. The Copts, however, are members of the *Christian Church*.

Industry.—The industry is principally agricultural.

Wheat, *cotton*, *flax*, *sugar*, *hemp*, *tobacco*, *coffee*, *saffron*, *mulberries*, and *dates*, are among the productions of Egypt.

Government.—Egypt is nominally a province of the Turkish Empire, but the Khedive, as the present ruler is styled, is virtually independent.

¹ There are a few descendants of the ancient Egyptians, or *Copts*, and also Turks, with Armenians, Syrians, Jews, and Europeans.

Divisions.—The Nile valley is divided, within Egypt, into Lower, Middle, and Upper. The chief towns are:—

Divisions.	Chief Town.	Other Towns.
LOWER EGYPT .	Alexandria.	Rosetta, Damietta, Suez.
MIDDLE EGYPT .	Cairo.	Ghizeh.
UPPER EGYPT .	Siout.	Kenneh, Assouan.

CAIRO, the capital, and *Alexandria*, the chief seaport, are the only two large cities of Egypt. Cairo stands on the right bank of the Nile, and communicates by railway with both Alexandria and Suez. Alexandria is to the west of the Nile, on the Mediterranean coast. *Rosetta* and *Damietta*, at the mouths of the Nile, are seaports of much smaller importance. *Port Said*, to the eastward of Damietta, is the Mediterranean terminus of the Suez Canal. *Suez* is at the head of the *Red Sea*, and is the southern terminus of the canal. Egypt possesses numerous remains of ancient art, amongst them the Pyramids and the ruins of Thebes, both upon a scale of colossal magnitude.

NUBIA.

Boundaries.—On the north by Egypt; east, by the Red Sea; south, by Abyssinia; and west, by the Desert.

Natural Features.—The great features of Nubia, like those of Egypt, are the *Nile valley* and the *Desert*. The two arms of the river—called respectively the *Blue Nile* and the *White Nile*—unite their waters at the town of Khartum, in Upper Nubia: lower down, the Nile is joined by the river *Tecazze*, or *Atbara*.

The valley of the Nile is much narrower in Nubia than in Egypt, and the extent of cultivable land is proportionately less. The sands of the Desert approach, in some places, close to the river's bank.

Climate.—The climate is hotter than that of Egypt.

Productions.—The *acacia*, *mimosa*, *date-palm*, *sugar-cane*, *senna-plant*, and *ebony-tree*, are among the productions of Nubia.

Inhabitants.—Nubia has about 1,000,000 inhabitants.

By far the greater part of the country is an arid wilderness, tenanted principally by wild beasts. The industry of its few inhabitants is exclusively agricultural: they grow the grain called *dhourrah*, together with *tobacco*, and live in part upon *dates*.

Government.—Nubia is subject to Egypt, and is ruled by a governor, resident at Khartum. *Kordofan* and *Darfur*, west of Upper Nubia, are subject to the same rule.

Towns.—The chief towns are *Khartum* (the capital), *Sennaar*, and *New Dongola*, all on the Nile. Khartum is near the point of junction of the Blue and White Niles. *Souakin*, on the Red Sea, is the only port of Nubia.

ABYSSINIA.

Abyssinia lies south-east of Nubia. It is limited to the east by lofty mountains, between which and the Red Sea there intervenes a low and heated plain.

Natural Features.—Abyssinia is a highland region. It consists of lofty table-lands, crossed by mountain-chains, the summits of which are covered with snow.

The upper portions of the Blue Nile and the Atbara, with Lake Tzana, or Dembea, are in Abyssinia. The climate is hot in the lower valleys, but temperate and healthy on the upland plains.

Inhabitants.—Abyssinia has about 5,000,000 inhabitants, composed of warlike and semi-barbarous races. The ruling people are the Galla, a race of cruel and savage warriors.

Divisions.—Abyssinia, formerly a powerful kingdom, had within recent times become broken up into several distinct

states, which are at present nominally united under a single ruler. The principal divisions and towns are:—

Divisions.	Chief Town.	Other Towns.
TIGRE . .	Adowa . .	Antalo, Sokota.
AMHARA . .	Gondar . .	Debra-Tabor, Magdala.
SHOA . .	Aukobar . .	Angolala, Amba.

GONDAR, the ancient capital, lies to the northward of Lake Dembea. *Debra-Tabor* is to the eastward of that lake: *Magdala* (stormed by the British in 1868), farther to the south-east. *Massawah*, a port on the Red Sea, which forms the principal approach to Abyssinia, belongs to Egypt. *Zeyla*, on the shore of Annesley Bay, to the southward of Massawah, also belongs to Egypt.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- What four countries are embraced within Northern Africa?
- What constitute the chief natural features of this region?
- What races of people are found among the inhabitants of this region?
- Say what you know concerning the industry and productions of this part of Africa?
- Describe briefly the physical features, productions, industry, government, and chief towns of Morocco, Algeria, Tunis, and Tripoli.
- What three countries are comprehended within the region watered by the Nile? Point them out upon the map.
- How is Egypt bounded, and what are its two great natural features?
- By what is the Nile, in its course through Egypt, distinguished?
- What kind of climate has Egypt?
- To what race do the majority of the people of Egypt belong? What are their chief pursuits?
- What articles of produce does Egypt furnish to other lands?
- How is Egypt divided? Point out these divisions on the map.
- Which are the two largest among the cities of Egypt? Point them out upon the map.
- Where are Rosetta, Damietta, Suez, Port Said, Siout, and Assouan?
- Under what government is Egypt?
- How is Nubia bounded? What are its chief natural features?
- What kind of climate has Nubia? Name some of its vegetable productions.
- What towns does Nubia contain? Which of them is the capital?
- How is Abyssinia situated with regard to Nubia? By what sea is it bounded to the eastward?
- What kind of a country is Abyssinia as to natural features?
- Say what you know concerning the people of Abyssinia?
- Into what three states is Abyssinia divided? Name the chief towns in each.

CENTRAL AFRICA.

Boundaries.—The plain of Central Africa is bounded on the north by the Sahara, or Desert; on the south by the Kong Mountains and the unknown regions of the interior; on the east it adjoins the regions of the Upper Nile; on the west, that in which the rivers Senegal and Gambia originate.

Extent.—This region measures 3,000 miles in the direction of east and west, and 1,000 in that of north and south.

Natural Features.—Central Africa is a fertile and watered plain, of vast extent. It includes the basin of Lake Chad, and the chief part of the river Niger.

1. *Lake Chad* is a fresh-water lake, and varies greatly in extent with the seasons of rain or drought. It receives the Shary and Yeou, but has no outlet.

2. The river *Niger* rises near the western extremity of the Kong Mountains. It is joined in its lower course by the Benue river, and afterwards flows, through an opening in the mountain region, into the Gulf of Guinea.

Climate.—The climate of Central Africa is amongst the hottest on the globe, but it is free from the unhealthy influences of the coast. The seasons of rain and drought succeed one another with undeviating regularity.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants of this region are principally negroes—intermixed with Arab and Moorish races, who are for the most part in

a condition of superior social advancement to the Negro tribes, and are consequently the ruling people.

The Negro populations of Central Africa are at least partially civilised. They have settled habits of life, cultivate their fields, weave cotton cloth, and dye it with bright colours. Many of their towns are of considerable size, and the courts of the native kings display a rude kind of splendour. The slave-trade has always been the curse of Negro Africa, and the bane of every effort hitherto made for its enlightenment.

Religion.—The negroes are generally heathen: the remainder of the population Mohammedan.

Productions.—The commercial productions are *gold-dust*, *ivory*, and *ostrich feathers*, together with *slaves*. The merchants engaged in the trade of this region are principally Moors, who form caravans for the purpose of crossing the Desert.

Divisions.—The divisions of Central Africa are numerous and fluctuating in extent.

One of the most important localities is *Timbuctoo*, which stands on the north side of the Niger, a few miles distant from that river. *Timbuctoo* is a centre of considerable caravan-traffic; but it consists only of mud-built houses, and is surrounded by a mud wall. *Sego*, on the Niger, is a town of some size. *Kano* and *Kashna*, further to the east, are also of some size, and the former has considerable commerce.

WESTERN AFRICA.

Western Africa extends along the coast of the Atlantic from the border of the Desert southward to the latitude of Cape Frio—a range of between 3000 and 4000 miles.

This extended range of coast exhibits a succession of low *plains*, backed by high grounds at some distance inland.

The rivers of Western Africa, within the tropics, are the Senegal, Gambia, Grande, Niger, Congo, and Coanza. The climate of the whole region is intensely hot, and exceedingly unhealthy to Europeans.

Inhabitants.—The native inhabitants are throughout of Negro race, and, as in other parts of Negro Africa, form numerous petty kingdoms, frequently at war with one another, and in a condition of semi-barbarism. A few Europeans are settled at various points on the coast.

Productions.—The productions of Western Africa are *palm-oil*, *bees'-wax*, and various *gums*, together with *gold-dust*, *ivory*, and *ostrich feathers*. *Slaves* were formerly largely deported from some parts of the coast, chiefly to the south of the equator.

Divisions.—Western Africa is divided, north of the equator, into *Senegambia* and *Guinea*: to the south of that line, into *Loango*, *Congo*, *Angola*, and *Benguela*.

Senegambia is the region watered by the rivers Senegal and Gambia.

Guinea extends along the shores of the Gulf of Guinea, and includes the native kingdoms of Ashantee, chief town *Coomassie*; Dahomey, chief town *Abomey*; and Yarriba, chief town *Abbeokouta*. The ports of Badagry and Lagos are on the eastern part of the Gulf of Guinea.

Liberia, a settlement of negroes, consisting of liberated slaves from the United States, occupies a part of the coast between Senegambia and Guinea, to the westward of Cape Palmas. Its chief town is *Monrovia*.

Great Britain, France, and Portugal have settlements upon the western coasts of the African continent.

1. The **British possessions** in Western Africa consist of the settlements on the *Gambia*, *Sierra Leone*, *Cape Coast Castle*, and *Lagos*.

(1.) The British possessions on the Gambia consist of *St. Mary Island* and the town of *Bathurst*, at the mouth of the river; *Fort James*, situated 30 miles above the mouth; and *Macarthy Island*, 250 miles up the river.

(2.) *Sierra Leone* is a peninsula situated about midway between the Gambia river and Cape Palmas. It was originally established (in 1787) as a place of refuge for liberated negroes, who form the chief part of its population. The capital of the settlement is *Freelown*, on the estuary of the river Rokelle.

(3.) *Cape Coast Castle* is the principal of the British settlements on the Gold Coast. *Lagos*, considerably farther to the eastward, also belongs to Britain. *Elmina*, and a few other settlements, formerly Dutch, were transferred to Britain in 1871.

2. The **French settlements** in this region consist of *Fort St. Louis*, at the mouth of the Senegal, and the island of *Goree*, near Cape Verde.

3. The **Portuguese possessions** are principally to the south of the equator. They include the provinces of Angola (chief town, *St. Paul de Loanda*) and Benguela (chief town, *St. Philip*).

EASTERN AFRICA.

The *coasts* of Eastern Africa, from the equator southward to Delagoa Bay, exhibit a general resemblance to those on the opposite side of the continent—that is, low, hot, and moist *plains* along the coast, backed by high grounds in the interior, with a *luxuriant vegetation* and an *unhealthy climate*. The *native population* is chiefly negro. The *commercial productions* include gold dust, ivory, gums, bees' wax, ostrich feathers, but the total amount of the trade is inconsiderable.

Divisions.—Three foreign powers—the British, Portuguese, and the Arabs—exercise sway over this portion of the African continent.

1. To the British now belongs the *Delagoa Bay* district.
2. The Portuguese possessions reach from the neighbourhood of Delagoa Bay northward to Cape Delgado. They include the territories of Sofala and Mozambique, with the towns of *Mozambique*, *Quillimane*, *Sofala*, and *Inhambane*, situated on the coast, and *Sena* (on the river Zambesi), in the interior.
3. The coast subject to Arab rule reaches from Cape Delgado to the equator. It includes the towns of *Quiloo*, *Zanzibar*, and *Mombas*, all situated on islands which adjoin the mainland. Zanzibar is the capital of the Sultanate which was formerly a dependency of Muscat in Arabia. To the westward of this region is the tract of country which contains the large lakes of Tanganyika, Nyassa, Shirwa, and others.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Point out upon the map the limits which mark out the plain of Central Soudan. 2. What are the chief natural features of Central Africa? Name its chief river, and the great lake which it includes. 3. What kind of climate has this region? 4. What race of people are intermingled with the Negro population of this region? 5. What are the habits of life among the Negro people of this part of the world? What constitutes the chief obstacle to their improvement? 6. Name the chief commercial productions of this region. 7. Mention some of the principal towns in this part of Africa. 8. What are the chief natural features of the western coast-region of Africa? 9. What kind of climate has Western Africa? 10. What commercial productions belong to Western Africa? 11. What divisions does Western Africa embrace to the northward of the equator? What divisions to the south of that line? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 12. Where are Ashantee and Dahomey? What is the chief town of each? Point out their localities on the map. 13. Where is Liberia, and what is the name of its chief town? 14. What European nations possess settlements on the coasts of Western Africa? 15. Name and point out on the map the British settlements in this region. 16. Name and point out the French settlements. 17. What parts of Western Africa are subject to the Portuguese? 18. Say what you know concerning the climate and commercial productions of the eastern coasts of Africa. 19. What foreign powers rule over the chief part of Eastern Africa? Point to the respective localities subject to each. 20. Point on the map to the towns of Mozambique, Quillimane, Quiloo, and Zanzibar. |
|--|--|

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

THE southern extremity of the African continent comprehends two distinct and extensive provinces under British rule—namely, the *Cape Colony* and *Natal*; and two independent Dutch republics, known as the *Transvaal* and the *Orange Free State*.

I. THE CAPE COLONY.

The Cape Colony derives its distinguishing name from the Cape of Good Hope. It includes that part of Africa which is to the south of the Orange river, and which extends thence to the Atlantic and Southern oceans.

Extent.—The area of the Cape Colony is about 220,000 square miles, which is equal to four times the size of England and Wales.

Capes.—*Cape Agulhas* and the *Cape of Good Hope* are the two most important headlands of South Africa.

Surface.—The Cape Colony consists of a series of plains, which stretch in the general direction of east and west, and are divided from one another by successive chains of hills. These reach their greatest altitude in the Nieuveveld Mountains, the highest points of which are 10,000 feet above the sea. The arid and gravelly plain along the southern base of the Nieuveveld chain is called the *Great Karroo*.

Rivers.—The rivers of the Cape Colony are the *Orange* (or *Gariep*), on its northern border, with the *Oliphant*, *Breede*, *Gauritz*, *Gamtoos*, *Great Fish*, *Keiskamma*, and *Great Kei*.

Climate.—The climate is dry, temperate, and healthy—better suited, on the whole, for pastoral industry than for agricultural operations.

Inhabitants.—The population numbers nearly 750,000, including both white and coloured races.

The whites are partly of British and partly of Dutch descent, for the colony was originally planted by the Dutch. The natives include *Hottentots* and *Kaffirs*—the latter being by much the more numerous.

Industry.—Sheep and cattle farming is the most important pursuit of the settlers at the Cape. A great quantity of *wool* is annually exported to England, with *skins*, *hides*, and *tallow*. Some *wine* is also exported.

Government.—By a governor, appointed by the British Crown, and a colonial parliament.

Divisions and Towns.—The Cape Colony forms two great divisions—an eastern and western. The chief place in the westerly division is *Cape Town*, which is the capital of the colony. Cape Town stands on the shore of Table Bay, a little to the northward of the Cape of Good Hope, and in the immediate vicinity of a well-known mountain, called, from its flat top, Table Mountain. The chief towns in the easterly division of the colony are *Graham's Town* and *King William's Town*. *Port Elizabeth* and *East London* are rising seaports.

Griqualand West, Basutoland, and other territories, are politically attached to the Cape Colony.

Griqualand West is chiefly famous for its valuable *diamond* mines. *Kimberley*, in the centre of the diamond fields, is the capital.

Basutoland, a mountainous region drained by the headwaters of the Orange river. South of Basutoland are the native districts of *Griqualand East* and the *Transkei*, also attached to the Cape Colony.

II. NATAL.

NATAL lies to the north-east of the Cape Colony.

Boundaries.—Its boundaries are: on the north, the river Tugela; on the south, the river Umfama; on the east, the Indian Ocean; on the west, the Draken-berg or Kathlamba Mountains.

Extent.—The area of the province is 18,000 square miles, or little more than one-third the size of England.

Natural Features.—Natal consists, along the coast, of a low plain, which rises gradually towards the interior. Its longest river is the Tugela, which flows into the Indian Ocean.

Climate.—The climate is warmer than that of the Cape.

Productions.—The *sugarcane* and the *cotton-plant* flourish; but *wheat* and other productions of temperate latitudes flourish on the higher plains of the interior.

Inhabitants.—The great majority of the population are *Kaffirs*. The whites, who number about 22,000, are chiefly *British* and *Dutch*.

Industry.—Pastoral industry occupies the chief attention of the settlers. *Sugar, coffee, arrowroot, wool, &c.*, are exported.

Towns.—The capital of Natal is the *Pietermaritzburg*, in the interior: the chief port is *Durban*. The colony is under the rule of a governor, appointed by the British Crown.

III. THE ORANGE RIVER FREE STATE.

The ORANGE FREE STATE is bounded on the *north* by the Transvaal, on the *west* and *south* by Griqualand West and the Cape Colony, and on the *east* by Basutoland and Natal.

The area of the Free State is estimated at 40,000 square miles, little more than that of Ireland; and its population, who are mainly of Dutch descent, number about 50,000. They are mostly engaged in sheep-farming, and *wool* forms the principal article of export. Among its mineral productions are *diamonds* and other precious stones. *Ostrich-farming* is also an important industry. The government is republican in form. The small town of *Bloemfontein* is the capital.

IV. THE TRANSVAAL.

The TRANSVAAL comprises an extensive territory lying beyond the Vaal river: hence its name.

1. The area of the Transvaal is estimated at 100,000 square miles, or about twice that of England and Wales. The white population (mainly Boers) number about 40,000, and are almost entirely engaged in pastoral pursuits. Immense numbers of sheep and cattle are reared, and *wool* and *hides* are largely exported.

2. The Transvaal was annexed by the British in 1877; but it has recently been restored to the Boers, who have re-established the republican form of government. The capital is *Pretoria*, but *Potchefstroom* is the largest town.

V. ZULULAND.

ZULULAND is bounded on the *east* by the Indian Ocean, and on the *west* and *south* by the Transvaal and Natal.

The area is estimated at about 15,000 square miles, with a population of 300,000. Previous to the war of 1879, Zululand was independent under Cetshwayo; but after the defeat of his army and his capture, the country was parcelled out among a number of chiefs, who are under the control of a British Resident.

ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

With the exception of Madagascar and the Comoro Islands, the African Islands belong to various European nations.

1. *Belonging to Spain* :—

The **Canary Islands** are situated in the Atlantic Ocean. The largest of them is *Teneriffe*, the peak of which reaches 12,236 feet above the sea. The second in size bears the name of *Grand Canary*. All the islands are fertile, healthy, and productive. Corn, dates, figs, lemons, the vine, sugar, tobacco, cochineal, and barilla, are among their productions. Population, 227,000, wholly of Spanish descent. The chief towns are *Santa Cruz* (on *Teneriffe*) and *Palmas* (on *Grand Canary*).

Fernando Po is the largest of four islands situated in the Gulf of Guinea. It is fertile, but unhealthy, and has but few settlers on it. The chief town, *Clarence*, is chiefly inhabited by liberated negroes.

2. *Belonging to Portugal* :—

Madeira has been already described (see page 33).

The **Cape Verde Islands** are situated in the Atlantic, west of Cape Verde. They are less fertile than either *Madeira* or the *Canaries*, but produce sugar, oranges, and other fruits. Population, 85,000. *Mindello* (on *St. Vincent*) and *Ponta Praya* (on *Santiago*) are the chief towns.

Prince's Island and **St. Thomas** are both in the Gulf of Guinea. Their population consists chiefly of natives, among whom are a few Portuguese settlers.

Annabon is claimed both by Spain and Portugal.

3. *Belonging to Great Britain* :—

St. Helena is in the South Atlantic, 1,200 miles distant from the nearest point of the African mainland. It is about one-third the size of the *Isle of Wight*, and rises to 2,700 feet above the sea. The population is about 7,000. *James Town* is the capital.

Ascension is rather smaller than *St. Helena*. It is 800 miles distant from that island, and 1,000 miles from *Cape Palmas*, on the African continent. It is used chiefly as a station for the British cruisers in the adjacent seas.

Tristan d'Acunha is the largest of three islands which lie 2,000 miles to the westward of the Cape of Good Hope. It is a barren rock—on which, however, are a few residents.

Mauritius, in the Indian Ocean, is a beautiful and fertile island, 676 square miles in area—about five times larger than the *Isle of Wight*. It is hilly, the highest elevation reaching nearly 3,000 feet. Sugar, coffee, and cotton are its chief articles of produce. The population numbers above 320,000, the greater number of them derived from the hill regions of Hindostan. Many of the white inhabitants are of French descent. The chief town is *St. Louis*.

Roderigue is to the eastward of Mauritius. The **Seychelle Islands**, and also the **Amirantes**, are to the northward. All of these are dependencies of Mauritius.

Socotra is a large island to the east of *Cape Guarlafui*. Its inhabitants are chiefly Arabs, and the island now belongs to Great Britain.

4. *Belonging to France* :—

The island of **Ré-union** or **Bourbon**, situated in the Indian Ocean, to the south-west of Mauritius, and is rather larger than that island. It contains an active volcano. The population numbers 210,000. Sugar, cloves, and coffee are produced. The chief town is *St. Denis*.

5. *Independent* :—

Madagascar, one of the largest islands on the globe, has an area of 200,000 square miles, or four times the size of England. Its interior is mountainous, with a belt of fertile but unhealthy lowland round the coast. The native population is believed to number between four and five millions. They are under a native sovereign, whose capital is the town of *Tananarivo*, in the centre of the island.

The **Comoro Islands** are situated in the Mozambique Channel. They are four in number, and form a native kingdom. One of them, however, *Mayotta*, is the seat of a French settlement.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. What colonies does Great Britain possess in Southern Africa?
2. What are the boundaries and natural features of the Cape Colony?
3. Name some of the principal rivers of the Cape Colony.
4. Say what you know concerning the climate and productions of the Cape Colony.
5. What races of people are found in the Cape Colony?
6. What are the chief pursuits of the settlers at the Cape?
7. Name the chief towns of the Cape Colony.
8. What famous mountain is in the vicinity of Cape Town?
9. Point on the map to the colony of Natal, and say what you know concerning its natural features, climate, and productions.
10. What race of people constitutes the chief population of Natal?
11. Name the capital, and chief seaport, of Natal.
12. What other territories are included within Southern Africa?

13. State what you know of the Orange River Free State.
14. Describe briefly the Transvaal.
15. Give some account of Zululand.
16. Among the islands of Africa, which belong (1) to Spain, (2) to Portugal, (3) to Great Britain, (4) to France?
17. Point to the following upon the map:—Teneriffe, Madeira, Fernando Po, Ascension, St. Helena, Tristan d'Acunha, Mauritius, the Seychelle Islands, and Socotra.
18. Name the chief towns of each of the following islands:—Madeira, St. Helena, Mauritius, and Bourbon.
19. What constitutes the chief produce of Mauritius?
20. What natural feature does the island of Bourbon exhibit?
21. Give some account of Madagascar.
22. Where are the Comoro Islands?

AMERICA.

AMERICA, or the New World, extends north and south between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans from the 80° N. to 55° S. lat., a distance of more than 9000 miles. The width of the American continent varies exceedingly, being 3100 miles under the 45th parallel N. lat., 3200 miles under the 5th parallel S. lat., while the intermediate isthmus is at one part only 28 miles across. Compared with the Old World the greatest dimensions

of America are from north to south, while those of the Old World are from east to west.

This Western Continent, as it is sometimes called, comprehends two great divisions, called *North and South America*. These are united by the Isthmus of Panama. Each of these divisions is continental in point of magnitude, North America having an area of 8,600,000 square miles, and South America 7,000,000 square miles, while the total length of the coast-line of both divisions is not far short of 40,000 miles.

NORTH AMERICA.

Boundaries.—North America is bounded on the *north* by the Arctic Ocean, on the *east* by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the *west* by the Pacific Ocean. To the *south* it passes into a narrow region, and finally terminates in the Isthmus of Panama.

Extent.—The area of North America is estimated at 8,600,000 square miles, which is considerably more than double the size of Europe, but scarcely half that of Asia. The *greatest length*, from north to south, is 4,500 miles; the *greatest breadth*, from east to west, is 3,100 miles.

Coasts.—The eastern coasts of North America are much more irregular than the western.

1. Inlets.—The principal inlets are:—

- (1.) On the *east*, Baffin Bay, Hudson Bay, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Bay of Fundy, Gulf of Mexico, and Caribbean Sea.
- (2.) On the *west*, the Gulf of California, an arm of the Pacific.
- (3.) On the *north*, the Gulf of Boothia, an arm of the Arctic Ocean.

2. Capes.—The principal are:—

- (1.) On the *north*—Capes Barrow and Bathurst.
- (2.) On the *east*—Capes Farewell, Charles, Race, Breton, Sable (Nova Scotia), Cod, Hatteras, Sable (Florida), Catoche, Gracias-à-Dios.
- (3.) On the *west*—Capes Prince of Wales and St. Lucas.

* * *Cape Charles* is the most eastwardly point of North America, and *Cape Prince of Wales* the most westwardly point. The extremity of Boothia peninsula forms the most northerly point of the mainland; *Cape Columbia*, the most northerly point of land at present known; its latitude is 83° 7' north.

3. Peninsulas.—The principal are:—

- (1.) On the *east*—Labrador, Nova Scotia, Florida, and Yucatan.
- (2.) On the *west*—Lower California and Alaska.
- (3.) On the *north*—Melville Peninsula and Boothia Peninsula.

4. Isthmus.—The most important isthmus in the New World is that of Panama, which connects North and South America.

Islands.—The principal islands are:—

1. On the *east*—the West Indies, the Bermuda Islands, Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, Anticosti, and a few small islets in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.
2. On the *north*—Greenland, Cumberland Island, Southampton Island, Cockburn Island, North Devon, Grinnell Land, Grant Land, the Parry Islands, Banks Land, Victoria Land, Boothia, and other little known tracts of land that lie to the west and north of Baffin Bay.
3. On the *west*—Vancouver Island, Queen Charlotte Islands, and the Islands of the Sitka Archipelago.

Surface.—The highlands of the New World stretch in the general direction of north and south. North America has two great mountain-systems—the *Rocky Mountains* and the *Alleghany Mountains*; the former towards the western side of the continent, the latter near its eastern shores.

1. The highest points of the *Alleghany Mountains* scarcely exceed 6,000 feet; the *Rocky Mountains* reach 16,000 feet. Between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific is a succession of highland regions, with elevated mountain groups on the immediate borders of the ocean. One portion of this region consists of the *plateau of Utah*, a tract enclosed by mountain-chains on every side.

2. The narrower portion of the New World—between the Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Sea upon one side, and the Pacific on the other—consists of table-lands, bordered by low plains on either side. The *table-lands of Mexico* reach 9,000 feet above the sea.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. What colonies does Great Britain possess in Southern Africa?
2. What are the boundaries and natural features of the Cape Colony?
3. Name some of the principal rivers of the Cape Colony.
4. Say what you know concerning the climate and productions of the Cape Colony.
5. What races of people are found in the Cape Colony?
6. What are the chief pursuits of the settlers at the Cape?
7. Name the chief towns of the Cape Colony.
8. What famous mountain is in the vicinity of Cape Town?
9. Point on the map to the colony of Natal, and say what you know concerning its natural features, climate, and productions.
10. What race of people constitutes the chief population of Natal?
11. Name the capital, and chief seaport, of Natal.
12. What other territories are included within Southern Africa?
13. State what you know of the Orange River Free State.
14. Describe briefly the Transvaal.
15. Give some account of Zululand.
16. Among the islands of Africa, which belong (1) to Spain, (2) to Portugal, (3) to Great Britain, (4) to France?
17. Point to the following upon the map:—Teneriffe, Madeira, Fernando Po, Ascension, St. Helena, Tristan d'Acunha, Mauritius, the Seychelle Islands, and Socotra.
18. Name the chief towns of each of the following islands:—Madeira, St. Helena, Mauritius, and Bourbon.
19. What constitutes the chief produce of Mauritius?
20. What natural feature does the island of Bourbon exhibit?
21. Give some account of Madagascar.
22. Where are the Comoro Islands?

AMERICA.

AMERICA, or the New World, extends north and south between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans from the 80° N. to 55° S. lat., a distance of more than 9000 miles. The width of the American continent varies exceedingly, being 3100 miles under the 45th parallel N. lat., 3200 miles under the 5th parallel S. lat., while the intermediate isthmus is at one part only 28 miles across. Compared with the Old World the greatest dimensions

of America are from north to south, while those of the Old World are from east to west.

This Western Continent, as it is sometimes called, comprehends two great divisions, called *North and South America*. These are united by the Isthmus of Panama. Each of these divisions is continental in point of magnitude, North America having an area of 8,600,000 square miles, and South America 7,000,000 square miles, while the total length of the coast-line of both divisions is not far short of 40,000 miles.

NORTH AMERICA.

Boundaries.—North America is bounded on the *north* by the Arctic Ocean, on the *east* by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the *west* by the Pacific Ocean. To the *south* it passes into a narrow region, and finally terminates in the Isthmus of Panama.

Extent.—The area of North America is estimated at 8,600,000 square miles, which is considerably more than double the size of Europe, but scarcely half that of Asia. The *greatest length*, from north to south, is 4,500 miles; the *greatest breadth*, from east to west, is 3,100 miles.

Coasts.—The eastern coasts of North America are much more irregular than the western.

1. Inlets.—The principal inlets are:—

- (1.) On the *east*, Baffin Bay, Hudson Bay, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Bay of Fundy, Gulf of Mexico, and Caribbean Sea.
- (2.) On the *west*, the Gulf of California, an arm of the Pacific.
- (3.) On the *north*, the Gulf of Boothia, an arm of the Arctic Ocean.

2. Capes.—The principal are:—

- (1.) On the *north*—Capes Barrow and Bathurst.
- (2.) On the *east*—Capes Farewell, Charles, Race, Breton, Sable (Nova Scotia), Cod, Hatteras, Sable (Florida), Catoche, Gracias-à-Dios.
- (3.) On the *west*—Capes Prince of Wales and St. Lucas.

* * Cape Charles is the most eastwardly point of North America, and Cape Prince of Wales the most westwardly point. The extremity of Boothia peninsula forms the most northerly point of the mainland; Cape Columbia, the most northerly point of land at present known; its latitude is 83° 7' north.

3. Peninsulas.—The principal are:—

- (1.) On the *east*—Labrador, Nova Scotia, Florida, and Yucatan.
- (2.) On the *west*—Lower California and Alaska.
- (3.) On the *north*—Melville Peninsula and Boothia Peninsula.

4. **Isthmus.**—The most important isthmus in the New World is that of Panama, which connects North and South America.

Islands.—The principal islands are:—

1. On the *east*—the West Indies, the Bermuda Islands, Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, Anticosti, and a few small islets in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.
2. On the *north*—Greenland, Cumberland Island, Southampton Island, Cockburn Island, North Devon, Grinnell Land, Grant Land, the Parry Islands, Banks Land, Victoria Land, Boothia, and other little known tracts of land that lie to the west and north of Baffin Bay.
3. On the *west*—Vancouver Island, Queen Charlotte Islands, and the Islands of the Sitka Archipelago.

Surface.—The highlands of the New World stretch in the general direction of north and south. North America has two great mountain-systems—the *Rocky Mountains* and the *Alleghany Mountains*; the former towards the western side of the continent, the latter near its eastern shores.

1. The highest points of the *Alleghany Mountains* scarcely exceed 6,000 feet; the *Rocky Mountains* reach 16,000 feet. Between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific is a succession of highland regions, with elevated mountain groups on the immediate borders of the ocean. One portion of this region consists of the *plateau of Utah*, a tract enclosed by mountain-chains on every side.

2. The narrower portion of the New World—between the Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Sea upon one side, and the Pacific on the other—consists of table-lands, bordered by low plains on either side. The *table-lands of Mexico* reach 9,000 feet above the sea.

3. The interior of North America, from the Gulf of Mexico northwards to the Arctic Ocean, is a vast lowland plain. This plain includes the region of the *prairies*, covered with a luxuriant growth of long grass, and diversified at intervals by tracts of forests. The river Mississippi and its tributaries water the southwardly division of the great plain.

Rivers.—The principal rivers of North America, named in the order of the seas into which they flow, are :—

1. On the east :—

Flowing into the Gulf of Mexico—Mississippi, Grande del Norte.
Flowing into the Gulf of St. Lawrence—St. Lawrence.
Flowing into Hudson Bay—Nelson, Churchill, Severn, Albany.
Flowing into the Atlantic Ocean—Connecticut, Hudson, Delaware, Susquehanna, Potomac, James, Roanoke, Savannah, Alatomaha.

2. On the west :—

Flowing into the Pacific Ocean—Fraser, Oregon, Sacramento.
Flowing into the Gulf of California—Colorado.

3. On the north :—

Flowing into the Arctic Ocean—Mackenzie, Coppermine, and Back.

* * The *Mississippi* is the longest river on the globe, its length by the *Missouri* arm being 4,000 miles. The *Missouri* rises in the Rocky Mountains, and joins the *Mississippi* about midway between the source of that stream and its outlet in the Gulf of Mexico. The *St. Lawrence* has a much shorter course than the *Mississippi*; but it pours into the sea an immense volume of water, derived from the great lakes of which it forms the outlet.

Lakes.—The principal lakes, and the countries in which they are situated, are as follow :—

Winnipeg, Athabasca, Great Slave Lake, Great Bear Lake, in the North-West Territory—*Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario*, between Canada and the United States—*Michigan, Champlain*, and the *Great Salt Lake*, in the United States—*Nicaragua and Leon*, in Central America.

* * *Lake Superior* is the largest fresh-water lake on the globe. *Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, and Ontario*, are united by connecting channels; and the river *St. Lawrence*, which flows out of *Lake Ontario*, carries their surplus waters to the sea. Between *Ontario* and *Erie* are the *Falls of Niagara*, the most stupendous on the globe.

Climate.—The countries of the New World are somewhat colder, in correspondent latitudes, than those of the Old World, and they have generally a greater quantity of rain.

The eastern coasts of North America, and also its interior plains, are liable to great extremes of heat and cold at opposite seasons, whilst its western shores have a more equable temperature. The West Indies, the coasts of Central America, the low plain at the foot of the Mexican plateau, and the southernmost portions of the United States, are the hottest regions of North America. The coldest parts are those that stretch from *Hudson Bay* towards the Arctic Ocean.

Productions.—The precious metals, as well as the more useful metals and minerals, are abundantly distributed. The native vegetation is also particularly rich and varied.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—The mineralogy of America is rich and varied. The country lying to the west of the Rocky Mountains is one of the chief gold-producing regions of the world. California, within the United States, and British Columbia, further to the northward, are the great localities of auriferous deposit. Mexico is also a region of great mineral wealth, and its mines supplied at a former period considerable amounts of gold and silver. The countries on the eastern side of North America, especially in the neighbourhood of the Alleghany Mountains and the *St. Lawrence* basin, are rich in the more useful pro-

ductions of the mineral kingdom—iron and other metals, with coal. The coal-fields of the United States are of vast extent and great value. Coal also occurs in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton.

2. **Vegetation.**—The native vegetation of the New World differs from that of the eastern hemisphere. Many of the plants and trees that are common in the Old World are not found upon the opposite side of the Atlantic Ocean; while, on the other hand, the productions of the American soil are in numerous instances peculiar to that part of the globe. Among food-plants native to the American continent are *maize*, the *potato*, and the *manioc* (or cassava). The first named is the only one of the cereals that is indigenous to the American soil. The root of the *manioc* or cassava supplies the chief article of nutriment to the Indian population of tropical America. The *potato* has been carried from the temperate regions of the western world over every portion of the civilised globe; as also has *tobacco*, another of the plants native to the American soil. Plants of the *cactus* tribe are among the native productions of North America, as also are the *azalia*, *magnolia*, and the *aloe*. The forests of the New World are of vast extent.

3. **Zoology.**—(1.) Neither the horse, the ass, the common ox and sheep, the hog, the camel, nor the elephant, are native to the New World. Among carnivorous quadrupeds, the lion, tiger, leopard, and hyena, are unknown in the American wilderness. The *puma* and the *jaguar*—natives of tropical America—are the most formidable of its carnivora, but are inferior in strength and ferocity to the lion and tiger of the Old World. In the higher latitudes of North America there are numerous *wolves*, *foxes*, and *bears*, with the Canadian *lynx*; and the *moose-deer* or elk supplies a parallel to the rein-deer of northern Europe.

(2.) The *bison*, or American buffalo, is one of the most characteristic animals native to the American prairie, but it has never been domesticated. The *musk-ox*, and other members of the deer kind, also occur. The *beaver*, and numerous fur-bearing animals, abound in the colder latitudes of the American continent.

(3.) The birds of America, and also the reptiles, insects, and other members of the animal world, are in nearly all cases different from those of other continents. The true *humming-birds* are peculiar to America. The *rattle-snake* and the *boa-constrictor* are also American.

(4.) The domestic cattle of the Old World are now reared in the plains of the western continent. The *horse*, *ox*, and *sheep*, all originally introduced by Europeans, abound throughout its vast extent.

Inhabitants.—The population of North America numbers about 68,000,000, above three-fourths of them the descendants of European colonists. Less than a fourth consist of negroes, native Indians, and mixed races.

1. The native man of America is the red (or copper-coloured) Indian—one of the five leading varieties into which the family of mankind is commonly divided. The numbers of the American Indian race have vastly diminished since the settlement of Europeans in the New World.

2. The white population of the United States and the *St. Lawrence* valley comprehends members of most European lands; but those of British descent are by far the most numerous. The white population of Mexico and the Central American states is almost exclusively of Spanish origin.

Divisions.—The principal divisions of North America are :—

1. BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

QUEBEC.
 ONTARIO.
 NEW BRUNSWICK.
 NOVA SCOTIA.
 PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.
 NORTH-WEST TERRITORIES.
 MANITOBA.
 NEWFOUNDLAND.

2. THE UNITED STATES.

3. MEXICO.

4. CENTRAL AMERICA.
 GUATEMALA.
 SAN SALVADOR.
 BRITISH HONDURAS.
 HONDURAS.
 NICARAGUA.
 COSTA RICA.

5. THE WEST INDIES.



EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. What isthmus connects North and South America?
2. By what oceans is North America bounded on the east, north, and west?
3. What, in round numbers, is the area of North America? What proportion does this bear to the magnitude of Europe? What to that of Asia?
4. Name the seas, gulfs, &c., on the east side of North America.
5. Point to the following on the map:—The Gulf of Boothia, Gulf of California, Gulf of St. Lawrence, and Bay of Fundy.
6. What strait forms the entrance to Baffin Bay? What to Hudson Bay?
7. What strait and sound connect Baffin Bay with the Arctic Ocean?
8. Name as many as you can of the principal capes of North America. Which is the most northerly? Which the most westerly?
9. What four peninsulas belong to the eastern side of North America?
10. What two peninsulas are on the western side of this continent?
11. Name as many as you can of the islands of North America.
12. Name the two chief mountain-systems of North America. Which of the two reaches the greater altitude?
13. What kind of country extends along the Pacific coasts of North America, between the Rocky Mountains and the sea?
14. In what part of North America are the following:—Mount St. Elias, the plateau of Utah, and the tablelands of Mexico?
15. What portions of North America form a great lowland plain? By what mountains is this bordered on the east and west?
16. What are prairies, and in what part of North America do they occur?
17. Among the rivers of North America, which two flow into the Gulf of Mexico? Which one into the Gulf of St. Lawrence?
18. What two rivers flow into Hudson Bay? Trace out their courses on the map.
19. Name as many as you can of the North American rivers that flow directly into the Atlantic, and find them out upon the map.
20. What four rivers belong to the Pacific coasts of North America? Which one of them flows into the Gulf of California?
21. What three rivers flow into the Arctic Ocean?
22. Among the rivers of North America, which two are of superior importance to the others?
23. Which is largest among the lakes of North America? What four other lakes, of large size, are connected with this?
24. Point on the map to the following:—Lake Winnipeg, Great Bear Lake, Lake Athabasca, Lake Nicaragua, and the Great Salt Lake.
25. Describe the climate of the New World.
26. Which are the hottest parts of North America? Which the coldest?
27. What parts of North America constitute rich gold-producing regions?
28. In what parts of North America are coal and iron abundant?
29. In what respect do the plants and animals that are found within the New World in the present day differ from those which characterised it three centuries and a-half since?
30. Among food-plants mention some that are indigenous to the New World.
31. Among the domesticated quadrupeds name some that were unknown to the New World at the period of its discovery by Europeans.
32. Mention the principal native American quadrupeds.
33. Mention some of the characteristic examples among birds and reptiles.
34. To what division of the family of man do three-fourths of the population of North America belong?
35. Besides the above, what other families of mankind are represented in the population of America?

BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

THE British territory in North America is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the south by the United States; on the east by the Atlantic; on the west by the Pacific Ocean and the United States.

1. This vast area comprehends upwards of 3,600,000 square miles, the whole of which is now comprehended within the "Dominion of Canada," which stretches across the entire breadth of the mainland, from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

2. Large portions of this immense region, embracing the valley of the St. Lawrence and the shores of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, with part of the Winnipeg basin, and the country lying west of the Rocky Mountains, have been colonised—the St. Lawrence valley and adjacent seacoast at a comparatively early period, the other portions within a much more recent date.

3. The St. Lawrence valley, from the Great Lakes to the sea, constitutes Canada proper. New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Prince Edward Island, formerly distinct colonies, together with British Columbia, the province of Manitoba, and the North-West Territory, are federally united with Canada proper, and form portions of the "Dominion of Canada," which thus includes the whole of British North America, except the island of Newfoundland, which is still a distinct colony.

Natural Features.—The river St. Lawrence, and the magnificent chain of lakes from which it issues, are the chief natural features of Canada.

Climate.—The climate, though perfectly healthy, is severe within Lower Canada (Quebec); but Upper Canada (now Ontario) enjoys a more genial temperature. Every part of Canada is fertile. The climate and soil of the neighbouring provinces do not differ in any material degree from that of Canada.

Productions.—The vast forests of *pine* which cover large portions of the St. Lawrence valley form its chief natural wealth. The mineral resources are very considerable. *Iron, lead, copper,* and other metals, are abundant in Canada: *coal* occurs in New Brunswick, and also in Nova Scotia and Cape Breton Island.

Inhabitants.—The "Dominion of Canada" includes a population of more than 4,350,000. Newfoundland, which is not included within the federation, has above 146,000.

The population of Canada proper undergoes rapid increase by immigration from Great Britain and Ireland. In Lower Canada (or Quebec) the majority of the inhabitants are of French origin.

Industry.—The labours of the field and the forest are the prime objects of the Canadian settler's industry.

Wheat, timber, and other *forest-produce* (as pot and pearl-ash), are exported. The extensive *fisheries* pursued in the neighbourhood of Newfoundland furnish the chief employment of its people.

Government.—The "*Dominion of Canada*" comprehends the four provinces of Ontario (Upper Canada), Quebec (Lower Canada), New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia, to which Manitoba, Prince Edward Island, British Columbia, and the North-West Territory, have since been added.

Each province has a lieutenant-governor and a local legislature—the whole combining in the election of a general parliament, sitting at Ottawa, and presided over by a Governor-General of the entire "Dominion."

Divisions and Towns.—The provinces and chief towns of British North America are shown in the following table:—

Provinces.	Chief Towns.
1. QUEBEC	Quebec, Montreal.
2. ONTARIO	Ottawa, Toronto, Kingston.
3. NEW BRUNSWICK	St. John, Fredericton.
4. NOVA SCOTIA	Halifax, Sydney.
5. PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND	Charlotte Town.
6. BRITISH COLUMBIA	New Westminster.
7. VANCOUVER ISLAND	Victoria.
8. NORTH-WEST TERRITORY	Battleford.
9. MANITOBA	Winnipeg.
10. NEWFOUNDLAND	St. John's.

1. **Quebec** includes that portion of the St. Lawrence valley which is towards the mouth of the river and below the junction of the Ottawa. The principal towns are:—*Quebec*, the capital of the province, and the former capital of all Canada, on the north bank of the river St. Lawrence; *Montreal*, farther up the St. Lawrence, on an island in the river; and *Three Rivers*, at the confluence of the St. Maurice and the St. Lawrence.

2. **Ontario** lies between Quebec on the east, the North-West Territory on the north, and the Great Lakes on the south. Ontario is by far the most important province in British North America. The principal towns are:—*Ottawa*, the capital of the "Dominion of Canada," on the river Ottawa; *Toronto*, the provincial capital, on the north-west shore of Lake Ontario; and *Kingston* is situated at the outlet of the St. Lawrence from Lake Ontario.

3. **New Brunswick** borders on the western side of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is bounded on the south by the Bay of Fundy, on the east by the state of Maine, and on the north by the extreme south-eastern portion of the province of Quebec. The chief towns are:—*Fredericton*, the capital, on the river St. John; *St. John*, at the outlet of the river into the Bay of Fundy.

4. **Nova Scotia** is a peninsula lying to the south-east of New Brunswick. The adjoining island of **Cape Breton** is politically attached to Nova Scotia. The principal towns are:—*Halifax*, the capital of Nova Scotia; and *Sydney*, the chief town of Cape Breton Island.

5. **Prince Edward Island** is within the southern portion of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, adjacent to the shores of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. The only town of importance is *Charlotte Town*, the capital.

6. **British Columbia** includes the tract of country lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean, and extending northward from the United States frontier to one of the branches of the Peace River. *New Westminster*, on the Fraser, is the chief town; but the capital of the colony is *Victoria*, the chief town in Vancouver Island, which was formerly a distinct colony, but is now attached to British Columbia.

7. The **North-West Territory**, formerly called the *Hudson Bay Territory*, embraces a vast region, which stretches from Canada to the Rocky Mountains and the Arctic Ocean. It includes the whole tract of country watered by the rivers that fall into Hudson Bay (of which the *Nelson* and the *Churchill* are the principal), besides the valleys of the *Mackenzie*, *Coppermine*, and *Back* rivers, in the direction of the Polar Sea. *Lake Winnipeg* is within the southern portion of the territory. The great river *Saskatchewan*, formed by the junction of two branches which rise in the Rocky Mountains, flows into this lake on its north-western shore, as a stream called the Red River does from the southward. The river *Nelson* issues from the northern extremity of the lake, and connects it with Hudson Bay. The Hudson Bay Company maintain several fortified posts or stations, the principal of which is *Fort York*. Four districts have been recently formed out of the North-West Territory, viz., *Keewatin*, *Saskatchewan*, *Quapelle*, *Bow* River. The whole of these territories are at present under the rule of a Lieutenant-Governor and Council. The capital and seat of government is *Battleford*, on the Canadian Pacific railroad, at the junction of the Battle river and the North Saskatchewan.

8. The tract adjoining the southern end of Lake Winnipeg, formerly known as the *Red River Settlement*, was in 1870 formed into the province of **Manitoba**. The chief town and seat of government is *Winnipeg*, on the left bank of the Red River.

9. **Newfoundland** is a large island which forms the eastern limit of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is surrounded in other directions by the Atlantic Ocean. The cod-fishery on the Great Bank of Newfoundland is the most important in the world, and fishing is almost the only occupation of the people. *St. John's*, *Newfoundland*, is not only the capital of the colony, but is the only place deserving to be called a town which the island contains.

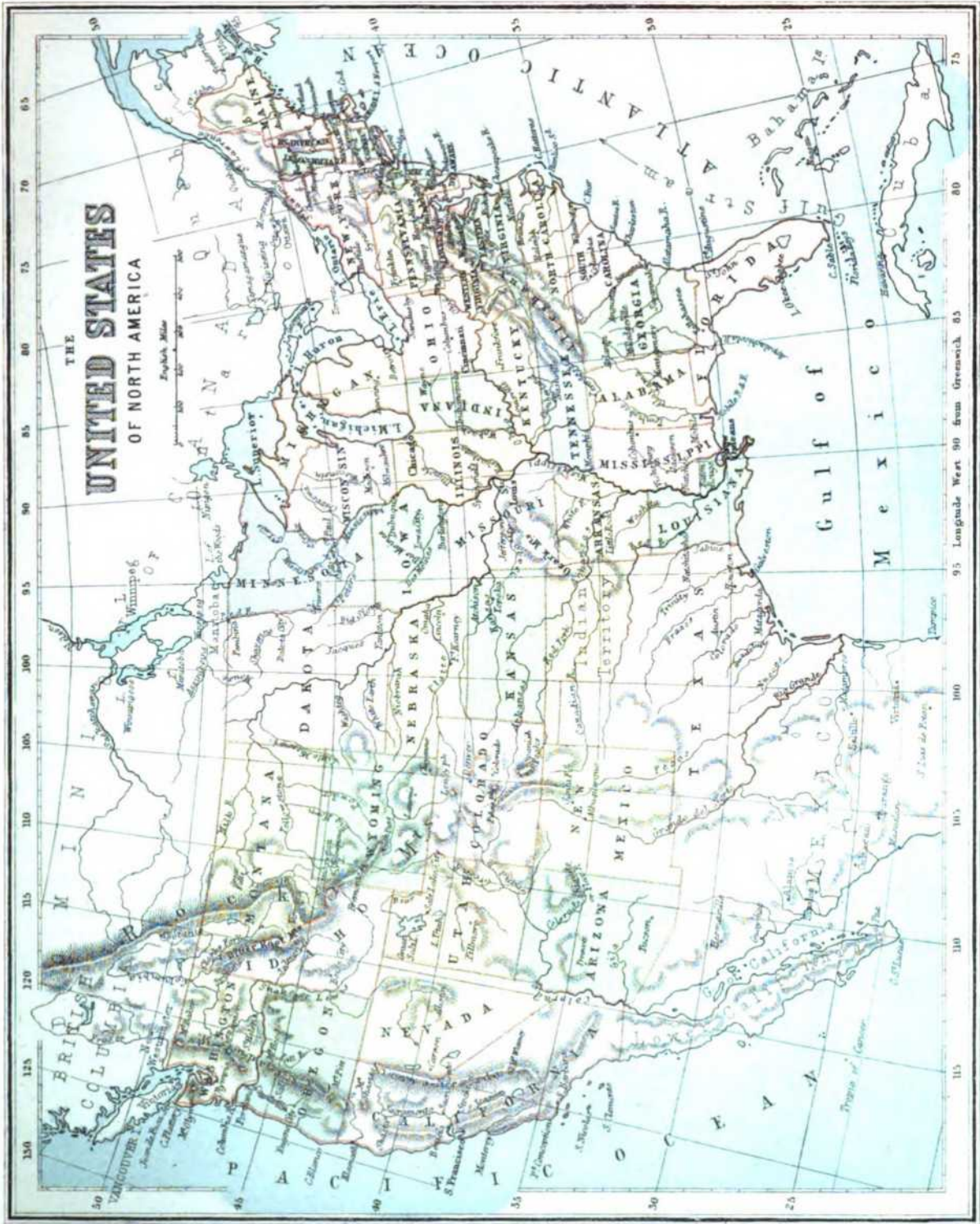
Labrador.—The extreme eastern part of the British territory in North America is the coast of *Labrador*, which is inhabited by *Esquimaux*, among whom a few Moravian missionaries are settled.

Greenland.—The western coasts of *Greenland*, lying along Davis Strait from the neighbourhood of Cape Farewell northward to beyond Disco Island, belong to Denmark, and contain a few Danish settlements. The most northerly of these is *Uppernavik*, in lat. 72° 50'. The native population consists of *Esquimaux*.

Alaska embraces the north-western portion of the continent, and has since 1867 belonged to the United States. The total population of this vast territory, however, only amounts to about 30,000, 500 of whom are whites (mostly at *Sitka*), the rest being *Indians* or *Esquimaux*.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- How is the British territory in North America bounded? What (in round numbers) is its area?
- How many colonies does Britain possess within this region?
- Name the principal rivers of Canada.
- What constitute the chief natural features of Canada?
- Give some account of the climate of Canada.
- Name the chief natural resources of the St. Lawrence valley.
- In what do the resources of Newfoundland and the North-West Territory chiefly consist?
- Say what you know concerning the population of the British colonies in this region—as to their origin and their industrial pursuits.
- What is the present form of government?
- Name the chief divisions of British North America, and point them out upon the map.
- State what you know of the province of Quebec.
- Describe briefly the provinces of Ontario, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Prince Edward Island.
- Where is British Columbia? What considerable river flows through this province?
- What island nearly adjoins the coast of British Columbia? What town does it contain?
- What part of British America is distinguished as the North-West Territory?
- Where is Lake Winnipeg? What rivers enter it?
- What article of produce is derived from the North-West Territory?
- State what you know of Manitoba.
- Describe briefly the colony of Newfoundland.
- Where is Labrador? Who constitute its native inhabitants?
- Where is Greenland, and what portion of that region is under the dominion of Denmark?
- Give a few particulars of the territory of Alaska.



GEORGE PHILIP & SON, LONDON & LIVERPOOL.

George Philip & Son, London & Liverpool.

THE UNITED STATES.

The United States of North America embrace a vast and compact territory, which stretches entirely across the continent.

Boundaries.—Its boundaries are :—On the north, Canada and other portions of British America ; east, the Atlantic Ocean ; south, Mexico, and the waters of the Mexican Gulf ; west, the Pacific.

Extent.—The area of this immense region is 3,200,000 sq. m.

In addition, the United States acquired in 1867, by purchase from Russia, the large tract of country forming the Alaska territory, which includes above half a million square miles. With these acquisitions, the total area of the United States exceeds 3,800,000 square miles.

Natural Features.—The most important among the great natural features of the United States are—the *Rocky Mountains*, the *Alleghany Mountains*, the *valley of the Mississippi*, and the *Great Lakes* in the basin of the St. Lawrence.

1. The whole of the Alleghany system is within the United States. The vast region between the Alleghanies and the Rocky Mountains is watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries, and includes the chief part of the prairies.

2. The most important river of the United States is the *Mississippi*, which is joined by the *Missouri*, the *Ohio*, *Arkansas*, *Red River*, and numerous other navigable tributaries. The Mississippi forms the great highway of commerce for the Western States. Among the rivers that flow from the Alleghany Mountains into the Atlantic, the most important are the *Hudson*, *Delaware*, *Susquehanna*, and *Potomac*.

3. The rivers *Colorado*, *Sacramento*, and the lower portion of the *Columbia*, are to the west of the Rocky Mountains.

4. *Lake Michigan* is wholly within the United States. The other great lakes of the St. Lawrence basin (*Superior*, *Huron*, *Erie*, and *Ontario*) are on the border-line between the United States and the British possessions.

Climate.—The southern portions of the United States—towards the Gulf of Mexico—are hot ; the middle and northerly portions temperate and healthy. The Atlantic coasts are characterised by great extremes of summer and winter temperature.

Productions.—The natural resources of this vast territory are very great. The *gold-fields* of California are among the richest in the world ; on the Atlantic side, the States of Ohio, Pennsylvania, and Virginia include a vast *coal-field*, together with iron and other valuable ores.

Inhabitants.—The population in 1880 amounted to upwards of 50,000,000. Five-sixths of the number are of European (and chiefly British) descent. The English language is hence the prevailing tongue throughout the Union. About 4,000,000 of the population are negroes.

Education and Religion.—Education is general, and well advanced, especially in the North-Eastern or New England States. There is no established form of worship, but each of the various Christian Churches has its followers.

Industry.—The culture of the soil is the predominant branch of industrial pursuit.

In the Southern and South-Western States, *cotton*, *rice*, *tobacco*, and *sugar*—in the Middle and Northern States, *maize*, *wheat*, and other grains—are the principal articles of produce. The cotton crop is of immense value, and its export to Britain forms the most important branch of the foreign commerce of the Union. Tobacco, sugar, rice, wheat, and maize, are also largely exported. Manufactures flourish chiefly in the North-Eastern States.

Government.—The United States form a federal republic. The general government is vested in a President, elected every four years. The legislature consists of an elective Congress, embracing a Senate and a Chamber of Representatives.

Divisions and Towns.—The United States of North America are thirty-eight in number, each of them constituting a sovereign state, and the whole forming a federal republic. Besides the States, there are ten Territories, not yet sufficiently populated for admission to the Union.

The thirteen States which originally composed the Union were all within the eastern portion of the territory, now known as the United States—that is, along the line of the Atlantic coast.

These older States of the Union are distinguished, according to their relative position, as the North-Eastern, Middle, and Southern States. The States of later formation, for the most part within the Mississippi valley, are distinguished as Western States. Three States—California, Oregon, and Nevada—are beyond the Rocky Mountains, on the side of the Pacific.

1. The North-Eastern States are six in number :—

States.	Towns.	States.	Towns.
MAINE .	Augusta, Portland.	MASSACHUSETTS .	Boston, Lowell, Springfield.
NEW HAMPSHIRE .	Concord, Portsmouth.	RHODE ISLAND .	Providence, Newport.
VERMONT .	Montpelier, Burlington.	CONNECTICUT .	Newhaven, Hartford.

2. The Middle States are five in number :—

NEW YORK .	Albany, New York, Troy, Buffalo.	DELAWARE .	Dover, Wilmington.
NEW JERSEY .	Trenton, Newark.	MARYLAND .	Annapolis, Baltimore.
PENNSYLVANIA .	Harrisburg, Philadelphia, Pittsburg.	District of COLUMBIA .	Washington.

3. The Southern States are six in number :—

VIRGINIA (Eastern) .	Richmond, Petersburg.	SOUTH CAROLINA .	Columbia, Charleston.
VIRGINIA (Western) .	Wheeling.	GEORGIA .	Milledgeville, Savannah.
NORTH CAROLINA .	Raleigh, Wilmington.	FLORIDA .	Tallahassee, St. Augustine.

4. The Western States are eighteen in number :—

MINNESOTA .	St. Paul.	NEBRASKA .	Omaha.
WISCONSIN .	Madison, Milwaukee.	COLORADO .	Denver.
IOWA .	Iowa City, Burlington.	KENTUCKY .	Frankfort, Louisville.
INDIANA .	Indianapolis.	TENNESSEE .	Nashville.
ILLINOIS .	Springfield, Chicago.	ALABAMA .	Montgomery, Mobile.
MICHIGAN .	Lansing, Detroit.	MISSISSIPPI .	Jackson, Columbus.
OHIO .	Columbus, Cincinnati.	MISSOURI .	Jefferson, St. Louis.
KANSAS .	Topeka.	LOUISIANA .	New Orleans.
		ARKANSAS .	Little Rock.
		TEXAS .	Austin, Galveston.

5. The Pacific States (west of the Rocky Mountains) are:—

CALIFORNIA .	Sacramento, San Francisco.	OREGON .	Salem.
		NEVADA .	Carson, Austin.

6. The Territories, ten in number, are:—

WASHINGTON .	Olympia.	UTAH .	Salt Lake City.
IDAHO .	Boise City.	ARIZONA .	Tucson.
MONTANA .	Virginia.	NEW MEXICO.	Santa Fé.
DACOTAH .	Yankton.		
WYOMING .	Benton.	ALASKA .	Sitka.

WASHINGTON, on the river Potomac, is the political capital of the United States, but is not otherwise important. The largest city, and the great emporium of the foreign commerce of the Union, is New York, at the mouth of the river Hudson. New York has above 1,200,000 inhabitants, and is the largest city in the New World.

Among the other principal cities, the most considerable are—Philadelphia, Boston, Baltimore, Charleston, New Orleans, St. Louis, Cincinnati, Chicago, and San Francisco. Philadelphia, situated at the junction of the Delaware and Schuylkill rivers, is the second city of the Union in size and population. Boston is the largest city of the New England States, and is a great seat of manufacturing and commercial industry. New Orleans is on the delta of the Mississippi, and is the great outlet for the agricultural produce of its immense valley. St. Louis (on the Mississippi), Cincinnati (on the Ohio), and Chicago (on the south-west shore of Lake Michigan), are the largest inland cities.

MEXICO.

Boundaries.—Mexico is bounded on the north by the United States, on the west and south by the Pacific, and on the east by the Mexican Gulf.

Extent.—740,000 sq. m., about 12 times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Mexico consists of a high plateau, bordered by a strip of lowland upon either side.

From the low coast-plain, the country rises in successive terraces towards the interior, reaching in the more elevated portions from 7,000 to 9,000 feet above the sea. There are no large rivers.

Climate.—The climate of Mexico is hot, moist, and unhealthy within the low plains of the coast, but temperate and healthy in the elevated districts of the interior.

Productions.—The natural productions, both mineral and vegetable, are exceedingly valuable. There are numerous gold and silver mines—formerly worked to great advantage. *Vanilla, cocoa, jalapa, and the cochineal-plant* (a species of cactus), are native to Mexico. *Tobacco, coffee, indigo, and the sugar-cane* flourish.

Inhabitants.—The population numbers about 9,500,000,

the great majority either Indians or people of mixed Indian and Spanish race. The whites are of Spanish descent.

Industry.—Every branch of industry is at the lowest ebb, and Mexico has exhibited, during many years past, every possible symptom of neglect, decay, and social disorganisation. Some cochineal, and a small amount of the precious metals, are still exported.

Government.—Mexico forms a federal republic, under an elective president.

Divisions and Towns.—Mexico until a recent date formed a nominal confederation of states, twenty-two in number. It has recently been divided into fifty departments, named in most cases after the towns which they include.

Among the towns (few of which are of any other than local importance), the principal are MEXICO, the capital; *Vera Cruz, Tampico, Acapulco, and Mazatlan*, the principal seaports. Vera Cruz and Tampico are on the Gulf of Mexico; Acapulco and Mazatlan, on the Pacific.

YUCATAN, the easternmost of the Mexican provinces, has upon various occasions assumed the rank of an independent state. It contains the towns of Merida and Campeachy, each the capital of a state.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Point out upon the map the boundaries of the United States.
2. Name the great natural features of the United States.
3. Say what you know concerning the climate of the United States.
4. For what article of natural produce is California noted?
5. In what part of the United States are coal and iron found?
6. From what nation are the great majority of the population of the United States descended? What language generally prevails?
7. What other races beside the European are included amongst the population of the United States?
8. Name some of the chief productions of the United States.
9. In which part is manufacturing industry most prevalent?
10. Under what kind of government are the United States?
11. How many states does the Union comprehend at the present time?
12. Name the six North-Eastern (or New England) States.
13. Name the largest among the cities of the New England States.
14. Name the five Middle States.
15. What city constitutes the commercial metropolis of the United States?
16. Point on the map to the following places:—Philadelphia, Baltimore, Buffalo, Pittsburgh, New York, and Washington.
17. Name the Southern and Western States.
18. Which of the states border on the Pacific?
19. How many territories belong to the Union? Name some of them.
20. Name the boundaries of Mexico.
21. Give some account of the natural features of Mexico.
22. What kind of climate has Mexico?
23. Say what you know of the natural productions.
24. To what races does the population of Mexico belong?
25. Point on the map to the city of Mexico.
26. Name the two chief seaports of Mexico.
27. What kind of government is Mexico nominally under? What religion is uniformly followed?

CENTRAL AMERICA.

Boundaries.—Central America is bounded by Mexico on the north, the Caribbean Sea on the east, and the Pacific Ocean on the west and south.

Extent.—The area of this territory is estimated at 186,000 square miles, or about three times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Central America consists of interior plateaus, with low plains adjoining the coast.

1. The plateaus are inferior in height to those of Mexico, but they are bordered on the west by high mountains. Part of the low plain along the Atlantic is known as the Mosquito Coast.

2. The most important river is the *San Juan*, which flows from the large lake of Nicaragua into the Caribbean Sea. Steam-vessels navigate this river and lake, and thus reach within a short distance of the Pacific.

3. The climate and natural productions of Central America bear a general resemblance to those of Mexico. The coasts are hot and unhealthy, while the elevated interior is comparatively temperate.

Inhabitants.—The total population is estimated at about 2,800,000. Three-fourths of the people are either Indians or Mestizoes. The whites are nearly all of Spanish descent.

Industry.—The industry of Central America is generally in a backward condition; but *indigo*, *cochineal*, and *coffee*, with small quantities of *sugar*, *hides*, *Nicaragua wood*, *mahogany*, *balsam*, and *sarsaparilla*, are exported.

Divisions.—Five distinct states and one British colony are included within Central America. These, with their chief towns, are shown in the following table:—

States.	Chief Towns.
GUATEMALA	New Guatemala, Old Guatemala, Istapa, St. Thomas.
SAN SALVADOR	Salvador.
BRITISH HONDURAS	Belize.
HONDURAS	Comayagua, Truxillo, Omoa.
NICARAGUA	Managua, Leon, Granada.
COSTA RICA	San José.

1. **Guatemala** is the most northerly of these states, and has a population of about 2,000,000, only one-fourth of whom are of European descent. The capital, *New Guatemala*, is of larger size than any other place in Central America.

2. **San Salvador** is the smallest of the states of Central America. Its population is estimated at 600,000. The capital, *San Salvador*, was partially destroyed by an earthquake in 1873. The principal port is *La Libertad*.

3. **British Honduras** is a possession of the British Crown, and is bounded on the east by the sea, and on all other sides by Guatemala. It has about 25,000 inhabitants, mostly negroes. The capital is *Belize*.

4. **Honduras** lies between Guatemala and Nicaragua, and has a population of 250,000. The capital is *Comayagua*. The chief ports are *Truxillo* and *Omoa*.

5. **Nicaragua** is the largest of these states. Its population, however, only amounts to 250,000, of whom but a small number are of European descent. The present capital is *Managua*, situated near the southern shore of Lake Managua. *Leon*, the old capital, is now partly in ruins. At the mouth of the *San Juan* river is the port of *Grey Town*.

6. **Costa Rica**, the most southerly of these states, extends across the isthmus, and has a population of about 190,000. *San José* is the capital. The chief ports are *Lunon* and *Punta Arenas*.

THE WEST INDIES.

The West Indies are a vast insular region, washed by the waters of the Atlantic Ocean, the Caribbean Sea, and the Gulf of Mexico. Four of the islands of the West Indies are of much larger size than the others. These are—*Cuba*, *Hayti*, *Jamaica*, and *Porto Rico*. The smaller islands are distinguished as the *Windward Islands*, the *Leeward Islands*, and the *Bahama* chain.

Natural Features.—All the islands of the West Indies are more or less mountainous, with the exception of the Bahamas and Barbados.

Climate.—The climate of the West Indies is thoroughly tropical. The dry and rainy seasons follow one another with unfailing regularity, and the quantity of rain that falls within the latter period is very great.

Productions.—The most valuable productions are those that belong to the vegetable world. *Manioc*, *arum* (or taro), *sweet potato*, *arrow-root*, *maize*, *pine-apple*, *pimento*, *ginger*, *cocoa*, *vanilla*, the *tamarind*, *guava*, *cocoa-nut palm*, *indigo*, and *tobacco*, are indigenous to the soil. The *sugar-cane*, *coffee*, *cocoa*, *plantain*, and *bread-fruit*, all flourish.

Inhabitants.—The population of the West Indies amounts, in the total, to nearly three millions. Two-thirds of the total population are negroes; the remaining third, whites and mulattoes—the latter of mixed European and negro blood.

Industry.—The chief articles of commercial produce are *sugar*, *rum*, *molasses*, and *coffee*—the three first derived from the sugar-cane, which is cultivated to an immense extent in Cuba, and in greater or less degree throughout the archipelago. *Cocoa*, *tobacco*, *cotton*, and *spices*, chiefly *ginger* and *pimento*, are supplied to a less amount.

With the exception of Hayti, which forms two independent states, and Margarita, which belongs to Venezuela, the West India Islands belong to various nations of Europe.

1. **Spain** possesses the islands of *Cuba* and *Porto Rico*. *Cuba* has an area of 43,000 square miles—only one-seventh part less than England. The capital is *Havannah*, the largest city in the West Indies. The chief town of *Porto Rico* is *San Juan*.

2. **Great Britain** possesses, of the larger islands, *Jamaica*; and of the smaller islands, *Trinidad*, *Tobago*, *Barbadoes*, *Grenada*, *St. Vincent*, *St. Lucia*, *Dominica*, *Antigua*, *Barbuda*, *Montserrat*, *Nexis*, *St. Christopher*, three of the *Virgin Islands*, and the *Bahamas*.

Jamaica is 4,300 square miles in area, or four-fifths the size of Yorkshire. *Kingstown*, on the south coast, is the capital and chief seat of the commerce of Jamaica; *Spanish Town*, the former capital, is in the interior, to the west of Kingstown. The islands that extend from Trinidad to St. Lucia are included under the name of the *Windward Islands*. Their names and chief towns are:—

TRINIDAD . . .	Port of Spain.	GRENADA . . .	St. George
TOBAGO . . .	Scarborough.	ST. VINCENT . . .	Kingstown.
BARBADOS . . .	Bridgetown.	ST. LUCIA . . .	Castries.

Barbados is the most productive island of the Windward chain.

The Leeward Islands are those that extend from Dominica to the group of the Virgin Islands, namely:—

DOMINICA . . .	Roseau.	ST. CHRISTOPHER.	Basse-terre.
ANTIGUA . . .	St. John.	VIRGIN ISLANDS—	
BARBUDA.		Tortola . . .	Road Town.
MONTserrat . . .	Plymouth.	Virgin-gorda.	
NEVIS . . .	Charlestown.	Anguilla.	

Antigua is the most important island of the Leeward chain.

The chief town of the Bahamas is *Nassau*, on New Providence.

3. France possesses *Martinique*, *Guadeloupe* and its dependencies, *St. Bartholomew*, and part of the island of *St. Martin*.

The capital of Martinique is *Port Royal*, but *St. Pierre* is of larger size. *Basse-terre* is the capital of Guadeloupe. The islands of *Mariagalant* and *Desirade* are dependencies of Guadeloupe.

4. Holland possesses part of *St. Martin*, with the islands of *Saba*, *St. Eustatius*, *Curaçao*, *Oruba*, and *Buen Ayre*—the three last-named lying near the coast of South America. The chief town of Curaçao (the largest of the Dutch islands) is *Wallenstadt*.

5. Denmark possesses *Santa Cruz*, together with the smaller islands of *St. Thomas* and *St. John*, two of the Virgin Islands.

The chief town of Santa Cruz is *Christianstadt*. The remaining islands of the Virgin group belong to Britain.

HAYTI (or San Domingo) has an area of 30,000 square miles—nearly as great as that of Ireland; but its population is only about 820,000. It is divided into two portions. The western part of the island forms the Republic of Hayti, of which the town of *Port-au-Prince* is the capital. The eastern half forms the DOMINICAN REPUBLIC, of which *San Domingo* is the capital. The population of the island consists almost entirely of negroes and mulattoes.

The BERMUDA ISLANDS, situated in the middle of the Atlantic, 600 miles east of the American continent, belong to Britain. They produce the finest arrowroot. Their chief town is *Hamilton*.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

- Where is Central America? Point to its limits on the map.
- What are the characteristic natural features of this region?
- What two lakes does Central America contain? What river issues from the larger of the two?
- Say what you know concerning the population of this region.
- What articles are exported from Central America?
- How many distinct states are comprehended within Central America? Name them.
- State what you know of each of them.
- By what seas are the islands of the West Indies surrounded?
- What do you know concerning the climate?
- Mention some of the productions of the vegetable kingdom that are indigenous to this region.
- What race of people forms the great majority of the population of the West Indies?
- What are the chief commercial productions of the West Indies?
- Which of the West India Islands belong to Spain?
- Name as many as you can of the islands that belong to Britain.
- Which islands belong to France, Holland, and Denmark respectively?
- Name the respective capitals of Cuba, Porto Rico, Jamaica, Trinidad, Barbados, and St. Vincent.
- Which of the British islands are known as the Windward Islands? Which as the Leeward Islands?
- Where are the Bermuda Islands, and to what nation do they belong? What is their chief article of produce?
- Into what two states is the island of Hayti divided? Name the chief town of each.

SOUTH AMERICA.

THE continent of South America forms the southern half of the New World. It is joined to North America by the narrow Isthmus of Panama. To the south it terminates in a group of rocky islands called Tierra del Fuego.

Boundaries.—South America is bounded on the north by the Caribbean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean, on the east by the Atlantic Ocean, on the west by the Pacific.

Extent.—South America has an area of 7,000,000 square miles, and is therefore nearly twice the size of Europe.

Coast-line.—The coasts of South America are (like those of Africa) remarkably regular and unbroken.

1. **Capes.**—Cape Gallinas is the most northerly point of the continent, Cape Branco the most easterly, and Cape Parina the most westerly. Cape Froward is the most southerly point of the mainland; but Cape Horn (which is the southernmost point of an extensive group of islands) is a more celebrated and better known promontory.

2. **Inlets.**—On the north: the Gulfs of Darien, Maracaybo, and Paria. On the west: the Gulfs of Panama and Guayaquil.

3. **Straits.**—The Strait of Magellan, between Tierra del Fuego and the mainland, and the Strait of Le Maire, between Tierra del Fuego and Staten Island.

Islands.—The principal islands are:—

- On the north: Margarita, Curaçao, &c.
- On the south: Tierra del Fuego.
- On the east: Falkland Islands, Georgia Islands.
- On the west: Patagonian Archipelago, Chiloe Island, Juan Fernandez, and the Galapagos Islands.

Natural Features.—South America has three mountain systems:—(1) The *Andes*, which are the highest mountains in the New World; (2) the *Mountains of Guiana*; (3) the *Mountains of Brazil*.

The *Andes* stretch along the whole western side of South America. Their highest summit—*Sorata*, on the western border of Bolivia—reaches 24,800 feet, and several others are above 20,000 feet. They rise throughout above the line of perpetual snow. Many of the mountains are active volcanoes, and earthquakes frequently occur.

Tablelands.—The tablelands of South America are principally within the region traversed by the *Andes*. The highest is the plateau of *Titicaca* (within Peru and Bolivia), which contains the large lake of *Titicaca*, at an elevation of nearly 13,000 feet. The plateau of *Quito* is 9,000 feet.



George Philip & Son London & Liverpool

Lowland Plains.—These stretch through the interior of the continent, and separate the Andes from the mountain-systems of Guiana and Brazil. They embrace three great divisions:—

1. The *llanos*, or grassy plains of the Orinoco valley.
2. The *selvas*, or forest plains of the Amazon valley.
3. The *pampas*, or plains of the La Plata region.

*. The *llanos* (or savannahs) are vast meadows, like the prairies of North America. The *selvas* are regions covered with a dense growth of natural forest. The *pampas*, according to the changes of the season, are alternately covered with herbage, or with thistles of gigantic size.

Rivers.—The chief rivers of South America, named in succession from the northward, are as follow:—

Magdalena.	Corentyn.	La Plata { Uruguay. Parana. Paraguay. Colorado. Negro.
Orinoco.	Surinam.	
Esequibo.	Maroni.	
Demerara.	Amazon.	
Berbice.	San Francisco.	

The river *Magdalena* flows into the Caribbean Sea, which is a gulf of the Atlantic. All the others terminate directly in the Atlantic Ocean.

The *Amazon*, the *Orinoco*, and the *Rio de la Plata*, are superior in magnitude to any other rivers of South America. The *Amazon* is 3,900 miles long; it thus nearly rivals the Mississippi in length of channel, and greatly exceeds any of the rivers of the Old World. The *Rio de la Plata* is an immense estuary, formed by the junction of the rivers Parana and Uruguay.

Lakes.—These are few in number. The largest is *Lake Titicaca*.

Climate.—Two-thirds of South America fall within the torrid zone, and its climate is therefore, upon the whole, warmer than that of North America.

Towards the south, however, it becomes gradually more temperate, and the extreme south is cold. The quantity of rain that falls within its tropical regions is very great, exceeding, in some localities (as in Guiana and parts of Brazil), the rain-fall of any other part of the globe.

Productions.—Extremely rich and varied.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—South America is rich in the precious metals. The whole region traversed by the Andes contains mines of *gold* and *silver*, besides abundant ores of *copper*, *iron*, *lead*, and other valuable metals. Chili has copper mines of great value, and also *coal-fields*. Brazil furnishes *gold*, *diamonds*, and other precious stones.

2. **Vegetation.**—*Maize*, *cassava* (or manioc), *cocoa*, *tobacco*, and the *potato*, are the characteristic food-plants of South America. The various species of *cinchona* (or Peruvian bark), valued for their medicinal properties, are native to its western coasts. The *caoutchouc* (or India-rubber) tree, mahogany, and log-wood, are native to Brazil. The *mate*-shrub of Paraguay (or yerba-maté) serves in South America a purpose similar to the tea-plant of the Old World.

3. **Zoology.**—(1.) The *puma* and the *jaguar* (or ounce), both of them native also to the wooded regions of Mexico and Central America, are the most formidable of the South American carnivora. The *llama* is peculiar to South America. The proper llama, and also the various species known as the *alpaca*, *vicuna*, and *guanaco*, all belong to the region of the higher Andes. The llama is used as a beast of burden.

(2.) The *tapir*, *sloth*, *ant-eater*, and *armadillo*, are natives of South America. *Monkeys* are exceedingly numerous in the forests of Brazil, but are of different species from the like animals in the eastern half of the globe. The *opossums*, which abound in the forests of South America, and one variety of which is common in the northern half of the New World, are found nowhere else but in Australia.

(3.) Both reptile and insect life are favoured by the combined heat and moisture—with its consequent luxuriance of vegetation—of tropical South America. The *boa-constrictor* is found in the swampy plains, and the *alligator* abounds in most of its rivers.

Inhabitants.—Total population, about 30,000,000.

About a third of the whole are of European race, and almost exclusively of Spanish and Portuguese origin. With the exception of Brazil, which was colonised by Portugal, nearly all South America was formerly under Spanish rule.

The native Indian race perhaps numbers about 5,000,000. The negro race (chiefly found in Brazil) includes between three and four millions. Mixed races, or mestizoes—principally of European and Indian blood—make up the remainder.

Divisions.—South America is divided into the following countries:—

BRAZIL.	ECUADOR.	LA PLATA. PARAGUAY. URUGUAY. PATAGONIA.
GUIANA.	PERU.	
VENEZUELA.	BOLIVIA.	
COLUMBIA.	CHILI.	

With the exception of Brazil, which is an empire; of Guiana, which is divided between the possession of three European nations; and of Patagonia, which is an uncivilised tract of country,—all the South American States are nominal republics. But in most instances the government is really a military despotism.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. By what isthmus is South America joined to North America? What seas wash the opposite shores of this isthmus?
2. How is South America bounded? In what does it terminate to the southward?
3. What gulfs occur on the coasts of South America?
4. Name some of the principal capes of South America. Which is the most northerly point? Which is the most southwardly?
5. Point on the map to the following:—the Falkland Islands, Juan Fernandez, Tierra del Fuego, the Patagonian Archipelago, and the Galapagos Islands.
6. Name the principal mountain-systems of South America.
7. What tablelands belong to South America?
8. What portions of South America form a vast lowland-plain, and what are its three great divisions?
9. Where is the region of (1) the *llanos*, (2) the *selvas*, (3) the *pampas*, and what are the characteristic features of each?
10. Name as many as you can of the rivers of South America.
11. Which are the three largest rivers of South America?
12. What two rivers unite in the estuary of the La Plata?
13. Name the largest lake in South America.
14. By what conditions is the climate of South America distinguished?
15. What parts of South America furnish the precious metals? Where are diamonds and copper found?
16. Name some of the more important among the food-plants that are native to South America.
17. What plants celebrated for their medicinal properties are native to South America?
18. Mention some other productions of the vegetable world that belong to this region.
19. Name some of the animals that are most characteristic of the South American continent.
20. What races of mankind are included among the population of South America? What proportion of the whole are whites?
21. Name the chief divisions of South America.

BRAZIL.

Brazil has an area of about 3,275,000 square miles, thus comprising nearly half of the continent.

Boundaries.—Brazil is bounded on the *north* by Colombia, Venezuela, and Guiana; on the *north-east* and *east* by the Atlantic Ocean; on the *south* and *south-west* by Uruguay, the La Plata Territory, and Paraguay; on the *west* by Bolivia, Peru, and Ecuador.

Coasts.—Generally regular and unbroken.

1. The principal capes are:—*Orange*, *St. Roque*, and *Frio*.
2. The chief inlets are:—The *estuaries of the Amazon*, *Para*, *Maranhão*, and the *Bays of Bahia* and *Rio Janeiro*.

Natural Features.—The great feature of Brazil consists in its vast plains, watered by some of the largest rivers in the world.

Mountains.—Few of its mountains exceed 3,000 feet, but the interior is for the most part a moderately elevated and undulating region.

Rivers.—The chief rivers are:—The *Amazon*, with its numerous tributaries; the *San Francisco*, and the upper portions of the *Parana* and *Paraguay*. The longest among the tributaries of the Amazon is the *Madera* river. The Amazon is the longest river in the world.

Climate and Productions.—The climate is strictly tropical, and the soil, under the combined influences of heat and moisture, displays the most luxuriant fertility. Besides its rich *forests*, Brazil possesses *gold* and *diamonds*, with other *precious stones*.

Inhabitants.—Brazil has 11,000,000 inhabitants, of whom fewer than one-sixth are whites.

Race and Language.—More than half the total number are of negro race—the great bulk of them slaves. The remainder include Indians and mixed races. The whites are of Portuguese descent, and the Portuguese language is hence spoken.

Industry.—The industry of Brazil is chiefly agricultural.

Coffee, *sugar*, and *cotton*, are its staples of commercial produce, with smaller quantities of *rice*, *cocoa*, *maize*, and *tobacco*. The *cassava-bread*, made from the root of the *manioc*, is the chief food of the native Indian population. The trade with Britain is of high value.

Government.—Brazil is the only country in South America which is under a monarchical government. It forms an hereditary empire, with a free constitution.

Divisions and Towns.—Brazil includes twenty provinces. All its larger towns are situated on or near the coast.

The capital is *RIO JANEIRO*, seated on a bay of the Atlantic, which forms a magnificent harbour. It has nearly 300,000 inhabitants, and is the largest city of South America. The second city in size and commercial importance is *Bahia*, to the northward of Rio; and the third place in these regards is *Pernambuco*, further north. The other principal towns are:—*Para*, at the mouth of the Rio de Para; *San Paulo*, to the south-west of Rio; and *San Pedro*, further to the south.

GUIANA

Boundaries.—Guiana is bounded on the *north* and *north-east* by the Atlantic Ocean, on the *south* by Brazil, on the *west* by Brazil and Venezuela.

Surface.—The coast district of Guiana is a low and fertile plain, behind which the country rises towards the interior.

Rivers.—The rivers all flow north into the Atlantic. The principal are:—*Essequibo*, *Demerara*, *Berbice*, *Corentyn*, *Surinam*, and *Maroni*.

Climate.—The climate is thoroughly tropical.

Productions.—The wealth of Guiana consists in the produce of its soil. *Sugar*, *coffee*, *cotton*, and *tobacco*, are its chief staples. *Pepper*, *cloves*, *cinnamon*, and *nutmegs*, are produced in French Guiana.

Divisions.—Guiana is divided between the possession of Britain, Holland, and France.

1. **British Guiana** has a population of 250,000, chiefly negroes. The capital is *GEORGETOWN*, at the mouth of the river Demerara. *New Amsterdam*, on the river Berbice, is to the east of Georgetown.

2. **Dutch Guiana** has 70,000 inhabitants, mostly of negro race. Its chief town is *Paramaribo*, on the river Surinam.

3. **French Guiana** has about 32,000 inhabitants, principally of negro and native Indian race. Its chief town is *Cayenne*, situated on the island of that name, which adjoins the coast.

VENEZUELA.

Venezuela is bounded on the *north* by the Caribbean Sea, on the *east* by the Atlantic Ocean and British Guiana, on the *south* by Brazil and Colombia, and on the *west* by Colombia. The area of Venezuela is estimated at 400,000 square miles, which is seven times greater than that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Venezuela includes the greater part of the Orinoco valley, with its extensive savannahs or llanos, which are succeeded, at intervals, by forest-covered tracts of surprising richness.

Climate.—Hot, but not unhealthy.

Productions.—*Cocoa*, *tobacco*, *indigo*, *vanilla*, *cinchona* (or Jesuit's bark), and the *cochineal-plant*, are among its many valuable productions. *Wild horses* and *oxen* roam over its vast interior plains.

Inhabitants.—Venezuela has about 1,800,000 inhabitants, mostly Mestizoes, or half-caste race (of mixed Spanish and Indian blood).

Industry.—The chief articles of commercial produce are *sugar*, *cocoa*, *coffee*, *tobacco*, and *cotton*, with *hides* and *cattle*.

Towns.—The capital of Venezuela is the city of *CARACAS*. *La Guayra* is its port. The only other towns of any note are:—*Cumana*, *Barcelona*, *Valencia*, and *Maracaybo*.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. How is Brazil bounded? What is its area, in square miles?
2. What are the great natural features of Brazil?
3. Describe briefly the climate and natural productions of Brazil.
4. What races of people constitute the population of Brazil?
5. To what is the industry of the Brazilian population chiefly devoted?
6. What is the form of government?
7. Name the capital and other chief cities of Brazil.

8. Where is Guiana? Into what three portions is it divided?
9. Name some of the principal rivers, and say what you know concerning the climate and productions of Guiana.
10. Where is Venezuela?
11. Mention some of the natural features and productions of Venezuela.
12. Name the chief towns of Guiana and Venezuela.

COLOMBIA.

The UNITED STATES OF COLOMBIA (formerly called New Granada) are bounded on the *north* by the Caribbean Sea, *east* by Venezuela, *south* by Brazil and Ecuador, and on the *west* by the Pacific Ocean. The *area* is estimated at 504,000 square miles, or about eight times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—The great natural features are the *Andes*—the plain along their western base—and the valley of the *Magdalena*.

Climate.—The lowland portions of Colombia are covered with a dense forest, and have an intensely hot climate; but the mountain-region is comparatively cool.

Productions.—The Mineral wealth of this country is very great, and includes ores of *iron*, *copper*, and *lead*, as well as the precious metals. The agricultural resources are of still higher value. The commercial

produce of the country consists of *cocoa*, *coffee*, *cinchona* (or bark), *indigo*, *tobacco*, and *cotton*, with a small amount of *gold* and other metals.

Inhabitants.—The population exceeds 3,900,000.

Towns.—The capital of New Granada is SANTA FE DE BOGOTA, situated on one of the high plateaux of the Andes. The chief seaport is *Cartagena*.

The larger part of the *Isthmus of Panama* falls within the State of *Panama*, which forms one of the members of the Colombian confederation.

A railway connects the city of *Panama* with the rising town of *Aspinwall*, or *Colon*, on the opposite side of the isthmus. A ship canal is now being constructed across the isthmus, which, when completed, will, to a large extent, supersede the Cape Horn route to and from the Pacific.

ECUADOR.

The republic of ECUADOR is bounded on the *north* by Colombia, on the *east* by Brazil, on the *south* by Peru, and on the *west* by the Pacific Ocean. The *area* of Ecuador is nearly 250,000 square miles, or four times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Ecuador includes the most elevated part of the *Andes*, with plains extending on the one side to the waters of the Pacific, and on the other into the great lowland of the Amazon basin. The river *Amazon* forms the chief part of the southern boundary.

Climate.—The mountain region of Ecuador enjoys a cool climate; but the plains of the coast are heated and moist.

Productions.—The natural productions resemble those of Colombia. The *cinchonas* abound in the extensive forests.

Inhabitants.—Ecuador has about 1,000,000 inhabitants.

Industry.—The produce of the country is almost exclusively agricultural, and consists principally of *cocoa* and *coffee*, with *tobacco*, *hides*, and *Peruvian bark*.

Towns.—The capital city of Ecuador is QUITO, situated on the interior plateau, nearly under the line of the equator. The chief seaport is *Guayaquil*.

* * Two of the three countries last described—*Venezuela* and *Ecuador*—nominally form republics, each under an elective presidency. *Colombia* or *New Granada* consists of a confederation of nine distinct states. All three countries were formerly under Spanish rule. In all, the white population is Spanish, and the Spanish language is uniformly spoken. The Roman Catholic religion is followed.

PERU.

PERU is bounded on the *north* by Ecuador; on the *east* by Brazil and Bolivia; on the *south* by Bolivia; on the *west* and *south-west* by the Pacific Ocean. Its *area* is 500,000 square miles, about nine times the size of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Peru includes—1. A large portion of the *Andes*, comprehending some of the highest summits of the mountain-system. 2. A plain along the coast of the Pacific, between the mountains and the sea. 3. A more extensive plain, stretching east from the mountains into the interior of the continent.

The coast-plain throughout Peru is an arid, rainless desert, with a climate that is intensely hot. But, with this exception, both countries possess great fertility. The watered plains to the east of the *Andes* are among the most productive in the world. The climate of the mountain-region is cold. Peru contains abundant mineral wealth. *Gums*, *bal-*

sams, *cinchona-bark*, *vanilla*, *sarsaparilla*, and the *caoutchouc-tree*, abound in Peru.

Inhabitants.—Peru has about 2,700,000 inhabitants. The Indian and mixed races are much more numerous than whites, who are exclusively of Spanish descent.

Industry.—Comparatively few of the mines are now worked. *Coffee*, *cocoa*, *tobacco*, *sugar*, and *maize*, are objects of cultivation, and, with *metals*, *bark*, and the *wool* of the alpaca, are exported. *Guano* is largely exported. The country is at present entirely disorganised, owing to the recent disastrous war with *Chili*.

Towns.—The chief towns of Peru are: *Lima*, *Callao*, *Cuzco*, *Arequipa*, *Passo*, and *Arica*. *LIMA*, the capital, lies six miles inland from the Pacific: *Callao* is its port. *Cuzco*, the ancient capital of the *Incas*, is an inland city, lying at an elevation of 11,000 feet above the sea.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Name the boundaries of Colombia.
2. What are its great natural features and productions?
3. Name the capital, and also the chief seaport, of Colombia.
4. Where are the following cities:—*Panama*, *Aspinwall*, and *Porto Bello*?
5. How is the republic of Ecuador bounded?
6. What kind of natural features does Ecuador exhibit?
7. What great river forms part of the southern boundary of Ecuador?
8. Name the chief city, and also the principal seaport, of Ecuador.
9. What three natural divisions does the physical geography of Peru include?
10. What kind of region is the coast-plain of Peru?
11. Say what you know concerning the climate, and mineral and vegetable productions, of Peru.
12. Name the chief city and port of Peru.

BOLIVIA.

BOLIVIA is bounded on the *north* by Peru; on the *north-east* and *east* by Brazil; on the *south* by La Plata; and on the *west* chiefly by Peru. The *area* of Bolivia is about 842,000 square miles, or nearly 15 times that of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Some of the highest portions of the *Andes* are within Bolivia. The border-line between Peru and Bolivia crosses the high *Tableland of Titicaca*, the larger portion of which is within the latter state. Upon either side of the tableland are ranged some of the highest summits of the mountain-system. One of the number—the peak of *Sorata*—is now known to surpass in height even Aconcagua, which was formerly regarded as the culminating summit of the western world.

Climate and Productions.—Similar to those of Peru.

Inhabitants.—The population of Bolivia is about 2,000,000, chiefly composed of Indians and mixed races.

Towns.—The capital of Bolivia is *SUCRE* (formerly Chuquisaca), situated on the interior tableland. Among the other towns are *Potosí*, *La Paz*, and *Cobija*. The last-named is the only seaport which Bolivia possesses. It is now (1881) held by the Chileans.

* * Both Peru and Bolivia are nominally republics, the supreme executive authority in each being confided to an elective president. In reality, in the case of these and other South American states, the government has become a military despotism. In both countries the Roman Catholic religion is uniformly followed.

CHILI.

CHILI is a narrow strip of country upon the western seaboard of South America, between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. Its *area* is not less than 130,000 square miles, which is more than twice the size of England and Wales.

1. The great feature of Chili is the stupendous cordillera which forms its eastern border. The Chilean Andes include Aconcagua, one of the highest mountains in the New World: a great many of their summits are active volcanoes. Chili is generally fertile; but its extreme northern part is the arid Desert of Atacama. The longest river is the Biobío.

2. The climate is temperate and healthy, especially towards the south. *Copper and coal* are among the mineral produce of Chili.

3. The inhabitants number about 2,000,000, of whom a large proportion are whites, of Spanish descent. The commerce is considerable: *copper-ore, silver, hides, wheat, flour, and jerked beef*, are exported.

Government.—Chili (like all the other states of Spanish America) is a republic, under an elective president.

Towns.—The capital of Chili is *SANTIAGO*, an inland city. The chief ports are *Valparaíso*, *Concepción*, and *Cochimbo*.

LA PLATA, OR THE ARGENTINE CONFEDERATION.

LA PLATA embraces a confederacy of states, which are together entitled the *ARGENTINE REPUBLIC*, or the United Provinces of La Plata. It is bounded on the *north* by Bolivia; on the *west* by Chili; on the *south* by Patagonia; and on the *east* by Paraguay, Brazil, and Uruguay. The total *area* is 803,000 square miles, or 14 times that of England and Wales.

Surface.—The greater part of La Plata is an immense plain. This plain includes, in the south, the region of the Pampas, and, in the north, the larger portion of an extensive tract called the *Gran Chaco*—a succession of grassy plains, of the highest natural fertility, though tenanted only by wild beasts, or equally wild Indians.

Rivers.—The rivers of La Plata are of first-rate magnitude. Among them are the *Paraguay*, the *Paraná*, and the *Uruguay*, the three great feeders of the estuary entitled the river Plate (Río de la Plata).

Climate.—The climate is temperate.

Inhabitants.—This extensive region has fewer than 2,000,000 inhabitants—a large proportion of whom are whites.

Productions.—The vast herds of oxen and horses that roam over its plains are the chief wealth of La Plata. Its commercial productions are principally horse and ox hides, horse-hair, horns, wool, tallow, dried beef, and furs.

Divisions.—The Argentine Confederation embraces fourteen provinces, each nominally a distinct state. Buenos Ayres ranks as the head of the confederation, and the city of that name is the federal capital.

The State of *BUENOS AYRES*—the head of the Argentine Confederation—includes the south bank of the Río de la Plata, and extends thence along the Atlantic coast as far as the river Negro. It has a population of 350,000. The city of *Buenos Ayres*, on the south bank of the river Plate, is the chief out-port for the produce of the La Plata territory.

Two of the provinces which formerly belonged to the Argentine Confederation have become separated from the federal union, and rank as independent states. These are Paraguay and Uruguay.

1. **Paraguay** is a tract of country enclosed between the rivers *Paraná* and *Paraguay*, and bordered on the north and west by Brazil. Population, 250,000. The capital is *ASSUMPTION*, on the river *Paraguay*.

2. **Uruguay** is bordered by the Río de la Plata, the Atlantic Ocean, and Brazil. It has fewer than 200,000 inhabitants. The chief town is *Monte Video*.

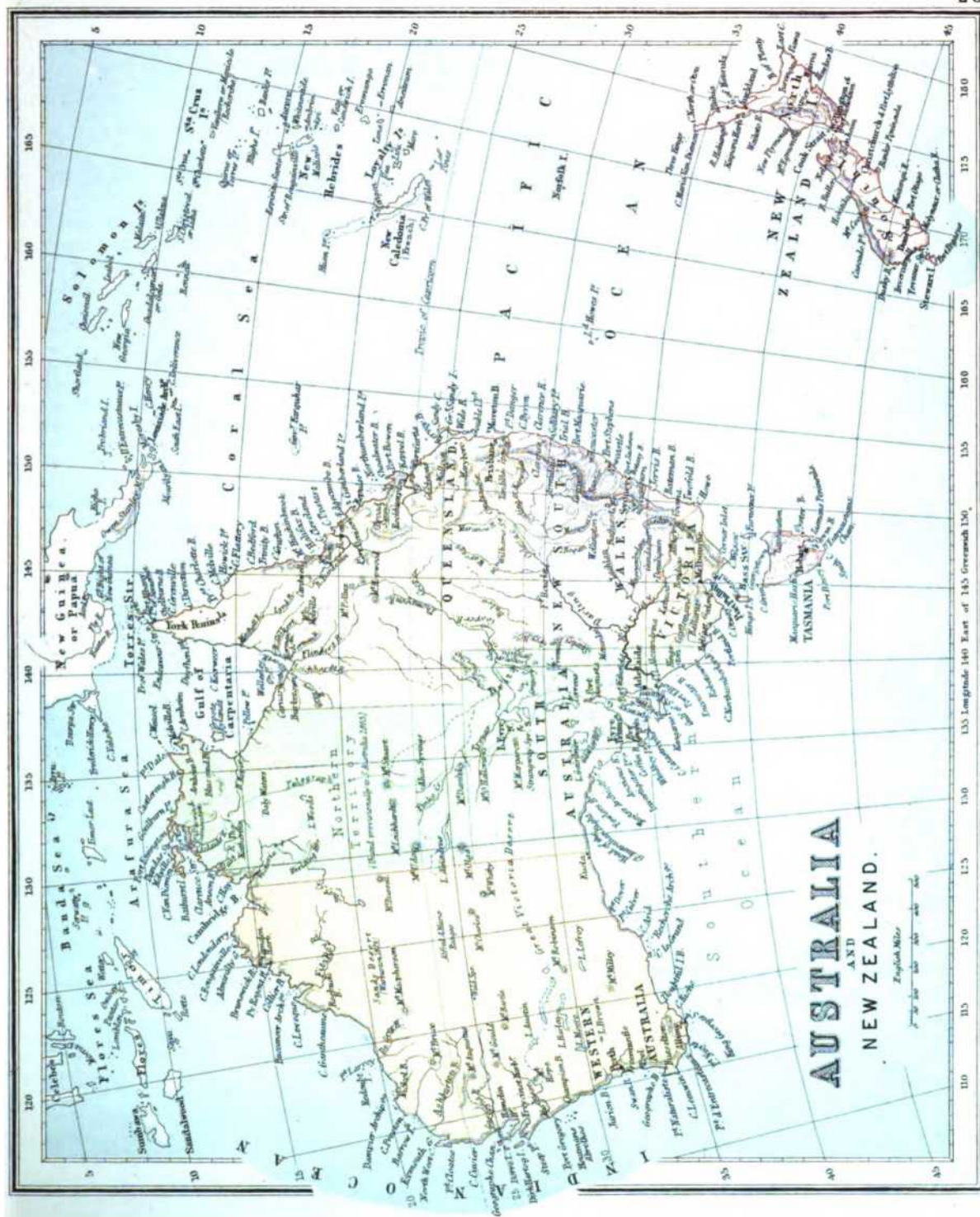
Patagonia, the extreme south part of the American continent, is a barren region, thinly inhabited by a few tribes of uncivilised Indians. The sovereignty over the greater portion of it is vested in the Argentine Confederation.

The *Falkland Islands* belong to Britain. They are situated in the midst of a stormy sea, and furnish little beyond oxen and horses, but are occasionally visited by whaling ships and other vessels that pass round Cape Horn. They contain the port of *Stanley*.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. What great lake is on the borders of Bolivia and Peru?
2. Mention some of the productions of Bolivia.
3. Point out the following places on the map:—Chuquisaca, Potosí, and La Paz.
4. How is Chili bounded?
5. Give some account of the natural features and productions of Chili.
6. Name the chief towns of Chili.
7. Where is the La Plata territory? How is it bounded?

8. What three great rivers belong to La Plata?
9. In what does the wealth of La Plata chiefly consist?
10. What town forms the present capital of the Argentine Confederation?
11. Where is Paraguay? What two great rivers bound it on either side?
12. Name the capitals of Paraguay and Uruguay respectively.
13. Where is Patagonia? By whom is the sovereignty over it claimed?
14. To whom do the Falkland Islands belong? What town do they contain?



AUSTRALIA.

AUSTRALIA is within the southern hemisphere. It is the smallest of the continents, and is the only one of them that is situated wholly to the south of the equator.

Boundaries.—Australia is bounded by the ocean on every side—by the Pacific Ocean on the *east*; the Indian Ocean on the *west* and *north-west*; by the Southern Ocean on the *south*.

Extent.—Its area is about 3,000,000 square miles, which is more than three-fourths the size of Europe.

Coasts.—The coasts of Australia are solid and unbroken.

1. **Capes.**—Cape York, the extreme north point of Australia; Cape Byron, the most easterly point; Cape Howe, in the south-east; Cape Wilson, the southernmost point; Cape Leeuwin, in the south-west; and Steep Point, the westernmost extremity.

2. **Inlets.**—On the *north*, the Gulf of Carpentaria; on the *south*, St. Vincent Gulf and Spencer Gulf; on the *west*, Shark Bay.

3. **Straits.**—Torres Strait, in the *north*; and Bass Strait, in the *south*.

4. **Islands.**—Groote Eylandt, Bathurst and Melville Islands, on the north; Dampier Archipelago and Dirk Hartog Island, on the west; Kangaroo Island and Tasmania, on the south; and Great Sandy Island, on the east.

Natural Features.—The high grounds of Australia lie near the coasts, and in the general direction of north and south. Those near the eastern coasts form a continuous chain, different portions of which bear the following names:—

1. The **Australian Alps** are partly within Victoria, and partly within New South Wales. They are the highest known mountains in Australia: *Mount Kosciusko*, their loftiest summit, is 6,500 feet above the sea.

2. The **Blue Mountains** are to the northward of the Australian Alps, and within New South Wales. They seldom exceed 3,000 feet.

3. The **Liverpool Range** is still farther north, and also within New South Wales.

*. Upon the inland side of the mountains, the country exhibits, for the most part, vast plains which stretch towards the distant interior. These plains are generally covered with herbage, and portions of them are thinly wooded. Some parts of the central interior are arid and desert; but extensive tracts of country, well suited for pasturage, have been discovered within recent years.

Rivers.—The rivers of Australia are unequal in size to those of other regions, and their volume of water undergoes great variation with the seasons of the year. The principal are:—

1. *Flowing into the Southern Ocean*:—The Murray, which is 1,200 miles long. Chief tributaries—Murrumbidgee, Lachlan, and Darling.

2. *Flowing into the Pacific Ocean*:—The Shoalhaven, Hawkesbury, Hunter, Macleay, Clarence, Brisbane, Fitzroy, and the Burdekin.

3. *Flowing into the Indian Ocean*:—The Swan, Murchison, Gascoyne, Ashburton, Fitzroy, and Victoria.

4. *Flowing into the Gulf of Carpentaria*:—Roper, Flinders, and Mitchell.

Lakes.—Lake Alexandrina is the largest lake in Australia. The other lakes are only salt marshes, or mere surface ponds, with dry beds during the larger portion of the year. Of these the most extensive are lakes Eyre, Torrens, Gairdner, and Lake Amadeus.

Climate.—The prevailing characteristic of the climate is intense aridity. The air of Australia is almost uniformly warm, dry, and healthy.

1. Nearly one-half of Australia falls within the torrid zone. The whole of Australia experiences a high temperature; but, from its situa-

tion in the southern hemisphere, the amount of heat diminishes from north to south, instead of from south to north. The southernmost parts of Australia are the coolest.

2. The populated portions of Australia—that is, Victoria, New South Wales, South Australia, and Western Australia—have a climate which bears much resemblance to that of southern Europe. Intensely hot winds, generated in the arid plains of the interior, sometimes blow, but are seldom of more than two or three days' continuance. The rains fall with great violence during the period comprehended between May and August; the rest of the year is dry.

Natural Productions.—The mineral wealth of Australia equals that of any of the other continents; its animal and vegetable productions are inferior, and differ in many respects from those of the rest of the globe.

1. **Metals and Minerals.**—Australia has abundant mineral wealth. The gold-fields of Victoria rival those of California, and the copper-ore of South Australia is of unsurpassed richness. Gold is found in New South Wales and Queensland, but much less abundantly than in Victoria. Other metals—iron, copper, lead, and tin, with coal—occur in the settled portions of Australia.

2. **Vegetation.**—The native vegetation of Australia is altogether different from that of other parts of the globe. With scarcely an exception, the plants that are indigenous to its soil are valueless as food. Many of its trees, however, yield valuable timber: those most abundant are *gum-trees* and *acacias*. All the grains and fruits that belong to southern Europe and similar regions of sub-tropical temperature flourish in the Australian soil. The *vine*, *orange*, *fig*, *olive*, and *peach*, grow in unsurpassed luxuriance. Both *wheat* and *maize* return abundant crops.

3. **Zoology.**—The largest animal native to Australia is the *kangaroo*, which is found in no other part of the world. Two-thirds of the native animals of Australia are either kangaroos or opossums—both of them belonging to an order of animals called *marsupial*, which possess the singular habit of carrying their young in a kind of pouch or bag under the neck. There is a native dog, which is being fast exterminated by the settlers, to prevent the injuries which it inflicts upon their flocks. The *sheep*, *ox*, *goat*, *pig*, and *horse*, now numerously reared in Australia, are all descended from animals that were first taken thither by Europeans. The wool of the sheep is (with the exception of gold) the most valuable article of Australian produce. There is a kind of ostrich (the *emu*) native to Australia; but the birds, as well as the quadrupeds, that are native to this region, are unlike those of other parts of the globe.

Inhabitants.—Most of the present inhabitants of Australia are of British descent. It is little more than three-quarters of a century since the colonisation of this distant region commenced (in 1788), and already there are above 2,750,000 British subjects speaking the English language, and following the ordinary usages of English life.

The aboriginal natives of Australia are among the most degraded members of the human race. They are few in number, and are rapidly diminishing. The scattered tribes that still wander over the vast interior obtain a scanty subsistence from such means as the forests or river-beds of their native land afford. A few roots and berries, with shell-fish, insects, grubs, and other objects repulsive to civilised tastes, are the sole native resources of the Australian savage in this respect. The aborigines of Australia belong to the Papuan (or Austral-Negro) race. Their skins are of dark colour—almost black—and their stature below the average of Europeans.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. In what particular, as to situation, is Australia distinguished from each of the other continents?
2. By what oceans is Australia bounded on the east, west, and south?
3. State the area of Australia.
4. Name the principal inlets, straits, and capes of Australia.
5. Which portion of the coasts of Australia exhibits the most continuous chain of high grounds? How are the different parts of this range named?
6. Point on the map to the Australian Alps. What height do they reach?
7. What is the general character of the interior regions of the Australian continent, so far as they are yet known?
8. Name the most considerable among the rivers of Australia, and trace out its course upon the map.
9. Name some of the rivers on the eastern, western, and north-western coasts of Australia.
10. Name the largest lake of Australia, and point it out upon the map.
11. What is the prevailing characteristic of the climate of Australia? With what countries of Europe may the settled portions of Australia be compared, in regard to climate?
12. Say what you know concerning the mineral productions of Australia.
13. Give some particulars concerning the native vegetation of the Australian continent.
14. To what order of mammalia do the greater number of the animals of Australia belong?
15. To what race and nation does the chief part of the present population of Australia belong?
16. Say what you know concerning the native population of this division of the globe.

THE AUSTRALIAN COLONIES.

The settled portions of Australia are divided into the following provinces, each of which constitutes a distinct colony, under a governor appointed by the British Crown:—

Colonies.	Towns.
NEW SOUTH WALES . . .	Sydney, Newcastle, Bathurst, Goulburn.
QUEENSLAND	Brisbane, Rockhampton, Maryborough.
VICTORIA	Melbourne, Geelong, Belfast, Castlemaine.
SOUTH AUSTRALIA . . .	Adelaide, Port Lincoln, Port Elliot.
WESTERN AUSTRALIA . .	Perth, Fremantle, Albany, Roeburne.
TASMANIA	Hobart, Launceston, Georgetown.

1. **New South Wales** occupies part of the east coast of Australia, and includes an area of 323,000 square miles, and has a population estimated at about 750,000. The chief produce of New South Wales is *wool*. The gold-fields of New South Wales yield a much less return than those of the neighbouring colony; but it was in this province, within the valley of the Macquarie river, that gold was first found in Australia, in 1851. The chief towns are:—**SYDNEY** (population 200,000), which stands on the southern shore of Port Jackson—one of the most magnificent of natural harbours; *Newcastle*, at the mouth of the river Hunter; *Bathurst*, on the river Macquarie.

2. **Queensland** comprises the north-eastern portion of Australia, has an area of 670,000 square miles, and a population of about 217,000. The natural productions of Queensland comprise *gold*, *tin*, *copper*, and *coal*, but the colony is chiefly famous for its *sheep* and *cattle*; and the principal articles of export are *wool* and *preserved meat*. The capital of the colony and seat of government is **BRISBANE**, on the river Brisbane, about 25 miles from its mouth. The other chief towns are *Rockhampton*, *Maryborough*, and *Ipswich*.

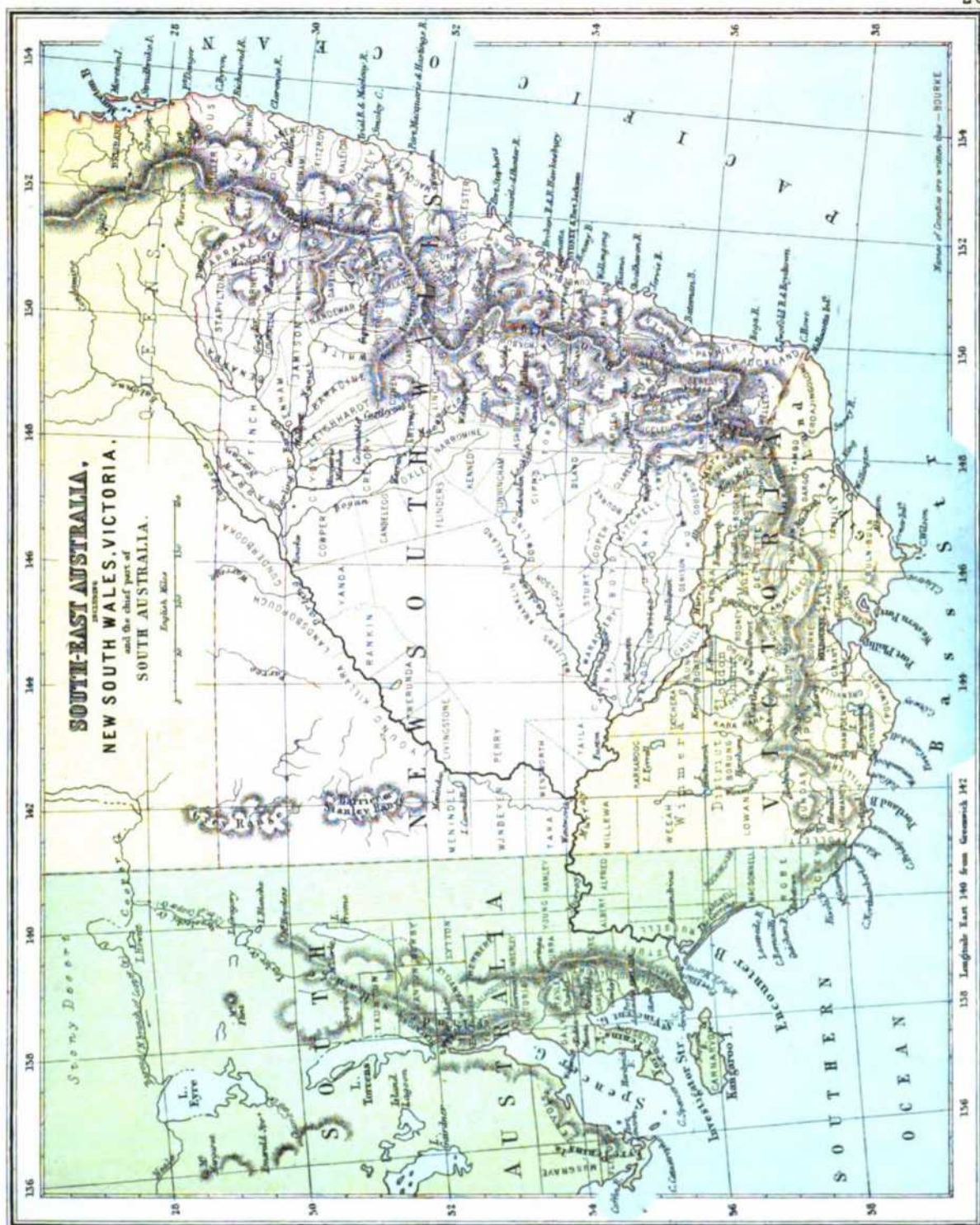
3. **Victoria** is divided from New South Wales by the river Murray, and has an area of about 88,000 square miles, and a population estimated at 900,000. Sheep-farming, mining, and agriculture are the chief industries. The staple articles of export are *wool* and *gold*. *Wheat*, *oats*, and *barley* are extensively cultivated, and a considerable quantity of *wine*, of good quality, is now produced. The principal towns are

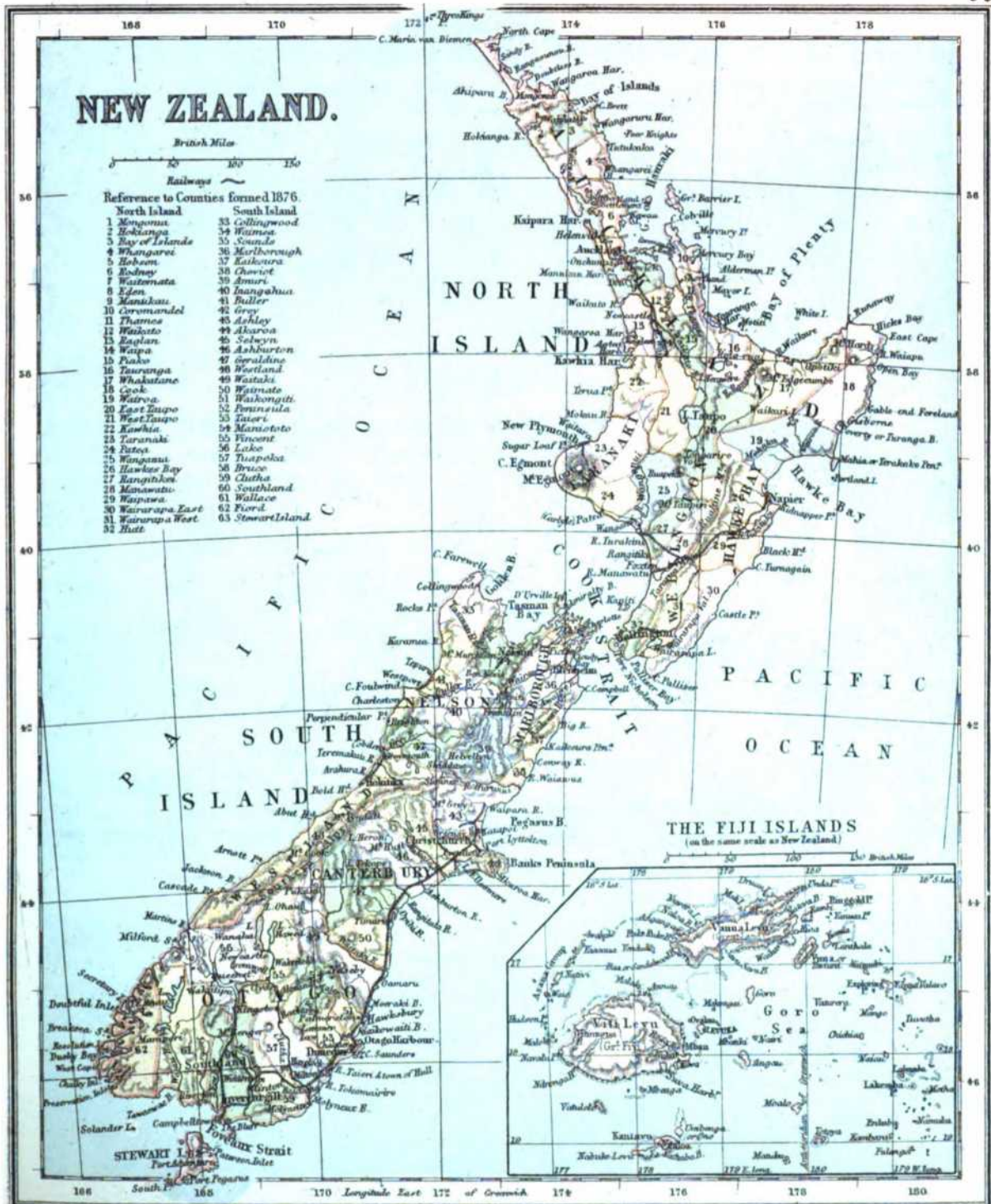
Melbourne, Ballarat, and Geelong. **MELBOURNE**, the capital of Victoria, stands near the head of Port Philip, on the small river Yarra. It has grown with surprising rapidity into a flourishing commercial city, with 256,000 inhabitants. *Ballarat* is the leading gold-field town of Victoria. *Geelong* is at the south-western corner of Port Philip.

4. **South Australia** comprises the central portion of the continent, and has an area of 900,000 square miles, and a population (in 1881) of 227,000. South Australia proper only includes the territory south of the 26th parallel. The northern territory, annexed in 1863, extends north of 26° S. lat., between the 129th and 138th meridian. The chief productions are *wool*, *corn*, *copper*, and *wine*. The mineral wealth of the colony consists chiefly of *copper*; but *iron*, *gold*, *silver*, and *bismuth* also exist. The chief towns are:—**ADELAIDE** (population, 35,000), which lies a few miles from the eastern shore of St. Vincent Gulf; *Burra-Burra* (or *Koorunga*), to the northward of Adelaide; *Port Lincoln*, and *Port Elliot*. In the northern territory the chief settlement is *Palmerston* (or *Port Darwin*).

5. **West Australia** is the least important of the Australian colonies, and, though established in 1829, has only about 28,000 inhabitants. "The whole of the settled district is usually level, often undulating, but never mountainous. Excepting the spots cleared for cultivation, it may be described as one vast forest." The productions of West Australia comprise *wheat*, *wine*, *sandal-wood*, *jarrah* (or West Australian mahogany). Sheep-farming is at present the chief pursuit of the settlers, and *wool* forms the largest item of export. The chief towns are *Perth*, *Fremantle*, and *Albany*. **PERTH** (population, 6,000), the capital of Western Australia, stands on the banks of the river Swan. *Fremantle*, its port, is at the mouth of that stream.

6. **Tasmania** (or Van Diemen's Land, as it was formerly called) has an area of 24,000 square miles, which is nearly half the size of England, and a population in 1881 of 116,000. The climate of Tasmania is cool and humid, and resembles that of England. The fruit and vegetables of the English orchard and garden flourish in Tasmania. The indigenous plants and animals are the same as those of the neighbouring continent. *Coal* is found in Tasmania. *Iron*, *copper*, *lead*, and other metals also occur. Its commercial produce consists principally of *wool*. Excellent *wheat* is grown. **HOBART**, the capital of Tasmania, is on the river Derwent, a few miles above its entrance in Storm Bay. *Launceston* and *Georgetown* are situated on the banks of the Tamar—the latter at its mouth, the former 50 miles inland.





EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Of what number do the Australian colonies of Britain consist?
2. What article constitutes the chief commercial produce of New South Wales?
3. Name the chief city of New South Wales. Upon what estuary does it stand?
4. In what part of New South Wales is Newcastle and Bathurst situated?
5. What name is given to the colony that lies immediately to the northward of New South Wales? What town forms its capital?
6. Where is Moreton Bay? What river falls into it?
7. Describe the boundaries of Victoria, pointing to them on the map.
8. For what article of natural produce is Victoria remarkable?
9. What are the present boundaries of South Australia? What two gulfs are within its coast-line?
10. Name the chief town of South Australia.
11. For what articles of produce is South Australia chiefly noted?
12. Where is the colony of Western Australia?
13. Name the capital and the chief port of Western Australia.
14. Where is Tasmania? By what name was it formerly called? What strait divides it from the Australian continent?
15. In what respect does the climate of Tasmania differ from that of the Australian mainland?
16. What productions of the mineral kingdom are found in Tasmania? In what does its commercial produce principally consist?
17. Name the capital of Tasmania, and point to its place on the map. Also the second town on the island. Say on what river each of them stands.

POLYNESIA.

POLYNESIA—a word which signifies “many islands”—embraces the vast multitude of islands that are scattered over the Pacific Ocean. Some of these islands are of large size; but by far the greater number of them are small. The smaller islands, however, are generally arranged in groups.

The principal islands of this division of the globe are—

New Zealand.	Friendly Islands.	New Guinea.
Sandwich Islands.	Fiji Islands.	Louisiade Archipelago.
Caroline Islands.	New Hebrides.	New Britain.
Ladrone Islands.	New Caledonia.	New Ireland.
Society Islands.	Loyalty Islands.	New Hanover.
Marquesas Islands.	Solomon Islands.	Admiralty Islands.
Samoa.	Santa Cruz Islands.	

New Zealand consists of a group of islands situated south of the equator, and within the south temperate zone. It embraces two large islands—North Island and South Island—which are divided by Cook Strait. There is a third island, of much smaller size, called Stewart Island: this is divided from the South Island by Foveaux Strait. The area of New Zealand is about 105,000 square miles, or about twice the size of England and Wales.

Natural Features.—Both the larger islands of New Zealand are mountainous, especially on the western side. *Mount Egmont*, in the North Island, reaches upwards of 8,000 feet; *Mount Cook*, the highest summit of the Southern Alps (South Island), is 13,200 feet. There are extensive plains well suited for pastoral pursuits, as well as fertile tracts of arable land.

Climate.—The climate is temperate and healthy.

Productions.—The trees that are native to New Zealand furnish valuable timber; but, like Australia, this distant region of the south is deficient in indigenous food-plants. New Zealand has neither native grains nor fruits. The *taro* and the *sweet-potato* were cultivated as their

chief articles of diet by the natives. The native *flax* furnishes a valuable cordage. Animal life is deficient to an extraordinary degree. The hog was the largest quadruped found in New Zealand by the first settlers. The dog, a few rats and mice, and the hog, make up the sum total of the land animals of this extensive region. There are no marsupials. But the grains, fruits, vegetables, and domestic cattle of Britain thrive in the plains of New Zealand. Sheep are now reared in great numbers, especially in the provinces of Nelson and Canterbury, and wool constitutes an article of export. The colony is also rich in minerals, including gold, copper, silver, tin, iron, coal, &c.

Inhabitants.—The native population of New Zealand are a fine race of men, altogether different from the Australian savage. They are now estimated at fewer than 40,000, most of them on the North Island. But their number is diminishing. They have been converted to Christianity since the possession of New Zealand by Britain. New Zealand was colonised by Britain in 1839, and has since formed a possession of the British crown. The colonists are now nearly 450,000 in number.

Divisions and Towns.—The colony is now divided into sixty-three counties, of which thirty-two are in North Island, thirty in South Island, and one in Stewart Island.

The capital of New Zealand is WELLINGTON, situated on the North Island. The other chief towns are Auckland and New Plymouth (both on the North Island), with Nelson, Christchurch, and Dunedin, situated upon the South Island. Christchurch is the chief place in the province of Canterbury; Dunedin in that of Otago, which includes valuable gold-fields.

The smaller islands of Polynesia are scattered at distant and unequal intervals over the immense expanse of the Pacific Ocean, both to the north and south of the equator. They are most numerous between the 10th parallel of south latitude and the Tropic of Capricorn—that is, within the southern portion of the Torrid Zone.

The smaller islands of Polynesia are either of coral or of volcanic formation—the coral islands being by much the more numerous. They consist chiefly of low reefs, raised only a few feet above the level of the sea, and in many cases hardly on a higher level than that reached by the flood-tide. These islands owe their formation to the labours of the coral-worm—a species of zoophyte—which builds up to the level of the ocean the stony matter secreted by its own economy. The coral-worm does not exist at greater depths than twenty or thirty fathoms, so that the numerous coral reefs of the Pacific and other seas are based upon submarine rocks.

1. The greater number of the coral islands are of semicircular shape, with a lagoon of still water enclosed between the inner curve of the semicircle and the reef which connects its extremities. A few of them form complete circles, with enclosed lagoons. The volcanic islands reach in many cases a height of several thousand feet above the sea.

2. The climate of the smaller Polynesian islands is delightful. The heat of the torrid zone is tempered by the influence of the surrounding ocean, and the thermometer undergoes little variation throughout the year. This island-world possesses some characteristic productions, chief amongst them the bread-fruit tree, the principal food of the native Polynesian race. The plantain or banana, cocoa-nut, yam, taro, sweet-potato, and arrow-root, are common to this part of the globe with the islands of the Indian seas. The sugar-cane, vine, orange, and other fruits of warm latitudes, all flourish. None of the larger animals are found, excepting the domestic cattle introduced by Europeans.

The *Sandwich Islands*, in the Northern Pacific, and the *Society*

Islands, in the southern half of that ocean, are the most important of the smaller Polynesian groups. The *Sandwich Islands* are subject in great measure to the controlling influence of the United States. The largest island of this group is *Owhyhee* (or *Hawaii*), upon which Captain Cook, their discoverer, was killed, in 1779. The largest of the *Society Islands* is *Otaheite*, or *Tahiti*, which is under the control of France.

The *Fiji Islands* are now an integral portion of the British Empire, the sovereignty over them having been accepted by Britain in 1874. They are of growing importance in connection with the commerce of the Australian colonies and the Pacific. The port of *Levuka* (on the island of *Ovalau*, to the eastward of Great *Fiji*, one of the two large islands of the group) is the capital.

New Caledonia, a large island measuring 200 miles in length, has been since 1854 in the possession of France.

Both the *New Hebrides* and the *Solomon Islands* are extensive but little known groups. The island of *Vanikoro* (or *Manicolo*), the largest of the *Santa Cruz* group, was the scene of *La Perouse's* shipwreck, in 1788.

New Guinea, or *Papua*, is of very large size. Its shores are in many parts lined by high mountains, but the interior is almost entirely unknown. The Dutch visit its western coasts, as also do the Chinese and the Malays, who obtain thence tortoise-shell, edible birds'-nests, tripping, and other articles. The beautiful birds-of-paradise are native to this region. Various parts of the island have been recently explored by Australian colonists, "prospecting" for gold, but no payable gold-fields have as yet been discovered.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

1. Point upon the map to the region known as Polynesia. What is the meaning of this name?
2. Where is New Zealand? By what names are its two larger islands distinguished? What strait divides them?
3. Give some account of the physical features of New Zealand.
4. What kind of climate has New Zealand?
5. Mention some of the productions of New Zealand.
6. By what nation has New Zealand been colonised? Since what date?
7. Name the chief towns.
8. Into what two classes (with reference to their physical formation) are the smaller islands of Polynesia divided?
9. By what agency are the coral islands formed?
10. Say what you know concerning the climate and natural productions of this region. What food-plant is especially characteristic of it?
11. Point to the *Sandwich Islands*, and name the largest of them.
12. Where are the *Caroline Islands*? The *Ladrones*?
13. Point on the map to each of the following:—*Society Islands*, the *Low Archipelago*, *Pitcairn Island*, the *Marquesas Islands*, the *Samoa Islands*, and the *Friendly Islands*.
14. Point on the map to the following:—The *Fiji Islands*, the *New Hebrides*, *New Caledonia*, the *Loyalty Islands*, and the *Solomon Islands*. State what you know of the colony of *Fiji*. To what nation does *New Caledonia* belong?
15. Where is *New Guinea*? Name some of the islands that are adjacent to it on the eastward. What articles of commerce does this region furnish?



